THE A. & G. SHORTER
LATIN GRAMMAR

١٩١٨

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S

SHORTER
LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES

Condensed and Revised

BY

JAMES BRADSTREET GREENOUGH

ASSISTED BY

ALBERT A. HOWARD

BOSTON, U.S.A., AND LONDON
GINN & COMPANY, PUBLISHERS
The Athenæum Press
1897

PREFACE.

THE present editors hold as the result of their experience, that a book designed to instruct in the principles of Latin construction, intended for the use of pupils and young teachers, ought to contain practically the whole grammar of the language. This is especially true of the teachers, because the book from which one teaches is very likely to limit one's own acquisitions. They are, however, aware that a more compendious book may be sufficient with some teachers, and under certain conditions even superior. They have, therefore, endeavored to abbreviate their complete work by omitting from it such portions as could not give appreciable information to the students in preparatory schools. This has been done by noting all the references in the books used in such schools, and saving these along with all the general principles under which they came. It is hoped that by this method nothing has been omitted which was essential, and nothing retained which might not at some time answer a question raised even among preparatory pupils. In order to facilitate the use of the two books side by side, and the later substitution of the larger work, the original notation of sections and subsections has been carefully retained.

In the treatment of the subject, with the exception of all general linguistic lore, the lines of the other work have been pursued. For such lore the student and teacher are referred to the larger grammar.

But in regard to hidden quantities, a subject which has only lately begun to be studied, and whose uncertainties ought not to be allowed to trouble the beginner, the editors have pursued an even more conservative course than before, marking only such vowels long as could, in their opinion, be reasonably proved to be so, and leaving as presumably short all others, even those which many persons, and even the editors themselves, were inclined to think long.

CAMBRIDGE, September 1, 1896.

CONTENTS.

PART II.—SYNTAX.

PART III.—PROSODY.

LATIN GRAMMAR.

INTRODUCTION.

ELEMENTARY DEFINITIONS.

1. The study of Grammar includes: (1) the *Forms of Words* (**Etymology**); (2) the *Uses of Words*, or the ways of connecting them in sentences (**Syntax**); (3) the *Forms of Verse* (**Prosody**).

PARTS OF SPEECH.

2. Words are *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs*, *Participles*, *Adverbs*, *Prepositions*, *Conjunctions*, or *Interjections*. These are called **Parts of Speech.**

NOTE. — There is no word in Latin for the Articles *a*, *an*, *the*.

3. A **Noun** is the name of a person, place, or thing: as, *Cæsar*, *Rome*, *house*, *strength*, *glory*. Names of persons and places are Proper Nouns; the others are Common Nouns.

4. An **Adjective** is a word which describes a noun: as, a *brave* man, a *green* tree.

5. A **Pronoun** is a word which denotes a person, place, or thing without naming or describing it. It may be —

a. Personal: *I*, *we* (1st person); *thou*, *ye*, *you* (2d person); *he*, *she*, *it*, *they* (3d person).

NOTE. — There is in Latin no personal pronoun of the 3d person, but a demonstrative may be used instead; and the others are used only for emphasis, being commonly given in the verb-ending.

b. Possessive: ***my***, ***mine; thy***, ***thine; his***, ***her***, ***hers; our***, ***ours; your***, ***yours; their***, ***theirs; myself***, ***himself***, ***themselves***, and the like.

c. Reflexive: these end, in English, in *-self* or *-selves*, following a verb or preposition: as, ***I blame myself; he came to himself.***

d. Demonstrative: ***this***, ***these; that***, ***those.***

e. Relative: ***who***, ***which; whoever***, ***whatever.***

f. Interrogative: ***who? which? what?***

NOTE. — Possessives, demonstratives, relatives, and interrogatives all have the form of adjectives, and are called Adjective Pronouns.

The relatives *whoever*, *whatever* are called Indefinite Relatives.

6. A **Verb** is a word which asserts, asks, or commands: as, he *speaks*, do you *know? come* to me.

7. A **Participle** is an adjective which describes the act or condition asserted by a verb: as, *speaking*, *chosen.*

8. An **Adverb** is a word used with a verb or adjective to express time, place, or manner: as, *now*, *here*, *nobly* done.

9. A **Preposition** is a word connecting a noun in a dependent relation with other words in the same sentence: as, *in*, *from*, *among*, *into*, *beyond.*

10. A **Conjunction** is a word used to connect sentences or parts of sentences: such words are *and*, *or*, *if*, *but.*

NOTE. — Some words, — as, *while*, *because*, *till*, *nevertheless*, — used both to define and to connect, are called Adverbial Conjunctions.

11. **Interjections** are mere exclamations, and are not, strictly, Parts of Speech: as, *ah! ho! alas!*

THE SENTENCE.

12. A **Sentence** is a form of words containing an Assertion, a Question, an Exclamation, or a Command; and it is, accordingly, *declaratory*, *interrogative*, *exclamatory*, or *imperative.*

13. The **Subject** of a sentence denotes the person or thing spoken of: it may be (1) a Noun, a Pronoun, or a Phrase; or (2) it may be given in the ending of a Verb.

NOTE. — This latter case is regular in Latin: as, **doce-o,** *I teach;* **doce-t,** *he* (or *she*) *teaches;* **doce-nt,** *they teach.*

14. The **Predicate** is that which is spoken of the Subject. It may be a Verb; and it must contain a verb. Thus a whole Latin sentence may consist of a verb alone.

NOTE. — If the Predicate is a verb alone — as, "the sun *shines*" — this verb is called Neuter, or Intransitive; if the verb requires an Object — as, "I *see* the sun" — it is called Transitive. A noun or adjective used with a neuter verb to complete the statement — as, "these men are *brave*" — is called the Complement.

15. The **Object** of a verb denotes the person or thing affected by the action: as, I wrote *the letter.*

NOTE. — The Object may be *direct* or *indirect:* in the sentence, "I wrote you a letter," *letter* is the Direct object, and *you* the Indirect.

16. A **Phrase** is a group of words, without subject or predicate of its own, which may be used as an adjective or adverb: as, "a man *of great virtue*" (Adjective Phrase); "I will come *within three days*" (Adverbial Phrase).

17. A **Clause** is a group of words, with subject and predicate of its own, used to add something to a sentence, or to qualify its meaning: as, "I spoke *and* he listened"; "*when* he had heard, he went away."

NOTE. — A sentence so modified is called *compound;* if one part (as in the second example) depends on the other, it is called *complex.*

18. A noun, pronoun, adjective, or verb is said to AGREE with another word, when it is required to be in the same *gender, number, case,* or *person.* A verb or preposition is said to GOVERN a noun, when it requires a noun in connection to be in a particular Case.

PART FIRST.—ETYMOLOGY.

1. LETTERS AND SOUNDS.

ALPHABET.

The Latin alphabet is the same as the English (which, in fact, was borrowed from it), except that it has no **w**.

Classification of the Letters.

1. The letters are divided into Vowels (*litterae vōcālēs*) and Consonants (*litterae cōnsonantēs*). Two vowels united so as to express one sound are called a Diphthong.

The VOWELS are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. The rest of the letters are Consonants. The Diphthongs are **ae, au, ei, eu, oe, ui**.

2. Consonants.—*a.* **p, b, c (k), q, g, t, d,** as also **ch** and **th**, are called Mutes (Explosives, Momentary sounds).

These are produced by an entire stoppage of the breath and a subsequent explosion. They are classified as follows:—

1. **p, c (k), q, t, s**, are called Surds (*tenuēs*).

These are without vocal tone.

2. **b, g, d, z**, are called Sonants (*mediae*).

These are accompanied by a slight vocal tone.

3. **ch** and **th** are called Aspirates.

In these a breath follows the explosion. They are found chiefly in words borrowed from the Greek. **ph**, which also was borrowed from the Greek, probably was never sounded as an aspirate in Latin.

b. **m** and **n** are called Nasals.

These are pronounced with the same position of the organs as **b** and **d**, except that the nasal passage is opened instead of closed. A third nasal, **n** *adulterīnum* (like *n* in *ink*), corresponding in the same way to **g**, existed in the language, but had no separate sign.

3. From the organs of speech chiefly used in the utterance of the mutes and nasals they are divided into Labials (pronounced with the lips), Palatals (with the palate), and Linguals (with the tongue).

Their relations are seen in the following table: —

	SURD.	SONANT.	ASPIRATE.	NASAL.
Labial:	**p**	**b**	wanting	**m**
Palatal:	**c (k), q**	**g**	**ch**	**n** (as in *ink*)
Lingual:	**t**	**d**	**th**	**n** (as in *rent*).

a. Other useful special classes of sounds are distinguished, as, —

Liquids: **l, m, n, r.**
Fricatives (Spirants): **f, ph, th** (not aspirate, the same as in *thin*), **h, s, z.**
Sibilants: **s, z.**
Double Consonants: **x** (cs), **z** (ds).
Semi-vowels: **i, v** (see § 4).

b. **h** is merely a breathing.

4. Semi-Vowels. — **i** and **v** (**u**) before a vowel in the same syllable are consonants and have the sound of English consonant **y** and **w** respectively. (Cf. **i** and **u** in *pinion, unguent.*) They are sometimes called *Semi-Vowels.*

NOTE. — The Latin alphabet had no separate signs for the semi-vowels; but used **i** for both vowel and consonant **i**, and **v** or **u** (without distinction) for both vowel and consonant **v** (**u**). The character **j** was unknown in classical times, and **u** was but a graphic variation of **v**. In mediæval Latin **j** and **v** came to be used to indicate the consonant sounds of **i** and **v** (**u**), and this usage is often followed by modern editors in writing small letters. In writing capitals, however, the forms **J** and **U** are avoided. Thus, **iuuenis, iuvenis,** or **juvenis,** — but IVVENIS.

In this book vowel and consonant **i** are both represented by the same character, **i**; but **v** is used for the consonant, **u** for the vowel sound of **v** (**u**). Thus, **iūstus, vir, iuvenis.**

5. The Romans distinguished Long vowels from Short in sound, but had no regular means to express the difference. This difference is called **Quantity,** and such vowels are said to be long or short by nature.

In modern times short vowels are marked thus: **ă**, **ĕ**; and long, thus: **ā**, **ē**; those that may be pronounced either long or short, thus: **ā̆**, **ē̆**. In this book all simple vowels not marked are supposed to be short. But final **o** and **i** are marked according to their prevailing quantity in poetry, though they sometimes vary from this.

6. The character **c** (surd palatal) originally stood for the sonant palatal (**g**).

Hence, **a**, **b**, **c**, but Alphă, Beta, Gamma. This force it always retained in the abbreviations **C.** (for **Gāius**), and **Cn.** (**Gnaeus**).

7. Till after the age of Augustus the use of **u** (vowel) after **u** (**v**) was avoided. This was done either by preserving **o**, when but for this tendency it would have become **u**, as in **voltus** (but **cultus**), **servŏs** (but **dominus**); or in case of **quu**, by writing **cu**, as in **ecus** (for **equos**, later **equus**).

Hence, where in inflection **quu** would appear, it should be written and pronounced **cu**, as, **ecus**, **equī**, **sequitur**, **secuntur**.

Phonetic Variations.

8. Variations of sound are of two classes:—

a. Inherited differences of form in the same root (see § 22).

b. Unconscious changes of sounds developed in course of time in the language itself.

9. Inherited differences appear in variations of vowels, and less commonly in liquids connected with vowels.

a. Vowels vary between long and short of the same kind: as, **emō**, *I buy*, **ēmī**, *I bought;* **regō**, *I rule*, **rēgina**, *a queen.*

b. Vowels vary in quality: as, **pendō**, *I weigh*, **pondus**, *weight.*

c. Vowels vary between a short vowel of one quality and a long vowel or diphthong of another: as, **miser**, *wretched*, **maestus**, *sad.*

d. Liquids are transposed with vowels, sometimes with change of the vowel: as, **spernō**, *I spurn*, **sprēvī**, *I spurned.*

10. Unconscious changes occur in both vowels and consonants.

a. Vowels and diphthongs are weakened: as, **factus**, *made*, **cōn-fectus**, *made up;* **āgmen**, *a march*, **āgminis**, *of a march.*

b. Two vowels coming together are very often contracted: as, **cōgō** for **co-agō**; **obīt** for **obiit**; **nīl** for **nihil**.

c. Vowels are often lost between two consonants (*syncope*): as, **audācter** for **audāciter.**

d. Vowels are inserted between two consonants in the effort to pronounce a difficult combination of sounds (cf. sailors' *hellum* for *helm*): as, **Herculēs** for **Herclēs, drachuma** for **drachma.**

11. *a.* Consonants are substituted one for another. Thus: **r** for **s** between two vowels or before **m** or **n**: as, **eram** (root ES), **generis** (for †**genesis,** from **genus**), **maereō** (cf. **maestus**).

b. Consonants are omitted: as, **exāmen (exāgmen), caementum (caed-mentum), autumnus (auctumnus,** root AUG), **pergō (per-regō).**

Especially **h**: as, **dēbeō (dē-habeō).** And consonant **i** and **v**: as, **cōniciō (con-iaciō), prōrsus (prō-vorsus).**

c. Consonants are unconsciously inserted in passing from one sound to another: as, **sūmō,** *I take,* **sūmpsī,** *I took.*

d. Consonants and vowels are unconsciously changed (*dissimilation*) to avoid a repetition of the same sound in two successive syllables: **parīlia** (for **palīlia,** from **Palēs**), **merīdiēs** (for **medīdiēs**).

e. A consonant is changed by the influence of a neighboring sound, —

1. Into the same sound as the neighbor (*complete assimilation*): as, **cēssī (cēd-sī), summus (sup-mus), sella (sed-la).**

2. Into a sound of the same organ or the same quality (or both) as the neighbor (*partial assimilation*) (see table of mutes, § 3): as, **conterō (com-terō,** labial to lingual), **scrīptus (scrīb-tus,** sonant to surd), **sēgmentum** (†**secmentum,** surd to sonant), **imperō (in-perō,** lingual to labial).

12. Variations of Spelling occur in manuscripts and inscriptions, and especially in modern editions. Most are provided for in Vocabularies.

a. The letters and sounds of **ci** and **ti** are interchanged before a vowel: **nūntiō (nūnciō), contiō (conciō), condiciō (conditiō).**

b. Several words are written sometimes with and sometimes without an initial **h**: as, **harēna (arēna), erus (herus), umerus (humerus), ūmor (hūmor).**

c. In later Latin, **ē, ae,** and **oe** became alike in sound (like *a* in *fate*), and are often confounded in writing: as, **faenus (fēnus, foenus).**

d. Other words variously spelled are: **adulēscēns, adolēscēns; ahēneus, aēneus; ānulus, annulus.**

Combinations.

13. Two words are often united in writing, and sometimes in sound. Thus, —

a. Conjunctions or other particles and pronouns are sometimes connected: as in **etenim, ūnusquisque, iamdūdum, iamdiū, sīquis, sīquidem**; also a few short phrases, as, **quārē, quamobrem, rēspūblica, iūsiūrandum, paterfamiliās, tēcum.**

b. The verb **est**, *is*, is joined with the preceding word, especially in the old poets, when the two would be united by elision: as, **homōst, perīculumst, quālist (quālis est)** (like *thou 'rt, I 've*).

c. Similar contractions are found in **vīn' (vīsne), scīn' (scīsne). sīs (sī vīs), sōdēs (sī audēs), sūltis (sī vultis).** So in English, *don't, won't (wol not).*

Syllables.

14. In Latin every word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

a. In the division of words into syllables a single consonant or a mute followed by a liquid between two vowels must be written and pronounced with the latter.

b. This rule is sometimes improperly extended to doubled consonants, or any combination of consonants which can be used to begin a word: as, **ho-spes, mā-gnus**; but usage varies.

c. In compounds, the parts should be separated: **as, ab-est, ob-lātus.**

Kindred Forms.

15. In English words derived from the Latin, the original letters are retained (as *ambition* from **ambitiō**). But in native English words which are cognate with the Latin, the original sounds are represented in the two languages by closely related letters which regularly correspond: as, —

LATIN.	ENGLISH.	
t	TH:	tū, *thou;* trēs, *three;* tenuis, *thin.*
d	T:	duo, *two;* dēns, *tooth;* sedeō, *sit.*
p	F:	pater, *father;* pullus, *foal;* paucī, *few.*

Sounds of the Letters.

NOTE. — The pronunciation of Latin is different in different countries. In America, it usually follows what may be called the *Roman* (or *Phonetic*) method.

16. By the Roman method, *every letter has always the same sound.*

NOTE. — A long vowel in our enunciation almost necessarily acquires a slightly different quality from a short one, as in *boot* and *foot*, *machine* and *holiest*. See also **bs** below.

VOWELS:

- **ā** as in *father;* — **ă** as in *idea.*
- **ē** as *eh?* (prolonged); *they;* — **ĕ** as *eh?* (clipped).
- **ī** as in *machine;* — **ĭ** as in *holiest.*
- **ō** as in *holy;* — **ŏ** as in *obey.*
- **ū** as *oo* in *boot;* — **ŭ** as *oo* in *foot.*
- **y** between *u* and *i* (German *ü*).

DIPHTHONGS: **ae** like *ay;* **oe** like *oy;* **au** like *ow* in *now.*
ei as in *eight;* **eu** as *eh'oo;* **ui** as *oo'ee.*

CONSONANTS, as in English, except that:

- **c** and **g** are always hard, as in *come*, *get.*
- **s** is always sharp, as in *sea*, *lips.*
- **i** cons. is like *y* in *young;* **v** (cons. **u**), like *w* in *wing;* **qu** as in English.
- **bs** is like *ps;* **ch** like *k;* **ph** like *f.*
- **n** before **s** or **f** was combined with the preceding vowel somewhat as French nasal *n*, making the vowel long.
- **z** as *dz* in *adze.*
- **th** as in *rathole*, later as in *thin.*

When two consonants come together (as in **con-dō**, **pos-terī**), or a consonant is doubled (as in **an-nus**, **ūl-lus**, **mīt-tō**), care should be taken to pronounce both letters distinctly.

17. Roman names in English (as *Julius Cæsar*), scientific terms, titles of books, and familiar quotations (as *e pluribus unum; viva voce; vice versa; veni, vidi, vici,* etc.) should be pronounced by the English method. In this the letters have the same sounds as in English.

Quantity and Accent.

18. The Accent in Latin depends on the Quantity (or length) of the last syllable but one. A long *vowel* makes a long *syllable*. A short *vowel* may make a long *syllable* if obstructed by consonants. The following are simple rules for quantity.

a. A vowel before another vowel or **h** is short: as in **vĭa, nĭhil.**

b. A diphthong is long: as in **aedēs, fo͞edus.** So, also, a vowel derived from a diphthong: as, **exclūdō (ex-claudō).**

c. A vowel formed by contraction is long: as, **nīl (nihil).**

d. A *syllable* in which a vowel is followed by two consonants (except a mute with **l** or **r**), or a double consonant (**x, z**) is long by Position; as in **pingō, saxum, Mezentius.** Before **nf** and **ns, gn** and **gm**, and **i** consonant the vowel itself becomes long by nature: as in **īnfeɪō, praesēns, māgnus, āgmen, hūius.**

e. A syllable in which a *short vowel* is followed by a mute with **l** or **r** is common; *i.e.* it may be long in verse: as in **alacris, multiplex.**

f. A vowel before **nd, nt** is regularly short by nature: as, **amănt, amăndus** from **amāre.**

19. The accent in words of more than one syllable is on the last syllable but one (Penult), or the last but two (Antepenult).

a. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first syllable: **Rō′ma, ve′hō, i′pse.**

b. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the Penult, if that is long: as, **amī′cus, praesen′tis**; if it is short or common, on the Antepenult: as, **do′mĭnus, a′lăcris, la′tĕbrae, conti′nŭō, praete′rĭtum, dissociā′bilis.**

Note. — In words of more than four syllables a secondary accent usually arises at a convenient distance from the main accent: as, **năvigā″tiō′nibus, pecū″liā′ria.**

c. When an Enclitic is joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable next before the enclitic, whether long or short: as, **dĕă′que, ămārĕ′ve, tĭbi′ne, ită′que** (*and . . . so*), as distinguished from **i′tăque** (*therefore*).

d. EXCEPTION: Certain apparent compounds of **faciō** retain the accent of the simple verb: as, **benefă'cĭt, calefă'cit** (see § 169. *a*). (These are not true compounds, but phrases.)

2. WORDS AND THEIR FORMS.

INFLECTION.

20. Latin is an inflected language: *i.e.* changes are made in the forms of words to show their grammatical relations.

Such changes sometimes take place in the body of a word, or at the beginning, but oftener in the termination: as, **vōx**, *a voice;* **vōcis**, *of a voice;* **tangit**, *he touches;* **tetigit**, *he touched.*

Root and Stem.

21. The **Stem** is the body of a word, of which the terminations are changed.

22. A **Root** is the shortest and simplest form that can express the main idea of a word. It is common also to other words either in the same or kindred languages.[1]

Thus the root of the stem **rēg-** (in **rēx**) is REG, which does not mean *to rule*, or *I rule*, or *ruling*, but merely expresses vaguely the idea of *directing*, and cannot be used as a part of speech without added terminations.

23. The Stem is sometimes the same as the root: as in **duc-is**, *of a leader;* **fer-t**, *he bears;* but it is more frequently formed from the root, —

1. By changing or lengthening its vowel: as in **scob-s**, *sawdust* (SCAB, *shave*); **rēg-is**, *of a king* (REG, *direct*); **vōc-is**, *of a voice* (VOC, *call*).

2. By the addition of a simple suffix (originally another root): as in **fug-a**, *flight* (FUG + a); **fugi-s**, *you fly* (FUG + yo); **pangō**, *I fasten* (PAG + no).

[1] For example, the root STA is found in the Greek ἵστημι, Latin **sistere** and **stāre**, German ſtehen, and English *stand.*

3. By two or more of these methods: as in **dūc-it**, *he leads* (DUC + o); **tollō**, *I raise* (TUL + **yo**).

4. By derivation and composition, following the laws of development peculiar to the language. (See §§ 158 ff.)

24. Inflectional terminations are variously modified by combination with the final vowel or consonant of the Stem, leading to the various forms of Declension and Conjugation (see § 32).

The Parts of Speech.

25. Words are divided into nine **Parts of Speech**: Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Participles, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections. These are more fully treated in the Introduction, pp. 1 and 2.

26. Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Participles have inflections of *declension*, to show gender, number, and case. Verbs have inflections of *conjugation*, to show voice, mood, tense, number, and person.

NOTE. — Adjectives are often said to have inflections of *comparison* to indicate degree. These inflections are, however, properly stem-formations made by derivation (cf. § 89).

27. Parts of speech which are not inflected are called **Particles**: such are Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.

Gender.

28. The genders distinguished in Latin are three: Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

a. The gender of Latin nouns is either *natural* or *grammatical*. Natural gender is distinction as to the sex of the object denoted: as, **puer**, *boy;* **puella**, *girl;* **dōnum**, *gift*.

b. Grammatical gender is a formal distinction as to sex where no actual sex exists in the object. It shows itself only in the form of the adjective joined with the noun: as, **lapis māgnus** (M.), *a great stone;* **manus mea** (F.), *my hand*.

NOTE. — A few neuter nouns are used to designate persons as belonging to a class: as, **mancipium tuum**, *your slave*.

Names of *classes* or *bodies* of persons may be of any gender: as, **exercitus** (M.), **aciēs** (F.), and **āgmen** (N.), *army;* **operae** (F. pl.), *workmen;* **cōpiae** (F. pl.), *troops*.

29. *a.* Names of Male beings, Rivers, Winds, Months, and Mountains, are *masculine.*

b. Names of Female beings, Cities, Countries, Plants, Trees, and Gems, of many Animals (especially Birds), and of most abstract Qualities, are *feminine.*

To each of these there are some exceptions.

c. Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, words, terms or phrases used as nouns, or quoted merely for their form, are neuter : as, —

fās, *right;* **nihil**, *nothing;* **gummi**, *gum;* **scīre tuum**, *your knowledge* (to know).

30. Many nouns may be either masculine or feminine, according to the sex of the object. These are said to be of Common Gender : as, **exsul**, *exile;* **bōs**, *ox* or *cow.*

a. If a noun signifying a thing without life may be either masculine or feminine, — as, **diēs**, *day;* **fīnis**, *end,* — it is sometimes said to be of Doubtful Gender.

b. Several names of animals have a grammatical gender, independent of sex. These are called Epicene. Thus **lepus**, *hare,* is always masculine, and **vulpēs**, *fox,* is always feminine.

Number and Case.

31. Nouns, Pronouns, Adjectives, and Participles have two Numbers, *singular* and *plural;* and six Cases, *nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, ablative.*

a. The Nominative is the case of the Subject of a sentence.

b. The Genitive may generally be translated by the English Possessive, or by the Objective with the preposition *of.*

c. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object (§ 177). It may usually be translated by the Objective with the preposition *to* or *for;* but sometimes by the Objective without a preposition.

d. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object of a verb (Intr. § 15, § 177). It is used also with many Prepositions.

e. The Vocative is the case of Direct Address.

f. The Ablative may usually be translated by the Objective with *from, by, with, in,* or *at.* It is also often used with prepositions.

g. All the cases, except the nominative and vocative, may be used as object-cases; and are sometimes called *Oblique Cases.*

h. In names of towns and a few other words appear traces of another case (the *Locative*), denoting the *place where.*

3. DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

32. Nouns are inflected in five Declensions, distinguished by the case-ending of the Genitive Singular, and by the final letter (*characteristic*) of the Stem.

DECL.	1.	Gen. Sing.	**ae**	Characteristic	**ă** (anciently **ā**)
"	2.	"	**ī**	"	**ŏ**
"	3.	"	**ĭs**	"	**ĭ** or a Consonant
"	4.	"	**ūs** (**uis**)	"	**ŭ**
"	5.	"	**ēī**	"	**ē**

a. The Stem of a noun may be found, if a consonant-stem, by omitting the case-ending; if a vowel-stem, by substituting for the case-ending the characteristic vowel.

b. The Nominative of most masculine and feminine nouns (except in the first declension) is formed from the stem by adding **s**. But many end in **o**, or in the liquids, **l**, **n**, **r**.

33. The following are general Rules of Declension: —

a. The Vocative is always the same as the Nominative, except in the singular of nouns in **us** of the second declension.

b. In neuters the Nominative and Accusative are always alike, and in the plural end in **ă**.

c. The Accusative singular of all masculines and feminines ends in **m**; the Accusative plural in **s**.

d. In the last three declensions (and in a few cases in the others) the Dative singular ends in **ī**.

e. The Dative and Ablative plural are always alike.

f. The Genitive plural always ends in **um**.

g. Final **ī**, **o**, **u** of inflection are always *long;* final **a** is *short*, except in the Ablative singular of the first declension; final **e** is *long* in the first and fifth declensions, *short* in the second and third.

34. The Case-endings of the several declensions are the following, rare forms being given in *parenthesis*, Greek forms in *italics*:—

	Decl. I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Sing.					
N.	**ă**, *ē*, *ās*, *ēs*,	**us, um, er**, *os*, *on*, *eus*	**s** (or modified stem)	**us, ū**	**ēs**
G.	**ae** (**āī**) *ēs*	**ī** (**īus**) *ō*, *ū*, *ei*	**ĭs**, *yos*, *ŏs*	**ūs** (**uis**)	**ēī** (**ē**)
D.	**ae** (**ai**)	**ō** (**ī**) *ei*, *eō*	**ī** (*ĭ*, rare)	**uī** (**ū**)	**ēī** (**ē**)
A.	**am**, *ān*, *ēn*	**um**, *on*, *ea*	**em** (**im**) *in*, *yn*, *ă*	**um, ū**	**em**
V.	**ă**, *ē*, *ā*	**ĕ** (**ī**) **er**, *eu*	(as nom.) *ĭ*, *y*	**us, ū**	**ēs**
A.	**ā**, *ē*	**ō**, *eō*	**e** (**ī**), **ī**, *yē*	**ū**	**ē**
Plur.					
N.V.	**ae**	**ī, ă**	**ēs, a, ia**, *ĕs*	**ūs, ua**	**ēs**
G.	**ārum** (**ūm**)	**ōrum** (**ūm, ōm**) *ōn*	**um, ium**, *eōn*	**uum**	**ērum**
D.A.	**īs** (**ābus**)	**īs** (**ōbus**	**ĭbus**	**ĭbus** (**ŭbus**)	**ēbus**
A.	**ās**	**ōs**	**ēs** (**īs**), **a, ia**, *ăs*	**ūs, ua**	**ēs**

FIRST DECLENSION.

35. The Stem of nouns of the First Declension ends in **ă** (originally **ā**), and except in Greek nouns the nominative is like the stem.

Nouns of the First Declension are thus declined:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	**stellă**, *a* (or *the*) *star.*	**stellae**, *stars.*
Gen.	**stellae**, *of a star.*	**stellārum**, *of stars.*
Dat.	**stellae**, *to* (or *for*) *a star.*	**stellīs**, *to* (or *for*) *stars.*
Acc.	**stellam**, *a star.*	**stellās**, *stars.*
Voc.	**stella**, *thou star!*	**stellae**, *ye stars!*
Abl.	**stellā**, *with*, *from*, etc., *a star.*	**stellīs**, *with*, *from*, etc., *stars.*

Gender. — Nouns of the first declension are Feminine.

Exceptions: Nouns masculine from their meaning: as, **nauta**, *sailor.* So a few family or personal names: as, **Mūrēna, Scaevola.**

36. Case-Forms. — *a.* The Genitive singular anciently ended in **-āī**, which is occasionally found: as, **aulāī.**

b. An old genitive in **-ās** is preserved in the word **familiās**, used in the combinations **pater** (**māter, fīlius, fīlia**) **familiās**, *father*, etc., *of a family* (plur. **patrēs familiās** or **familiārum**).

c. The Locative form (§ 31. *h*) for the singular ends in **-ae**; for the plural in **-is**: as, **Rōmae**, *at Rome;* **Athēnis**, *at Athens.*

d. The Genitive plural is sometimes found in **-ūm** instead of **-ārum**, especially in compounds with **cŏla** and **gĕna**: as, **caelicolūm**, *of the celestials;* **Trōiugenūm**, *of the sons of Troy;* **Aeneadūm**, *of the sons of Æneas;* so **amphora** and **drachma**.

e. The Dative and Ablative plural of **dea**, *goddess*, **filia**, *daughter*, end in an older form **-ābus**.

Greek Nouns.

37. Many nouns of the first declension borrowed from the Greek are entirely Latinized, but many retain traces of their Greek forms in various degrees.

	a court (F.).	*Electra* (F.).	*a synopsis* (F.).	*the art of music* (F.).
NOM.	**aula**	**Ēlectră (ā)**	**epitomē**	**mūsica (ē)**
GEN.	aulae	Ēlectrae	epitomēs	mūsicae (ēs)
DAT.	aulae	Ēlectrae	epitomae	mūsicae
ACC.	aulam	Ēlectram (ān)	epitomēn	mūsicam (ēn)
VOC.	aula	Ēlectra	epitomē	mūsica (ē)
ABL.	aulā	Ēlectrā	epitomē	mūsicā (ē)

	Andromache (F.).	*Æneas* (M.).	*Leonidas* (M.).	*a Persian* (M.).
NOM.	**Andromachē (a)**	**Aenēās**	**Leōnidās**	**Persēs (a)**
GEN.	Andromachēs (ae)	Aenēae	Leōnidae	Persae
DAT.	Andromachae	Aenēae	Leōnidae	Persae
ACC.	Andromachēn (am)	Aenēān (am)	Leōnidam	Persēn (am)
VOC.	Andromachē (a)	Aenēā (ă)	Leōnidā (ă)	Persa
ABL.	Andromachē (ā)	Aenēā	Leōnidā	Persē (ā)

	Anchises (M.).	*son of Æneas* (M.).	*comet* (M.).
NOM.	**Anchīsēs**	**Aeneadēs (ă)**	**comētēs (a)**
GEN.	Anchīsae	Aeneadae	comētae
DAT.	Anchīsae	Aeneadae	comētae
ACC.	Anchīsēn (am)	Aeneadēn	comētēn (am)
VOC.	Anchīsē (ā, ă)	Aeneadē (ă)	comētă
ABL.	Anchīsē (ā)	Aeneadē (ā)	comētā (ē)

a. Many Greek nouns vary between the first, the second, and the third declensions: as, **Boōtae** (gen. of **Boōtēs**, **-is**), **Thūcȳdidās** (acc. plur. of **Thūcȳdidēs**, **-is**). See § 43. *a* and § 63.

b. Greek forms are found only in the singular; the plural is regular: as, **comētae, -ārum**, etc.

SECOND DECLENSION.

38. The Stem of nouns of the Second Declension ends in ŏ (as of **vir, virŏ-**; **servos (-us), servŏ-**; **dominus, dominŏ-**). The nominative is formed from the stem by adding **s** in masculines and feminines, **m** in neuters, the ŏ being weakened to ŭ. But the ending **-quo** makes **-cus** (not **quus**).

In most nouns whose stem ends in **rŏ-** the **s** is not added, but **o** is lost, and **e** intrudes before **r**, if not already present (cf. *chamber* from Fr. *chambre*): as, **ager**, stem **agrŏ-**, Greek ἀγρός.

Nouns of the Second Declension are thus declined:—

Sing.	*slave* (M.).	*boy* (M.).	*field* (M.).	*man* (M.).	*war* (N.).
STEM	**servo-**	**puero-**	**agro-**	**viro-**	**bello-**
NOM.	**servus (os)**	**puer**	**ager**	**vir**	**bellum**
GEN.	servī	puerī	agrī	virī	bellī
DAT.	servō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
ACC.	servum (om)	puerum	agrum	virum	bellum
VOC.	serve	puer	ager	vir	bellum
ABL.	servō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
Plur.					
NOM.	servī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
GEN.	servōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
DAT.	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs
ACC.	servōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	bella
VOC.	servī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
ABL.	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs

NOTE.— Stems in **-quo**, like **equo-** have **ecus (equos), equī, equō, ecum (equom), eque**. The rest is regular.

39. GENDER.— Nouns ending in **us (os), er, ir**, are Masculine; those ending in **um (on)** are Neuter.

a. Names of towns in **us (os)** are Feminine: as, **Corinthus**. Also many names of plants and gems, and some others.

b. The following in **us** are Neuter; their accusative is the same as the nominative: **pelagus** (nom. acc. plur. **pelagē**), *sea;* **vīrus**, *poison;* **vulgus** (rarely M.), *the crowd;* so **cētē**, *sea-monsters* (nom. plur. without singular).

40. CASE-FORMS. — *a.* The Locative form of this declension ends for the singular in **ī**: as, **humī**, *on the ground;* **Corinthī**, *at Corinth;* for the plural, in **īs**: as, **Philippīs**, *at Philippi.*

b. The genitive of nouns in **ius** or **ium** ends in a single **ī**: as, **fīlī**, *of a son;* but the accent of the nominative is retained: as, **ingĕ′nī**, *of genius.*[1] The same contraction occurs in the genitive singular and the dative and ablative plural of nouns in **-āius** and **-ēius**: as, **Grāīs**, *for the Greeks;* **Pompēī**, *of Pompey.*

c. Proper names in **-ius** lose **e** in the vocative, retaining the accent of the nominative: as, **Vergĭ′lī**; also, **fīlius**, *son;* **genius**, *divine guardian;* as, **audī, mī fīlī**, *hear, my son.*

d. Greek names in **-īus** have the vocative **-īe.** Adjectives in **-ĭus** form the vocative in **-ie**, and some of these are occasionally used as nouns: as, **Lacedaemonie**, *O Spartan!*

e. The genitive plural often has **ūm** or (after **v**) **ōm** (cf. § 7) for **ōrum**, especially in the poets: as, **deūm, superūm, dīvōm**, *of the Gods*, **virūm**, *of men.* Also in compounds of **vir**, and in many words of money, measure, and weight: as, **Sēvirūm**, *of the Seviri*, **nummūm**, *of coins*, **iūgerūm**, *of acres.*

f. **Deus**, *god*, has vocative **deus**; plural: nominative and vocative **deī** or **dī** (for **diī**); genitive **deōrum, deūm**; dative and ablative **deīs** or **dīs** (for **diīs**). For the genitive plur. **dīvūm** or **dīvōm** (from **dīvus**, *divine*) is often used.

41. The following stems in **ero-**, in which **e** belongs to the stem, retain the **e** throughout: —

adulter, *adulterer;*	**gener**, *son-in-law;*	**puer**, *boy;*
socer, *father-in-law;*	**vesper**, *evening.*	

Also, compounds in **fer** and **ger** (stem **fero-, gero-**): as, **lūcifer**, *morning star;* **armiger**, *squire.*

a. Some of these have an old nominative in **-erus**: as, **socerus.** So vocative **puere**, *a boy*, as from **puerus** (regularly **puer**).

[1] The genitive in **iī** occurs twice in Virgil, and constantly in Ovid, but was unknown to Cicero. The first **i** was probably retained in sound as *y.*

b. **Vir**, *man*, has gen. **virī**; the adjective **satur**, *sated*, has **satŭrī**; **vesper**, *evening*, has abl. **vespere** (loc. **vesperī**, *in the evening*).

c. **Līber** (a name of Bacchus) has gen. **Līberī**; so, too, the adjective **līber**, *free*, of which **līberī**, *children*, is the plural (§ 82. *b*).

42. The following not having **e** in the stem insert it in the nominative and vocative singular. (Cf. § 10. *d*.)

ager, *field*, st. **agro-**;	**coluber**, *snake;*	**magister**, *master;*
aper, *boar;*	**conger**, *sea-eel;*	**minister**, *servant;*
arbiter, *judge;*	**culter**, *knife;*	**oleaster**, *wild-olive;*
auster, *south wind;*	**faber**, *smith;*	**onager (-grus)**, *wild-ass;*
cancer, *crab;*	**fiber**, *beaver;*	**scomber (-brus)**, *mackerel.*
caper, *goat;*	**liber**, *book;*	

[N.B. — For the corresponding forms of Adjectives, see § 82.]

43. Greek nouns retain many original forms and are declined as follows in the Singular, the Plural being regular: —

	fable (M.).	*mock-sun* (N.).	*Delos* (F.).	*Athos* (M.).	*Orpheus* (M.).
NOM.	**mȳthos**	**parēlion**	**Dēlos**	**Athōs (ō)**	**Orpheus**
GEN.	mȳthī	parēliī	Dēlī	Athō (ī)	Orpheī (**eos**)
DAT.	mȳthō	parēliō	Dēlō	Athō	Orpheī
ACC.	mȳthon	parēlion	Dēlon (**um**)	Athōn (**um**)	Orphea
VOC.	mȳthe	parēlion	Dēle	Athō**s**	Orpheu
ABL.	mȳthō	parēliō	Dēlō	Athō	Orpheō

a. Many names in **-ēs** belonging to the third declension have also a genitive in -ī: as, **Thūcȳdidēs, Thūcȳdidī** (see §§ 37. *b* and 52).

b. Several names in **-er** have also a nom. in **-us**: as, **Teucer** or **Teucrus**. The name **Panthūs** has the vocative **Panthū** (§ 63. *i*).

c. The genitive plural of certain titles of books takes the Greek termination **-ōn**: as, **Geōrgicōn**, *of the Georgics*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

Nouns of the Third Declension are best classed according to their stems, as ending (1) in a Mute, (2) in a Liquid (**l, n, r**), (3) in a Vowel (**ĭ**).

A few whose stems end in **u**, formerly long (**grūs, sūs**), are treated as consonant-stems.

1. Mute-Stems.

44. Masculine and Feminine nouns, whose stem ends in a Mute, form the nominative by adding **-s**. If the mute is a *lingual* (**t**, **d**), it is suppressed before **-s**; if it is a *palatal* (**c**, **g**), it unites with **-s**, forming **-x**: as, —

op-is, Ops, *help;* **custōd-is, custōs**, *guardian;* **rēg-is, rēx**, *king*.[1]

Neuters have for the nominative the simple stem (for some modifications, see § 45): —

capit-is, caput, *head;* **poēmat-is, poēma**, *poem*.

45. The vowel before the final consonant of the stem is often modified: as, —

adip-is, adeps; **particip-is, particeps**; **aucup-is, auceps**; **hospit-is, hospes**; **capit-is, caput**; **cord-is, cor**; **poēmat-is, poēma**; **apĭc-is, apex**; **indĭc-is, index**; but, **cornīc-is, cornīx**.

46. Nouns of this class are declined as follows: —

Sing.	*help* (F.).	*king* (M.).	*guide* (C.).	*soldier* (M.).	*head* (N.).
STEM	**op-**	**rēg-**	**duc-**	**mīlit-**	**capit-**
NOM.	[**ops**]	**rēx**	**dux**	**mīles**	**caput**
GEN.	**opis**	**rēgis**	**ducis**	**mīlitis**	**capitis**
DAT.	**opī**	**rēgī**	**ducī**	**mīlitī**	**capitī**
ACC.	**opem**	**rēgem**	**ducem**	**mīlitem**	**caput**
VOC.	**ops**	**rēx**	**dux**	**mīles**	**caput**
ABL.	**ope**	**rēge**	**duce**	**mīlite**	**capite**
Plur.	*wealth*				
NOM.	**opēs**	**rēgēs**	**ducēs**	**mīlitēs**	**capita**
GEN.	**opum**	**rēgum**	**ducum**	**mīlitum**	**capitum**
DAT.	**opibus**	**rēgibus**	**ducibus**	**mīlitibus**	**capitibus**
ACC.	**opēs**	**rēgēs**	**ducēs**	**mīlitēs**	**capita**
VOC.	**opēs**	**rēgēs**	**ducēs**	**mīlitēs**	**capita**
ABL.	**opibus**	**rēgibus**	**ducibus**	**mīlitibus**	**capitibus**

[1] In these the genitive is given first to show the stem as it is shown in vocabularies.

47. In like manner are declined —

prīnceps, -ipis (C.), *chief;* **lapis, -idis** (M.), *stone;* **custōs, -ōdis** (C.), *guard;* **comes, -itis** (C.), *companion;* **ariēs, -etis** (M.), *ram;* **iūdex, -icis** (M.), *judge;* **cornix, -īcis** (F.), *raven;* **poēma, -atis** (N.), *poem* (§ 47. *b*).

a. Many apparent mute-stems,[1] having the genitive plural in **-ium,** are for convenience classed with **i**-stems (§ 54).

b. Greek neuters (as **poēma**), with nominative singular in **-a,** frequently end in the dative and ablative plural in **-īs,** and in the genitive plural rarely in **-ōrum.**

c. A few apparent **i**-stems belong here: **canis,** or **canēs,** gen. **canis** (stem orig. **can-**), *dog* (cf. § 54).

2. Liquid-Stems.

48. In nouns whose stem ends in a Liquid (**l, n, r**), the nominative is the same as the (modified) stem, as follows:—

As **leōn-is, leō,** *lion;* **legiōn-is, legiō,** *legion;* **virgin-is virgō,** *maiden;* **homin-is, homō,** *man;* **turbin-is, turbō,** *whirlpool;* **Apollin-is, Apollō**; **carn-is, carō,** *flesh* (see § 61); **Aniēn-is, Aniō**; **cornicin-is, cornicen** (M.), *horn-blower;* **carmin-is, carmen** (N.), *song;* **patr-is, pater,** *father;* **oper-is** (originally **opesis**), **opus,** *work;* **ciner-is, cinis,** *ashes.*

NOTE. — A few Masculine and Feminine stems have a nom. in **-s** as well as **-r**: as, **honōr-is, honōs** (or **honor**) ; **arbŏr-is, arbōs** (or **arbor**), *tree.*

Stems in **ll-, rr-** (N.) lose one of their liquids in the nominative : as, **farr-is, far,** *grain;* **fell-is, fel,** *gall.*

49. Nouns of this class are declined as follows : —

Sing.	*consul* (M.).	*lion* (M.).	*maiden* (F.).	*name* (N.).
STEM	**cōnsul-**	**leōn-**	**virgin-**	**nōmin-**
NOM.	**cōnsul**	**leō**	**virgō**	**nōmen**
GEN.	cōnsul**is**	leōn**is**	virgin**is**	nōmin**is**
DAT.	cōnsul**ī**	leōn**ī**	virgin**ī**	nōmin**ī**
ACC.	cōnsul**em**	leōn**em**	virgin**em**	nōmen
VOC.	cōnsul	leō	virgō	nōmen
ABL.	cōnsul**e**	leōn**e**	virgin**e**	nōmin**e**

[1] That is, as appears from the nominative. No fast line can be drawn between mute-stems and i-stems, as they were confused in both ways.

Plur.				
NOM.	cōnsul**ēs**	leōn**ēs**	virgin**ēs**	nōmin**a**
GEN.	cōnsul**um**	leōn**um**	virgin**um**	nōmin**um**
DAT.	cōnsul**ibus**	leōn**ibus**	virgin**ibus**	nōmin**ibus**
ACC.	cōnsul**ēs**	leōn**ēs**	virgin**ēs**	nōmin**a**
VOC.	cōnsul**ēs**	leōn**ēs**	virgin**ēs**	nōmin**a**
ABL.	cōnsul**ibus**	leōn**ibus**	virgin**ibus**	nōmin**ibus**
Sing.	*body* (N.).	*race* (N.).	*ivory* (N.).	*plain* (N.).
STEM	**corpor-**, orig. **-os-**	**gener-**, orig. **-es-**	**ebor-**	**aequor-**
NOM.	**corpus**	**genus**	**ebur**	**aequor**
GEN.	corpor**is**	gener**is**	ebor**is**	aequor**is**
DAT.	corpor**ī**	gener**ī**	ebor**ī**	aequor**ī**
ACC.	corpus	genus	ebur	aequor
VOC.	corpus	genus	ebur	aequor
ABL.	corpor**e**	gener**e**	ebor**e**	aequor**e**
Plur.				
NOM.	corpor**a**	gener**a**	ebor**a**	aequor**a**
GEN.	corpor**um**	gener**um**	ebor**um**	aequor**um**
DAT.	corpor**ibus**	gener**ibus**	ebor**ibus**	aequor**ibus**
ACC.	corpor**a**	gener**a**	ebor**a**	aequor**a**
VOC.	corpor**a**	gener**a**	ebor**a**	aequor**a**
ABL.	corpor**ibus**	gener**ibus**	ebor**ibus**	aequor**ibus**

50. In like manner are declined —

pater, patris (M.), *father;*
furfur, -uris (M.), *bran;*
opus, -eris (N.), *work;*
arbor (**-ōs**), **-oris** (F.), *tree;*
honor (**-ōs**), **-ōris** (M.), *honor;*
pīgnus, -eris or **-oris**, *pledge.*

The following real or apparent liquid-stems have the genitive plural in **-ium**, and are for convenience classed with the **i**-stems: **imber, linter, ūter, venter**; **fūr, glīs, lār, mās, mūs** [†**rēn**]; also **vīrēs** (pl. from **vīs**: see § 61).

3. Vowel-Stems.

51. Vowel-stems of the Third Declension end in **i-** (as **turris**, stem **turri-**; **mare**, stem **mari-**). The nominative, except in neuters, is formed by adding **-s** to the stem.

a. Thirty-five nouns change ĭ and ē in the nominative, and many others vary between i and ē: as, **cīvēs**, or **cīvis**, *citizen*: **canēs** or **canis** (treated as i-stem), *dog*.

b. The nominative of a few stems in **bri-** and **tri-** does not add **-s**, but loses **i**, inserting **e** before **r**. These are **imber, linter, ūter, venter** (§ 54, and cf. **ager**).

c. The nominative of neuters is the same as the stem, with the change of ĭ to ĕ (as in **mare**). But when **i** is preceded by **al** or **ar**, the **e** is lost, as in **animal** (§ 53. *c*).

52. Nouns of this class are declined as follows:—

Sing.	*thirst* (F.).	*tower* (F.).	*cloud* (F.).	*seat* (N.).	*animal* (N.).
STEM	**siti-**	**turri-**	**nūbi-**	**sedīli-**	**animāli-**
NOM.	**sitis**	**turris**	**nūbēs**	**sedīle**	**animal**
GEN.	sitis	turris	nūbis	sedīlis	animālis
DAT.	sitī	turrī	nūbī	sedīlī	animālī
ACC.	sitim	turrem (im)	nūbem	sedīle	animal
VOC.	sitis	turris	nūbēs	sedīle	animal
ABL.	sitī	turre (ī)	nūbe	sedīlī	animālī
Plur.					
NOM.		turrēs	nūbēs	sedīlia	animālia
GEN.		turrium	nūbium	sedīlium	animālium
DAT.		turribus	nūbibus	sedīlibus	animālibus
ACC.		turrīs (ēs)	nūbīs (ēs)	sedīlia	animālia
VOC.		turrēs	nūbēs	sedīlia	animālia
ABL.		turribus	nūbibus	sedīlibus	animālibus

53. Nouns of this class include—

a. Nouns in **-ēs** or **-is** (mostly feminine) or **e** (neuter) having the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive (*parisyllabic*).

b. Those in **-er**, except **pater, māter, frāter, accipiter.**

c. Neuters in **-al, -ar** (originally neuters of adjectives in **ālis, -āris**) which have lost a final **-e**.

54. Many nouns with apparently consonant-stems were originally **i**-stems or confused with them.[1] These are—

[1] The i-declension was confused even to the Romans, nor was it stable at all periods of the language, early Latin having i-forms which later disappeared. Nouns tended to lose the i-forms, Adjectives, to gain them.

1. Monosyllables with stem apparently ending in two consonants: as, **urbs**, **mōns** (gen. **montis**), **nox** (gen. **noctis**), **arx**; together with **imber**, **linter**, **ūter**, **venter** (§ 51. *b*).

2. Stems in **tāt-** (as **cīvitās**, **-ātis**),[1] or in **d** or **t** preceded by a consonant (including participles used as nouns); also the monosyllables **dōs**, [† **faux**], **fūr**, **glīs**, **līs**, **mās**, **mūs**, **nix**, [† **rēn**], **strix**, **vīs**, **scrobs** (cf. § 50).

3. Nouns denoting birth or abode, having stems in **āt-**, **īt-**, originally adjectives: as, **Arpīnās**, **-ātis** (§ 164. *c*), with **penātēs** and **optimātēs** (§ 76. 2).

They are thus declined:—

Sing.	*city* (F.).	*night* (F.).	*age* (F.).	*mouse* (M.).	*shower* (M.).
STEM	**urbi-**	**nocti-**	**aetāti-**	**mūri-**	**imbri-**
NOM.	**urbs**	**nox**	**aetās**	**mūs**	**imber**
GEN.	urbis	noctis	aetātis	mūris	imbris
DAT.	urbī	noctī	aetātī	mūrī	imbrī
ACC.	urbem	noctem	aetātem	mūrem	imbrem
VOC.	urbs	nox	aetās	mūs	imber
ABL.	urbe	nocte	aetāte	mūre	imbre (ī)
Plur.					
NOM.	urbēs	noctēs	aetātēs	mūrēs	imbrēs
GEN.	urbium	noctium	aetātum (ium)	mūrium	imbrium
DAT.	urbibus	noctibus	aetātibus	mūribus	imbribus
ACC.	urbīs (ēs)	noctīs (ēs)	aetātīs (ēs)	mūrīs (ēs)	imbrīs (ēs)
VOC.	urbēs	noctēs	aetātēs	mūrēs	imbrēs
ABL.	urbibus	noctibus	aetātibus	mūribus	imbribus

NOTE.—The declension of these nouns in the singular is exactly like that of consonant-stems, and in the plural like that of vowel-stems.

55. Vowel-stems (real or confused) show the **i** of the stem in the following forms:—

a. They almost all have the genitive plural in **-ium**, but some monosyllables lack it entirely. Exceptions are **canis** and **iuvenis** (originally consonant-stems), patrials in **-ās**, **ātis** and **is**, **ītis**, and a few others occasionally for metrical reasons, or from confusion; as, **Arpīnās**, **Arpīnātum**; **Samnis**, **Samnītum**; **clādēs**, **clādum**.

[1] These, however, more commonly have the genitive plural in **-um**.

b. All neuters have the nominative and accusative plural in **-ia**.

c. The accusative plural (M. or F.) is regularly **-īs**.

d. The accusative singular (M. or F.) of a few ends in **-im** (§ 56).

e. The ablative singular of all neuters, and of many masculines and feminines, ends in -ī (see § 57).

56. The regular case-ending of the accusative singular of i-stems (M. or F.) would be **-im**: as, **sitis, sitim** (cf. **stella, -am**; **servos, -om**); but in most nouns this is changed to **-em** (following the consonant declension).

a. The accusative in **-im** is found exclusively —

1. In Greek nouns and names of rivers.
2. In **būris, cucumis, rāvis, sitis, tussis, vīs.**
3. In adverbs in **-tim** (being accusatives of nouns in **-tis**), as **partim**; and in **amussim.**

b. The accusative in **-im** is found sometimes in **febris, puppis, restis, turris, secūris, sēmentis,** and rarely in many other words.

57. The regular ablative singular of i-stems would end in -ī: as, **sitis, sitī**; but in most nouns this is changed to **-e**.

a. The ablative in -ī is found exclusively —

1. In nouns having the accusative in **-im** (§ 56); also, **secūris.**
2. In **aequālis, annālis, aquālis, cōnsulāris, gentīlis, molāris, prīmipīlāris, tribūlis** used as nouns.
3. In neuters (whose nominative ends in **-e, -al, -ar**): except **baccar, iubar,** and sometimes (in verse) **mare, rēte.**

b. The ablative in -ī is found sometimes —

1. In **avis, clāvis, febris, finis, īgnis,**[1] **imber, nāvis, ovis, pelvis, puppis, sēmentis, strigilis, turris.**
2. In **affinis, bipennis, canālis, familiāris, nātālis, rīvālis, sapiēns, tridēns, trirēmis, vōcālis** used as nouns.

c. The ablative of **famēs** is always **famē**. The defective **māne** has sometimes locative **mānī** used as ablative.

d. Most names of towns in **-e**, — as **Praeneste, Tergeste,** — and **Sōracte**, a mountain, have the ablative in **-e**. **Caere** has **Caerēte.**

e. For **canis**, see § 47. *c*.

[1] Always in the formula **aquā et īgnī interdīcī** (§ 243. *a*).

58. The regular Nominative plural of **i**-stems would end in **-īs**, but this is very rarely found in nouns. The regular Accusative in **-īs** is common, but not exclusively used in any word.

59. The following have **-um** (not **-ium**) in the genitive plural: **canis**, **iuvenis** (originally consonant-stems); **ambāgēs**, **mare** (once only, otherwise wanting), **volucris**; also (sometimes) **apis**, **caedēs**, **clādēs**, **mēnsis**, **sēdēs**, **struēs**, **subolēs**, **vātēs**, and patrials in **-ās**, **-ātis**; **-is**, **-ītis**; as, **Arpīnās**, **Arpīnātum**; **Samnīs**, **Samnītum**.

4. Irregular Nouns.

60. In many nouns the stem is irregularly modified in the nominative or other cases. Thus,—

a. The vowel-stems **grū-**, **sū-** add **s** in the nominative, and are inflected like mute-stems: **grūs** has also a nominative **gruis**; **sūs** has both **suibus** and **subus** in the dative and ablative plural.

b. In the stem **bov-** (**bou-**) the diphthong **ou** becomes **ō** in the nominative (**bōs**, **bŏvis**). In **nāv-** (**nau-**) an **i** is added (**nāvis**, **-is**). In **Iŏv-** (= Ζεύς) the diphthong (**ou**) becomes **ū** in **Iū-piter** (for **-păter**), gen. **Iŏvis**, etc.

c. In **iter**, **itineris** (N.), **iecur**, **iecinoris** (N.), **supellex**, **supellectilis** (F.), the nominative is formed from a shorter stem, in **senex**, **senis** from a longer; so that these words show a mixture of two distinct forms. The shorter form is found in the genitive **iecor-is**.

d. Of the many original **s**-stems, only **vās**, **vāsis** (N.) (pl. **vāsa**, **-ōrum**), retains its proper form in the nominative.

61. Some peculiar forms are thus declined:—

Sing.	*ox, cow* (C.).	*old man* (M.)	*flesh* (F.).	*bone* (N.).	*force* (F.).	*swine* (C.).
N., V.	**bōs**	**senex**	**carō**	**os**	**vīs**	**sūs**
GEN.	**bŏvis**	**senis**	**carnis**	**ossis**	**vīs** (rare)	**suis**
DAT.	**bovī**	**senī**	**carnī**	**ossī**	**vī** (rare)	**suī**
ACC.	**bovem**	**senem**	**carnem**	**os**	**vim**	**suem**
ABL.	**bove**	**sene**	**carne**	**osse**	**vī**	**sue**
Plur.	*cattle*				*strength*	
N., A., V.	**bovēs**	**senēs**	**carnēs**	**ossa**	**vīrēs**	**suēs**
GEN.	**boum**	**senum**	**carnium**	**ossium**	**vīrium**	**suum**
D., ABL.	**bōbus** (**būbus**)	**senibus**	**carnibus**	**ossibus**	**vīribus**	**sŭbus** (**suibus**)

5. Case-Forms.

62. The LOCATIVE form ends in the singular in **-ī** or **-e**: as, **rūrī**, *in the country;* **Carthāginī** or **Carthāgine**, *at Carthage;* in the plural in **-ibus**: as, **Trallibus**, *at Tralles.*

6. Greek Forms.

63. Many nouns originally Greek — mostly proper names — retain Greek forms of inflection.

a. Stems in **īn-** (**i** long): **delphīnus**, **-ī** (M.), has also the form **delphīn**, **-īnis**; **Salamīs**, **-īnis** (F.), has acc. **Salamīna**.

b. Most stems in **ĭd-** (nom. **-is**) often have also the forms of **i**-stems: as, **tigris**, **-ĭdis** (**-ĭdos**) or **-is**; acc. **-ĭdem** (**-ĭda**) or **-im** (**-in**); abl. **-ĭde** or **-ī**. But many, including most feminine proper names, have acc. **-idem** (**-ida**), abl. **-ide**, — not **-im** or **-ī**. (These stems are irregular also in Greek.)

c. Stems in **on-** sometimes retain **-n** in the nominative: as, **Agamemnōn** (or **Agamemnō**), **-ŏnis**, accusative **-ŏna**.

d. Stems in **ont-** form the nom. in **-ōn**: as, **horīzōn**, **Xenophōn**; but a few are occasionally Latinized into **ōn-** (nom. **-ō**): as, **Dracō**, **-ōnis**.

e. Stems in **ant-**, **ent-** have the nom. in **-ās**, **-īs**: as **adamās**, **-antis**; **Simoīs**, **-entis**. So a few in **ūnt-** (contracted from **oënt-**) have **-ūs**: as, **Trapezūs**, **-ūntis**. Occasionally the Latin form of nominative is also found: as, **Atlāns**, **elephāns**, as well as **Atlās**, **elephās**.

f. Many Greek nouns have gen. **-ŏs**, acc. **-ă**; plur. nom. **-ĕs**, acc. **-ăs**: as, **āēr**, **aethēr**, **crātēr**, **hērōs** (**-ōis**), **lampas** (**-ădis** or **-ădos**), **lynx** (**-cis** or **-cŏs**), **nāis** (**-idos**), **Orpheus** (**-eos**: see § 43).

g. A few in **-ys** have acc. **-yn**, voc. **-y**, abl. **-yē**: as, **chelys**, **-yn**, **-y**; **Capys**, **-yos**, **-yī**, **-yn**, **-y**, **-yē**.

h. Several feminine names in **-ō** have gen. sing. **-ūs**, all the other cases ending in **-ō**; they may also have regular forms: as, **Dīdō**, gen. **Dīdōnis** or **Dīdūs**; dat. **Dīdōnī** or **Dīdō**, etc.

i. Several Greek forms are irregularly retained in the vocative: as, **Panthūs**, voc. **Panthū**; **Orpheus**, **Orpheu**; **Atlās**, **Atlā**; **Daphnis**, **Daphnĭ**; **Periclēs**, **Periclē** (cf. § 43).

64. Some of these forms are seen in the following examples: —

Sing.	*hero*(M.).	*torch*(F.).	*base*(F.).	*naiad*(F.).	*tiger*(C.).
STEM	**hērō-**	**lampad-**	**basi-**	**naid-**	**tigrid-(tigri-)**
N., V.	**hērōs**	**lampas**	**basis**	**nāis**	**tigris**
GEN.	hērōis	lampados	baseōs	nāidos	tigris (idos)
DAT.	hērōī	lampadī	basī	nāidī	tigrī
ACC.	hērōa	lampada	basin	nāida	tigrin (ida)
ABL.	hērōe	lampade	basī	nāide	tigrī (ide)
Plur.					
N., V.	hērōĕs	lampadĕs	basēs	nāidĕs	tigrēs
GEN.	hērōum	lampadum	basium(eōn)	nāidum	tigrium
D., A.[1]	hērōibus	lampadibus	basibus	nāidibus	tigribus
ACC.	hērōăs	lampadăs	basīs (ēis)	nāidăs	tigrīs (idăs)

PROPER NAMES.

NOM.	**Atlās**	**Dīdō**	**Simoīs**	**Capys**	**Daphnis**
GEN.	Atlantis	Dīdōnis (ūs)	Simoentis	Capyos	Daphnidis
DAT.	Atlantī	Dīdōnī (ō)	Simoentī	Capyī	Daphnidī
ACC.	Atlanta	Dīdōnem (ō)	Simoenta	Capyn	Daphnim (in)
VOC.	Atlās (ā)	Dīdō	Simoīs	Capy	Daphnĭ
ABL.	Atlante	Dīdōne (ō)	Simoente	Capye	Daphnī

NOTE. — The regular Latin forms can be used for most of the above.

7. Rules of Gender.

65. The following are general Rules for the Gender of nouns of the third declension, classed according to the *termination of the nominative.*

a. Masculine endings are **-ō**, **-or**, **-ōs**, **-er**, **-ĕs** (gen. **-ĭdis**, **-ĭtis**).

b. Feminine endings are **-ās** (gen. **ātis**), **-ēs** (gen. **-is**), **-is**, **-ys**, **-x**, **-s** (following a consonant); also, **-dō**, **-gō** (gen. **-inis**), **-iō** (abstract and collective), and **-ūs** (gen. **ūdis**, **-ūtis**).

c. Neuter endings are **-a**, **-e**, **-ī**, **-y**; **-c**, **-l**, **-t**; **-men** (gen. **-mĭnis**); **-ar**, **-ur**, **-ŭs** (gen. **-eris**, **-oris**).

NOTE. — All these have exceptions.

66. For general Rules for the Gender of nouns of the third declension, classed according to their stems, see Allen and Greenough's larger grammar.

[1] Dative, **hērōisin** (once only).

67. For the Forms of Inflection of nouns of the third declension, classed according to their stems, see Allen and Greenough's larger grammar.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

68. The Stem of nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in **u-** weakened to **i**, before **-bus**. Masculine and feminine nouns form the nominative by adding **-s**; neuters have for nominative the simple stem, but with **ū** (long).

Nouns of the Fourth Declension are thus declined:—

Sing.	*hand* (F.).	*lake* (M.).	*knee* (N.).
	STEM **manu-**	**lacu-**	**genu-**
NOM.	**manus**	**lacus**	**genū**
GEN.	manūs	lacūs	genū (ūs)
DAT.	manuī (ū)	lacuī (ū)	genū
ACC.	manum	lacum	genū
VOC.	manus	lacus	genū
ABL.	manū	lacū	genū
Plur.			
NOM.	manūs	lacūs	genua
GEN.	manuum	lacuum	genuum
DAT.	manibus	lacubus	genibus
ACC.	manūs	lacūs	genua
VOC.	manūs	lacūs	genua
ABL.	manibus	lacubus	genibus

69. GENDER.—*a.* Most nouns in **-us** are Masculine. The following are Feminine: **acus, anus, colus, domus, īdūs** (pl.), **manus, nurus, porticus, quīnquātrūs** (pl.), **socrus, tribus**, with a few names of plants and trees. Also, rarely, **arcus, penus, specus.**

b. The only neuters are **cornū, genū, pecū, verū.**

70. CASE-FORMS.—*a.* The uncontracted form **-uis** (sometimes **-uos**) is sometimes found in the genitive, as **senātuos**; and an old (irregular) genitive in **-ī** is used by some writers: as, **ornātī, senātī.**

b. The nominative plural has rarely the form **-uus.**

c. The genitive plural is sometimes contracted into **-um.**

d. The following retain the regular dative and ablative plural in -ŭbus: **artus, partus, portus, tribus, verū** (but sometimes **portibus, veribus**); also dissyllables in **-cus**: as, **lacus**.

e. Most names of plants, and **colus**, *distaff*, have also forms of the second declension.

f. **Domus**, *house*, has two stems, ending in **u-** and **o-** (cf. gen. in **-ī**, § 70. *a*), and is declined as follows:[1]—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., V.	**domus**	**domūs**
GEN.	**domūs (domī, loc.)**	**domuum (domōrum)**
DAT.	**domuī (domō)**	**domibus**
ACC.	**domum**	**domōs (domūs)**
ABL.	**domō (domū)**	**domibus**

g. The only locative form of the fourth declension is **domuī**. But even this is rare, and **domī** is almost universally used instead.

71. Most nouns of the fourth declension are formed from verb-stems, or roots, by means of the suffix **-tus (-sus)** (cf. § 163. *b*): as, **cantus**, *song*, CAN, **canō**, *sing*.

a. The accusative and ablative (or dative, perhaps both) of these nouns form the Supines of verbs (§ 109. *c*): as, **audītum, vīsū**.

b. Of many verbal derivatives only the ablative is used as a noun: as, **iūssū (meō)**, *by (my) command;* so **iniūssū**, *without orders*. Of some only the dative: as, **memorātuī, dīvīsuī**.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

72. The Stem of nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in **ē-**. The nominative is formed from it by adding **-s**.

These nouns are thus declined:—

	SING. *thing* (F.)	PLUR.	SING. *day* (M.).	PLUR.	*faith* (F.).
	STEM **rē-**		**diē-**		**fidē-**
NOM.	**rēs**	**rēs**	**diēs**	**diēs**	**fidēs**
GEN.	**rĕī**	**rērum**	**diēī (diē)**	**diērum**	**fidĕī**
DAT.	**rĕī**	**rēbus**	**diēī (diē)**	**diēbus**	**fidĕī**
ACC.	**rem**	**rēs**	**diem**	**diēs**	**fidem**
VOC.	**rēs**	**rēs**	**diēs**	**diēs**	**fidēs**
ABL.	**rē**	**rēbus**	**diē**	**diēbus**	**fidē**

[1] The forms in parenthesis, except **domī** (cf. § 70. *g*), are less common.

NOTE.— The ē has been shortened in the genitive and dative singular of **fidēs, spēs, rēs**, but in these it is found long in early Latin.

73. GENDER. — All nouns of this declension are feminine, except **diēs** (usually M.), *day*, and **merīdiēs** (M.), *noon*. **Diēs** is sometimes feminine in the singular, regularly so when used of time in general: as, **longa diēs**, *a long time;* **cōnstitūtā diē**, *on a set day;* also in the poets: as, **pulchra diēs**, *a fine day*.

74. CASE-FORMS. — *a*. The Genitive singular anciently ended in **-ēs** (cf. **-ās** of first declension, § 36. *b*). The genitive ending **-ēī** was sometimes contracted into **-ēī**, **-ī**, or **-ē**: as, **diī** (Æn. i. 636), and the phrases **plēbī-scītum, tribūnus plēbēī.**

b. The fifth declension is only a variety of the first, and several nouns have forms of both: as, **māteria, -iēs; saevitia, -iēs.**

c. The Locative of this declension ends in **-ē**. It is found in certain adverbs and expressions of time: as, **hodiē** (for **hoi-diē**, cf. **huic**), *to-day;* **perendiē**, *day after to-morrow;* **diē quārtō** (old, **quārtī**), *the fourth day;* **prīdiē**, *the day before.*

d. Of nouns of the fifth declension, **diēs** and **rēs** only are declined throughout. Most want the plural, which is found, however, in the nominative and accusative in the following: **aciēs, effigiēs, ēluviēs, faciēs, glaciēs, seriēs, speciēs, spēs.**

DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

75. Some nouns are ordinarily found in the Singular number only (*sīngulāria tantum*). These are —

1. Most proper names: as **Caesar**, *Cæsar*, **Gallia**, *Gaul.*

2. Names of things not counted, but reckoned in mass: as, **aurum**, *gold;* **āēr**, *air;* **trīticum**, *wheat.*

3. Abstract nouns: as, **ambitiō**, *ambition;* **fortitūdō**, *courage;* **calor**, *heat.*

But many of these are used in the plural in some other sense. Thus,—

a. A proper name may be applied to two or more persons or places, or even things, and so become strictly common: as, **duodecim Caesarēs**, *the twelve Cæsars;* **Galliae**, *the two Gauls* (Cis- and Transalpine); **Castŏrēs**, *Castor and Pollux;* **Iovēs**, *images of Jupiter.*

b. Particular objects may be denoted: as, **aera**, *bronze utensils*, **nivēs**, *snowflakes;* or different kinds of a thing: as, **āeres**, *airs* (good and bad).

c. The plural of abstract nouns denotes *instances* of the quality, or the like: as, **quaedam excellentiae**, *some cases of superiority;* **calōrēs**, **frīgora**, *times of heat* and *cold*. (See also § 79. *d.*)

76. Some nouns are commonly found only in the Plural (*plūrālia tantum* [cf. § 79. *c*]). Such are —

1. Many proper names: as, **Athēnae**, *Athens*, **Thūriī**, **Philippī**, **Vēiī**, names of towns, especially names of festivals and games: as, **Olympia**, *the Olympic Games;* **Bacchānālia**, *feast of Bacchus;* **lūdī Rōmānī**, *the Roman Games.*

2. Names of classes: as, **optimātēs**, *the upper classes;* **māiōrēs**, *ancestors;* **līberī**, *children;* **penātēs**, *household gods.*

3. Words plural by signification: as, **arma**, *weapons;* **artūs**, *joints;* **dīvitiae**, *riches;* **scālae**, *stairs;* **valvae**, *folding-doors.*

These often have a corresponding singular in some form or other, as noun or adjective.

a. As noun, to denote a single object: as, **Bacchānal**, *a spot sacred to Bacchus;* **optimās**, *an aristocrat.*

b. As adjective: as, **Catō Māior**, *Cato the Elder.*

c. In another sense: as, **scāla**, *a ladder;* **artus**, *a joint.*

77. Many nouns are defective in case forms. For lists, see Allen and Greenough's larger grammar.

VARIABLE NOUNS.

78. Many nouns vary either in Declension or Gender. For lists, see Allen and Greenough's larger grammar. The dictionary gives sufficient information in each case.

79. Many nouns have irregularities of Number either in their ordinary or occasional use.

a. Many nouns vary in meaning in the Singular and Plural: as,—

aedēs, -is (F.), *temple;*	**aedēs, -ium,** *house.*
aqua (F.), *water;*	**aquae,** *a watering-place.*
auxilium (N.), *help;*	**auxilia,** *auxiliaries.*
bonum (N.), *a good;*	**bona,** *property.*
carcer (N.), *dungeon;*	**carcerēs,** *barriers* (of race-course).
castrum (N.), *fort;*	**castra,** *camp.*
comitium (N.), *place of assembly;*	**comitia,** *an election* (*town meeting*).
cōpia (F.), *plenty;*	**cōpiae,** *troops.*
fidēs (F.), *harp string;*	**fidēs,** *lyre.*
finis (M.), *end;*	**fīnēs,** *bounds, territories.*
grātia (F.), *favor* (rarely, *thanks*);	**grātiae,** *thanks* (also, *the Graces*).
impedīmentum (N.), *hindrance;*	**impedīmenta,** *baggage.*
littera (F.), *letter* (of alphabet);	**litterae,** *epistle.*
locus (M.), *place* [pl. **loca** (N.)];	**locī,** *topics.*
lūdus (M.), *sport;*	**lūdī,** *public games.*
opera (F.), *work;*	**operae,** *day-laborers* ("hands").
[**ops**] **opis** (F.), *help* (§ 46);	**opēs,** *resources, wealth.*
pars (F.), *a part;*	**partēs,** *part* (on the stage), *party.*
rōstrum (N.), *beak of a ship;*	**rōstra,** *speaker's platform.*
sāl (M. or N.), *salt;*	**salēs,** *witticisms.*

b. The singular of a noun usually denoting an individual is sometimes used collectively to denote a group: as, **Poenus,** *the Carthaginians;* **mīles,** *the soldiery;* **eques,** *the cavalry.*

c. Of many nouns the plural is usually, but not exclusively, used: as, **cervīcēs,** *the neck;* **Quirītēs,** *Romans;* **viscera,** *flesh.*

d. The poets often use the plural for the singular for metrical reasons, or from a mere fashion: as, **ōra** (for **ōs**), *the face;* **scēptra** (for **scēptrum**), *sceptre;* **silentia** (for **silentium**), *silence.*

PROPER NAMES.

80. A Roman had regularly three names, denoting the *person,* the *gens,* and the *family.*

a. Thus, in the name **Mārcus Tullius Cicerō,** we have **Mārcus** the *praenōmen,* or personal name; **Tullius,** the *nōmen* (properly an

adjective), *i.e.* the name of the gens, or house, whose supposed original head was a Tullus; **Cicerō**, the *cōgnōmen*, or family name.

NOTE. — When two persons of the same family are mentioned together, the cognomen is usually in the plural: as **Pūblius et Servius Sullae**.

b. A fourth or fifth name was sometimes given. Thus the complete name of Scipio the Younger was **Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō Āfricānus Aemiliānus**: **Āfricānus**, from his exploits in Africa; **Aemiliānus**, as adopted from the Æmilian gens.

c. Women had commonly in classical times no personal names, but were known only by the *nōmen* of their gens. Thus, the wife of Cicero was **Terentia**, and his daughter **Tullia**. A younger daughter would have been called **Tullia secunda** or **minor**, and so on.

d. The commonest prænomens are thus abbreviated: —

A. Aulus.	**L. Lūcius.**	**Q. Quīntus.**
App. Appius.	**M. Mārcus.**	**Ser. Servius.**
C. (**G.**) **Gāius** (*Caius*) (cf. § 6).	**M'. Mānius.**	**Sex. Sextus.**
Cn. (**Gn.**) **Gnaeus** (*Cneius*).	**Mam. Māmercus.**	**Sp. Spurius.**
D. Decimus.	**N. Numerius.**	**T. Titus.**
K. Kaesō (*Caeso*).	**P. Pūblius.**	**Ti. Tiberius.**

4. ADJECTIVES.

INFLECTION.

Adjectives and Participles are formed and declined like Nouns, differing only in their use. They distinguish gender by different forms in the same word, and agree with their nouns in *gender*, *number*, and *case*. They are (1) of the First and Second Declensions, or (2) of the Third Declension.

1. First and Second Declensions.

81. Adjectives of the first and second declensions (**a**- and **o**-stems) are declined in the Masculine like **servus**, in the Feminine like **stella**, and in the Neuter like **bellum**; as, —

bonus, *good*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
STEM	**bono-**	**bona-**	**bono-**			
NOM.	**bonus**	**bonă**	**bonum**	**bonī**	**bonae**	**bona**
GEN.	**bonī**	**bonae**	**bonī**	**bonōrum**	**bonārum**	**bonōrum**
DAT.	**bonō**	**bonae**	**bonō**	**bonīs**	**bonīs**	**bonīs**
ACC.	**bonum**	**bonam**	**bonum**	**bonōs**	**bonās**	**bona**
VOC.	**bone**	**bona**	**bonum**	**bonī**	**bonae**	**bona**
ABL.	**bonō**	**bonā**	**bonō**	**bonīs**	**bonīs**	**bonīs**

NOTE. — Stems in **quo-** have nominative **-cus, -qua, -cum**, accusative **-cum, -quam, -cum**, to avoid **-quu**, (see § 7). Thus, —

NOM.	**relicus (-quos)**	**reliqua**	**relicum (-quom)**
GEN.	**reliquī**	**reliquae**	**reliquī**, etc.

a. The masculine genitive singular of Adjectives in **-ius** ends in **-iī**, and the vocative in **-ie**; not in **-ī**, as in Nouns (cf. § 40. *b*, *c*) : as, **Lacedaemonius, -iī, -ie.**

82. Stems ending in **ro-** preceded by **ĕ** or a consonant (also **satur**) form the masculine nominative like noun-stems in **ro-** of the second declension (cf. **puer, ager**, § 38). They are thus declined : —

Sing.	**miser**, *wretched*.			**niger**, *black*.		
	STEM **misero-, a-, o-**			**nigro-, a-, o-**		
N.	**miser**	**misera**	**miserum**	**niger**	**nigra**	**nigrum**
G.	**miserī**	**miserae**	**miserī**	**nigrī**	**nigrae**	**nigrī**
D.	**miserō**	**miserae**	**miserō**	**nigrō**	**nigrae**	**nigrō**
Ac.	**miserum**	**miseram**	**miserum**	**nigrum**	**nigram**	**nigrum**
V.	**miser**	**misera**	**miserum**	**niger**	**nigra**	**nigrum**
Ab.	**miserō**	**miserā**	**miserō**	**nigrō**	**nigrā**	**nigrō**
Plur.						
N.	**miserī**	**miserae**	**misera**	**nigrī**	**nigrae**	**nigra**
G.	**miserōrum**	**miserārum**	**miserōrum**	**nigrōrum**	**nigrārum**	**nigrōrum**
D.	**miserīs**	**miserīs**	**miserīs**	**nigrīs**	**nigrīs**	**nigrīs**
Ac.	**miserōs**	**miserās**	**misera**	**nigrōs**	**nigrās**	**nigra**
V.	**miserī**	**miserae**	**misera**	**nigrī**	**nigrae**	**nigra**
Ab.	**miserīs**	**miserīs**	**miserīs**	**nigrīs**	**nigrīs**	**nigrīs**

NOTE. — Which type is followed is shown by the dictionary.

a. Stems in **ēro-** (as **prōcērus**), with **mōrigĕrus, propĕrus**, have the regular nominative masculine in **-us.**

83. The following **o**-stems with their compounds have the genitive singular in **-īus** (one only having **-ĭus**) and the dative in **-ī** in all genders : —

alius (N. **aliud**), *other.*	**tōtus**, *whole.*	**alter, -terĭus**, *the other.*
nūllus, *no, none.*	**ūllus**, *any.*	**neuter, -trīus**, *neither.*
sōlus, *alone.*	**ūnus**, *one.*	**uter, -trīus**, *which* (of two).

Of these the singular is thus declined : —

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	**ūnus**	**ūna**	**ūnum**	**uter**	**utra**	**utrum**
GEN.	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**utrīus**	**utrīus**	**utrīus**
DAT.	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**utrī**	**utrī**	**utrī**
ACC.	**ūnum**	**ūnam**	**ūnum**	**utrum**	**utram**	**utrum**
ABL.	**ūnō**	**ūnā**	**ūnō**	**utrō**	**utrā**	**utrō**
NOM.	**alius**	**alia**	**aliud**	**alter**	**altera**	**alterum**
GEN.	**alīus**	**alīus**	**alīus**	**alterius**	**alterius**	**alterius**
DAT.	**aliī**	**aliī**	**aliī**	**alterī**	**alterī**	**alterī**
ACC.	**alium**	**aliam**	**aliud**	**alterum**	**alteram**	**alterum**
ABL.	**aliō**	**aliā**	**aliō**	**alterō**	**alterā**	**alterō**

a. The plural of these words is regular, like that of **bonus**.

b. The **i** of the genitive-ending **-īus**, may be short in verse.

Instead of **alīus, alterius** is commonly used, or in the possessive sense the adjective **aliēnus**, *belonging to another, another's.*

In compounds sometimes both parts are declined, sometimes only the latter. Thus, **alterī utrī** or **alterutrī**, *to one of the two.*

2. Third Declension.

Adjectives of the third declension are of *one, two, or three terminations.*

84. Adjectives of the third declension having stems in **i-** — distinguished by being *parisyllabic* (§ 53. *a*) — have but one form for both masculine and feminine, with one for the neuter, and hence are called *adjectives of two terminations.* In the neuter the nominative ends in **-e**.

They are declined as follows: —

lĕvis (stem **levi-**), *light.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N., V.	**levis**	**leve**	**levēs**	**levia**
GEN.	levis	levis	levium	levium
DAT.	levī	levī	levibus	levibus
ACC.	levem	leve	levīs (ēs)	levia
ABL.	levī	levī	levibus	levibus

a. The following stems in **ri-** have a masc. nom. in **-er**; **ācer, alacer, campester, celeber, equester, palūster, pedester, puter, salūber, silvester, terrester, volucer**, and are called adjectives of *three terminations*. So, also, **celer, celeris, celere**; and names of months in **-ber** (cf. § 51. *b*): as, **Octōber**.

These are declined as follows: —

ācer, *keen.*

STEM **ācri-**

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N., V.	**ācer**	**ācris**	**ācre**	**ācrēs**	**ācrēs**	**ācria**
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs (ēs)	ācrīs (ēs)	ācria
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

NOTE. — This formation is comparatively late, and hence, in the poets, either the masculine or the feminine form was sometimes used for both genders: as, **coetus alacris** (*Enn.*). In others, as **faenebris, fūnebris, illūstris, lūgubris, mediocris, muliebris**, there is no separate masculine form. Thus, —

illūstris, *brilliant.*

STEM **illūstri-**

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N., V.	**illūstris**	**illūstre**	**illūstrēs**	**illūstria**
GEN.	illūstris	illūstris	illūstrium	illūstrium
DAT.	illūstrī	illūstrī	illūstribus	illūstribus
ACC.	illūstrem	illūstre	illūstrīs (ēs)	illūstria
ABL.	illūstrī	illūstrī	illūstribus	illūstribus

b. Case-Forms. — Adjectives of two and three terminations, being true **i**-stems, retain in the ablative singular **-ī**, in the neuter plural **-ia**, in the genitive plural **-ium**, and in the accusative plural regularly **-īs**. But the forms of some are doubtful.

Note. — An ablative in **-e** is sometimes found in poetry.

c. **celer**, *swift*, as a noun, denoting a military rank, has **celerum** in the genitive plural. The name **Celer** has the ablative in **-e**.

85. The remaining adjectives of the third declension are Consonant-stems ; but all except Comparatives have the form of **i**-stems in the ablative singular **-ī**, the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter **-ia**, and the genitive plural **-ium**. In the other cases they follow the rule of Consonant-stems.

Note. — The ablative singular of these words often has **-e**.

These adjectives (except comparatives) have the same nominative singular for all genders, and hence are called *adjectives of one termination*. All except stems in **l-** or **r-** form the nominative singular from the stem by adding **-s**.

a. Adjectives of one termination are declined as follows : —

	atrōx, *fierce*.		**egēns**, *needy*.	
	Stem **atrōc-**		Stem **egent-**	
Sing.	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N., V.	**atrōx**	**atrōx**	**egēns**	**egēns**
Gen.	atrō**cis**	atrō**cis**	egen**tis**	egen**tis**
Dat.	atrō**cī**	atrō**cī**	egen**tī**	egen**tī**
Acc.	atrō**cem**	atrōx	egen**tem**	egēns
Abl.	atrō**cī** (**e**)	atrō**cī** (**e**)	egen**tī** (**e**)	egen**tī** (**e**)
Plur.				
N., V.	atrō**cēs**	atrō**cia**	egen**tēs**	egen**tia**
Gen.	atrō**cium**	atrō**cium**	egen**tium**	egen**tium**
Dat.	atrō**cibus**	atrō**cibus**	egen**tibus**	egen**tibus**
Acc.	atrō**cīs** (**ēs**)	atrō**cia**	egen**tīs** (**ēs**)	egen**tia**
Abl.	atrō**cibus**	atrō**cibus**	egen**tibus**	egen**tibus**

b. Other examples are the following: —

	concors, *harmonious*.		**iēns**, *going*.		**pār**, *equal*.	
	STEM **concord-**		**eunt-**		**par-**	
Sing.	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N., V.	**concors**	**concors**	**iēns**	**iēns**	**pār**	**pār**
GEN.	concordis	concordis	euntis	euntis	păris	păris
DAT.	concordī	concordī	euntī	euntī	parī	parī
ACC.	concordem	concors	euntem	iēns	parem	pār
ABL.	concordī	concordī	eunte (ī)	eunte (ī)	parī	parī
Plur.						
N., V.	concordēs	concordia	euntēs	euntia	pares	paria
GEN.	concordium	concordium	euntium	euntium	parium	parium
D., ABL.	concordibus	concordibus	euntibus	euntibus	paribus	paribus
ACC.	concordīs (ēs)	concordia	euntīs (ēs)	euntia	parīs (ēs)	paria

	praeceps, *headlong*.		**dīves**, *rich*.		**ūber**, *fertile*.	
	STEM **praecipit-**		**dīvit-**		**ūber-**	
Sing.	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N., V.	**praeceps**	**praeceps**	**dīves**	**dīves**	**ūber**	**ūber**
GEN.	praecipitis	praecipitis	dīvitis	dīvitis	ūberis	ūberis
DAT.	praecipitī	praecipitī	dīvitī	dīvitī	ūberī	ūberī
ACC.	praecipitem	praeceps	dīvitem	dīves	ūberem	ūber
ABL.	praecipitī	praecipitī	dīvite	dīvite	ūbere	ūbere
Plur.						
N., V.	praecipitēs	praecipitia	dīvitēs	[dītia]	ūberēs	ūbera
GEN.	[praecipitium][1]		dīvitum	dīvitum	ūberum	ūberum
D., ABL.	praecipitibus	praecipitibus	dīvitibus	dīvitibus	ūberibus	ūberibus
ACC.	praecipitīs (ēs)	praecipitia	dīvitīs (ēs)	[dīvitia]	ūberēs	ūbera

vetus, *old*.

STEM **veter-** (for **vetes** or **vetos-**)

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N., V.	**vetus**	**vetus**	**veterēs**	**vetera**
GEN.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
DAT.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
ACC.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
ABL.	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

[1] Given by grammarians, but not found.

NOTE. — Of these **vetus** is originally an **s**-stem. In most **s**-stems the **r** has intruded itself into the nominative also, as **bi-corpor** (for **bi-corpos**), **dē-gener** (for **dē-genēs**).

c. A few of these adjectives used as nouns, have a feminine form in **-a**: as, **clienta, hospita**, so the appellative **Iūnō Sōspita**.

3. Comparatives.

86. Comparatives are declined as follows:—

	melior, *better*.		**plūs**, *more*.	
	STEM **melior-** for **melios-**		**plūr-** for **plūs-**	
Sing.	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N., V.	**melior**	**melius**	——	**plūs**
GEN.	meliōr**is**	meliōr**is**	——	plūr**is**
DAT.	meliōr**ī**	meliōr**ī**	——	——
ACC.	meliōr**em**	melius	——	plūs
ABL.	meliōr**e** (**ī**)	meliōr**e** (**ī**)	——	plūr**e**
Plur.				
N., V.	meliōr**ēs**	meliōr**a**	plūr**ēs**	plūr**a**
GEN.	meliōr**um**	meliōr**um**	plūr**ium**	plūr**ium**
DAT.	meliōr**ibus**	meliōr**ibus**	plūr**ibus**	plūr**ibus**
ACC.	meliōr**īs** (**ēs**)	meliōr**a**	plūr**īs** (**ēs**)	plūr**a**
ABL.	meliōr**ibus**	meliōr**ibus**	plūr**ibus**	plūr**ibus**

a. The stem of comparatives properly ended in **os-**; but this became **or-** except in the neuter singular (nom., acc., voc.), where **s** is retained, and **ŏ** is changed to **ŭ** (cf. **honŏr, corpus**). Thus comparatives appear to have two terminations.

b. The neuter singular **plūs** is used only as a noun. The genitive (rarely ablative) is used as an expression of value (cf. § 252. *a*). The dative is not found in classic use. The compound **complūrēs**, *several*, has sometimes neuter plural **complūria**.

All other comparatives are declined like **melior**.

4. Case-Forms.

87. In adjectives of Consonant stems the following Case-forms are to be remarked: —

a. The ablative singular commonly ends in **-ī**; but adjectives used as nouns (as **superstes**, *survivor*) have **-e**. Participles in **-ns**

used *as such*, or as nouns, regularly have **-e**; but when used as adjectives, **-ī**.

The following have uniformly **-ī**: **āmēns, anceps, concors** (and other compounds of **cor**), **cōnsors** (but as a substantive, **-e**,) **dēgener, hebes, ingēns, inops, memor** (and its compounds), **pār** (in prose), **perpes, praeceps, praepes, teres.**

b. The following have regularly **-e**: **caeles, compos** [†**dēses**], **dīves, hospes, pauper, particeps, prīnceps, superstes, sōspes**; also patrials (see § 54. 3) and stems in **āt-, īt-, nt-, rt-**, when used as nouns, and sometimes when used as adjectives.

c. The genitive plural ends commonly in **-ium**. The accusative plural regularly ends in **-īs**, even in comparatives, which are less inclined to the **i-** declension.

d. The genitive plural ends in **-um**:—

1. Always in **dīves, compos, inops, particeps, prīnceps, praepes, supplex**, and compounds of nouns which have **-um**: as, **quadru-pēs, bi-color.**

2. Sometimes, in poetry, in participles in **-ns**: as, **silentum concilium**, *a council of the silent shades* (Virg.).

e. In **vetus** (gen. **-ĕris**), **pūbes** (gen. **-ĕris**), **ūber** (gen. **-ĕris**), which did not become **i-**stems, the endings **-e** (abl. sing.), **-a** (neut. nom. acc. plur.), **-um** (gen. plur.) are regular. (**Ūber** has also **-ī** in abl.)

f. 1. Several adjectives vary in declension: as, **gracilis (-us), hilaris (-us), inermis (-us), bicolor (-ōrus).**

2. A few are indeclinable: as, **damnās, frūgī, nēquam.**

3. Several are defective: as, **exspēs** (only nom.), **exlēx, exlēgem** (only nom. and acc. sing.), **pernox, pernocte** (only nom. and abl. sing.); **prīmōris, sēminecis**, which lack the nom. sing.

5. Special Uses.

88. The following special uses are to be observed:—

a. Many adjectives have the meaning and construction of nouns: as, **amīcus**, *a friend;* **aequālis**, *a contemporary;* **māiōrēs**, *ancestors.*

b. Many adjectives, from their signification, can be used only in the masculine and feminine. Such are **adulēscēns**, *youthful;* [† **dēses**], **-idis**, *slothful;* **inops, -opis**, *poor;* **sōspes, -ĭtis**, *safe.* So, **senex**, *old man*, and **iuvenis**, *young man*, are masculine only.

c. Many nouns may be used as adjectives: as, **pedes**, *a footman* or *on foot*: so especially nouns in **-tor** (M.) and **-trix** (F., also as N.), denoting the *agent*: as, **victor exercitus**, *the conquering army;* **victrīcia arma**, *victorious arms.*

d. Certain forms of many adjectives are regularly used as adverbs. These are the accusative and ablative of the neuter singular: as, **multum, multō**, *much;* and the neuter singular of comparatives: as, **melius**, *better;* **levius**, *more lightly.*

COMPARISON.

Latin, as English, has three degrees of comparison: the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative.*

1. Regular Comparison.

89. The Comparative is formed by adding **-ior** (neuter **-ius**), the Superlative by adding **-issimus** (**-a, -um**) to the stem of the Positive, which loses its final vowel: as, —

cārus, *dear* (st. cāro-);	**cārior**, *dearer;*	**cārissimus**, *dearest.*
aecus, *equal* (st. aequo);	**aequior**, *more equal;*	**aequissimus**, *most equal.*
levis, *light* (st. levi-);	**levior**, *lighter;*	**levissimus**, *lightest.*
fēlix, *happy* (st. fēlic-);	**fēlicior**, *happier;*	**fēlicissimus**, *happiest.*
hebes, *dull* (st. hebet-);	**hebetior**, *duller;*	**hebetissimus**, *dullest.*

a. Adjectives in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the nominative. The comparative is regular: as, —

ācer, *keen;* **ācrior, ācerrimus.**
miser, *wretched;* **miserior, miserrimus.**

So **vetus** (gen. **veteris**) **veterrimus**; and **mātūrus**, besides its regular superlative (**mātūrissimus**) has a rare form **mātūrrimus.**

For the comparative of **vetus**, **vetustior** (from **vetustus**), is used.

b. The following in **-lis** add **-limus** to the stem clipped of its vowel: **facilis** (st. **facili-**), **difficilis, similis, dissimilis, gracilis, humilis.** The comparative is regular: as, **facilis, facilior, facillimus.**

c. Compounds in **-dicus** (*saying*), **-ficus** (*doing*), **-volus** (*willing*) take in comparison the forms of corresponding participles in **-ns**: as,—

maledicus, *slanderous;* **maledīcentior, maledīcentissimus.**
malevolus, *spiteful;* **malevolentior, malevolentissimus.**

d. Adjectives in **-us** preceded by a vowel rarely have forms of comparison, but take the adverbs **magis**, *more;* **māximē**, *most:* as, —

idōneus, *fit;* **magis idōneus**, **māximē idōneus**.

So, also, most derivatives in **-ĭcus**, **-ĭdus**, **-ālis**, **-āris**, **-īlis**, **-ŭlus**, **-undus**, **-timus**, **-īnus**, **-īvus**, **-ōrus**, with many compounds (as **dēgener**, **inops**) take **magis** and **māximē**.

e. Participles used as adjectives are regularly compared: as, —

patiēns, *patient;* **patientior**, **patientissimus**.
apertus, *open;* **apertior**, **apertissimus**.

f. A form of diminutive is made upon the stem of some comparatives: as, **grandius-culus**, *a little larger* (see § 164. *a*).

2. Irregular and Defective Comparison.

90. Several adjectives have in their comparison irregular forms: as, —

bonus, **melior**, **optimus**, *good*, *better*, *best*.
malus, **pēior**, **pessimus**, *bad*, *worse*, *worst*.
māgnus, **māior**, **māximus**, *great*, *greater*, *greatest*.
parvus, **minor**, **minimus**, *small*, *less*, *least*.
multus, **plūs** (N.), **plūrimus**, *much*, *more*, *most*.
multī, **plūrēs**, **plūrimī**, *many*, *more*, *most*.
nēquam (indecl.), **nēquior**, **nēquissimus**, *worthless*.
frūgī (indecl.), **frūgālior**, **frūgālissimus**, *useful*, *worthy*.
dexter, **dexterior**, **dextimus**, *on the right*, *handy*.

NOTE. — These irregularities arise from the use of different stems.

91. Some Comparatives and Superlatives appear without a Positive: —

a. The following are formed from stems not used as adjectives: —

cis, **citrā** (adv. *on this side*): **citerior**, **citimus**, *hither*, *hithermost*.
in, **intrā** (prep. *in*, *within*): **interior**, **intimus**, *inner*, *inmost*.
prae, **prō** (prep. *before*): **prior**, **prīmus**, *former*, *first*.
prope (adv. *near*): **propior**, **proximus**, *nearer*, *next*.
ūltrā (adv. *beyond*): **ūlterior**, **ūltimus**, *farther*, *farthest*.

b. Of the following the positives are rare, except as nouns : —

exterus, **exterior**, **extrēmus (extimus)**, *outer*, *outmost*.
[**inferus**], **inferior**, **īnfimus (īmus)**, *lower*, *lowest* (§ 82. *d*).
[**posterus**], **posterior**, **postrēmus (postumus)**, *latter*, *last*.
[**superus**], **superior**, **suprēmus** or **summus**, *higher*, *highest*.

But the plurals **exterī**, *foreigners*; **īnferī**, *the gods below*; **posterī**, *posterity*; **superī**, *the heavenly gods*, are common.

c. From **iuvenis**, *youth*, **senex**, *old man* are formed **iūnior**, *younger*, **senior**, *older*. For these **minor nātū** and **māior nātū** are sometimes used (**nātū** being often omitted). The superlative is regularly expressed by **minimus** and **māximus**, with or without **nātū**.

d. In the following, one or other of the forms of comparison is wanting : —

1. The positive is wanting in **dēterior**, **dēterrimus**; **ōcior**, **ōcissimus**; **potior**, **potissimus**.

2. The comparative is wanting in **bellus**, **caesius**, **falsus**, **fīdus** (with its compounds), **inclutus**, **invictus**, **invītus**, **novus**, **pius**, **sacer**, **vafer**, **vetus** (§ 89. *a*).

3. The superlative is wanting in **agrestis**, **alacer**, **arcānus**, **caecus**, **diūturnus**, **exīlis**, **ingēns**, **iēiūnus**, **longīncus**, **oblīcus**, **opīmus**, **prōclīvis**, **propīncus**, **satur**, **sēgnis**, **sērus**, **supīnus**, **surdus**, **taciturnus**, **tempestīvus**, **teres**, **vīcīnus**, and in some adjectives in **-ilis**.

NOTE. — Many adjectives — as **aureus**, *golden* — are from their meaning incapable of comparison ; but each language has its own usage.

3. Comparison of Adverbs.

92. The comparative of an Adverb is the neuter accusative of the comparative of the corresponding Adjective ; the superlative is the Adverb in **-ē** formed regularly from the superlative of the Adjective : as, —

cārē, *dearly* (from **cārus**, *dear*) ; **cārius**, **cārissimē**.
misere, *wretchedly* (from **miser**, *wretched*) ; **miserius**, **miserrimē**.
leviter (from **levis**, *light*); **levius**, **levissimē**.
audācter (**audāciter**) (from **audāx**, *bold*); **audācius**, **audācissimē**.
benĕ, *well* (from **bonus**, *good*); **melius**, **optimē**.
malĕ, *ill* (from **malus**, *bad*); **pēius**, **pessimē**.
antīquē, *anciently*, (from **antīcus**), **antīquius**, **antīquissimē**.

The following are irregular or defective: —

> **diū**, *long* (in time); **diūtius, diūtissimē.**
> **potius**, *rather;* **potissimum**, *first of all, in preference to all.*
> **saepe**, *often;* **saepius**, *oftener, again;* **saepissimē.**
> **satis**, *enough;* **satius**, *preferable.*
> **secus**, *otherwise;* **sēcius**, *worse.*
> **multum (multō), magis, māximē**, *much, more, most.*
> **parum**, *not enough*, **minus**, *less*, **minimē**, *least.*

4. Signification.

93. Besides their regular signification (as in English), the forms of comparison are used as follows: —

a. The Comparative denotes a *considerable* or *excessive* degree of a quality: as, **brevior**, *rather short;* **audācior**, *too bold.*

b. The Superlative (*of eminence*) may denote a *very high* degree of a quality with no distinct comparison, often strengthened by **quam, vel**, or **ūnus**: as, **māximus numerus**, *a very great number;* **quam plūrimī**, *as many as possible;* **quam māximē potest (māximē quam potest)**, *as much as can be;* **virum ūnum doctissimum**, *the one most learned man.*

c. With **quisque**, *each*, the superlative has a peculiar signification. Thus the phrase **dītissimus quisque** means, *all the richest* (each richest man); **prīmus quisque**, *all the first* (*each first man* in his order).[1] Two superlatives with **quisque** imply a proportion: as, —

> **sapientissimus quisque aequissimō animō moritur** (Cat. Maj. 83), *the wisest men die with the greatest equanimity.*

d. A high degree of a quality is also denoted by such adverbs as **admodum, valdē**, *very*, or by **per** or **prae** in composition: as, **valdē malus**, *very bad*; **permāgnus**, *very great;* **praealtus**, *very high.*

e. A low degree of a quality is indicated by **sub** in composition (as, **subrūsticus**, *rather clownish*); or by **minus**, *not very;* **minimē**, *not at all;* **parum**, *not enough;* **nōn satis**, *not much.*

[1] As in taking things one by one off a pile, each thing is uppermost when you take it.

NUMERALS.

1. Cardinal and Ordinal.

94. Cardinal numbers are the regular numbers used in counting. Ordinal numbers are adjectives derived from these to express order or place.

NOTE. — Cardinal numbers answer the question **quot?** *how many?* Ordinal numbers, the question **quotus?** *which in order? one of how many?*

These two series are as follows: —

	CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	ROMAN NUMERALS.
1.	ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one.*	prīmus, -a, -um, *first.*	I.
2.	duo, duae, duo, *two.*	secundus (alter), *second.*	II.
3.	trēs, tria, *three.*	tertius, *third.*	III.
4.	quattuor (quātuor)	quārtus	IV.
5.	quīnque	quīntus	V.
6.	sex	sextus	VI.
7.	septem	septimus	VII.
8.	octō	octāvus	VIII.
9.	novem	nōnus	IX.
10.	decem	decimus	X.
11.	ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI.
12.	duodecim	duodecimus	XII.
13.	tredecim (decem et trēs)	tertius decimus	XIII.
14.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIV.
15.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	XV.
16.	sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI.
17.	septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII.
18.	duodēvīgintī (octōdecim)	duodēvīcēnsimus	XVIII.
19.	ūndēvīgintī (novendecim)	ūndēvīcēnsimus	XIX.
20.	vīgintī	vīcēnsimus (vīgēnsimus)	XX.
21.	vīgintī ūnus (*or* ūnus et vīgintī)	vīcēnsimus prīmus (ūnus et vīcēnsimus, *etc.*)	XXI.
30.	trīgintā	trīcēnsimus	XXX.
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēnsimus	XL.
50.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēnsimus	L.
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgēnsimus	LX.
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgēnsimus	LXX.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	ROMAN NUMERALS.
80. octōgintā	octōgēnsimus	LXXX.
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus	XC.
100. centum	centēnsimus	C.
101. centum (et) ūnus, *etc.*	centēnsimus prīmus, *etc.*	CI.
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēnsimus	CC.
300. trecentī	trecentēnsimus	CCC.
400. quadringentī	quadringentēnsimus	CCCC.
500. quīngentī	quīngentēnsimus	IↃ, *or* D.
600. sexcentī (sēscentī)	sexcentēnsimus	DC.
700. septingentī	septingentēnsimus	DCC.
800. octingentī	octingentēnsimus	DCCC.
900. nōngentī	nōngentēnsimus	DCCCC.
1000. mille	millēnsimus	CIↃ, *or* M.
5000. quīnque mīlia (millia)	quīnquiēns millēnsimus	IↃↃ.
10,000. decem mīlia (millia)	deciēns millēnsimus	CCIↃↃ.
100,000. centum mīlia (millia)	centiēns millēnsimus	CCCIↃↃↃ.

NOTE.—The forms in **-ēnsimus** are often written without the **n**: as, **vīcēsimus**, etc.

a. For the inflection of **ūnus**, see § 83. It often has the meaning of *same* or *only*. The plural is used in this sense; but also, as a simple numeral, with a plural noun of a singular meaning: as, **ūna castra**, *one camp* (cf. § 95. *b*). The plural occurs also in the phrase **ūnī et alterī**, *one party and the other* (the ones and the others).

b. **Duo**, *two*, and **ambō**, *both*, are thus declined:—

NOM.	**duo**	**duae**	**duo**
GEN.	**duōrum**	**duārum**	**duōrum**
DAT.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**
ACC.	**duōs** (duo)	**duās**	duo
ABL.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**

c. **Trēs, tria**, *three*, is an **i**-stem, and is regularly declined like the plural of **levis** (see § 84). The other cardinal numbers, up to **centum** (100), are indeclinable.

The forms **octōdecim, novendecim** are rare, **duodēvīgintī, ūndēvīgintī** being used instead. Similar forms for higher numbers are occasionally found: as, **duōdēquadrāgintā**, *thirty-eight;* **ūndēcentum**, *ninety-nine.*

d. The hundreds, up to 1000, are o-stems, and are regularly declined like the plural of **bonus**.

e. **Mille**, *a thousand*, is in the singular an indeclinable adjective. In the plural (**mīlia** or **millia**, *thousands*), it is a neuter noun, followed by a genitive plural. Thus, **cum mille hominibus**, *with a thousand men;* but **cum duōbus mīlibus hominum**, *with two thousand men*.

NOTE. — The singular **mille** is sometimes found as a noun in the nominative and accusative: as **mille hominum mīsit**; rarely in the other cases.

f. The ordinals are o-stems, and are declined like **bonus**.

2. Distributives.

95. Distributive Numerals are declined like the plural of **bonus**.

NOTE. — These answer the question **quotēnī**? *how many of each*, or *at a time?* as, —

1.	sīngulī, *one by one.*	18.	octōnī dēnī *or* duodēvīcēnī	100.	centēnī
2.	bīnī, *two-and-two.*	19.	novēnī dēnī *or* ūndēvīcēnī	200.	ducēnī
3.	ternī, trīnī	20.	vīcēnī	300.	trecēnī
4.	quaternī	21.	vīcēnī sīngulī, *etc.*	400.	quadringēnī
5.	quīnī	30.	trīcēnī	500.	quīngēnī
6.	sēnī	40.	quadrāgēnī	600.	sēscēnī
7.	septēnī	50.	quīnquāgēnī	700.	septingēnī
8.	octōnī	60.	sexāgēnī	800.	octingēnī
9.	novēnī	70.	septuāgēnī	900.	nōngēnī
10.	dēnī	80.	octōgēnī	1000.	millēnī
11.	ūndēnī	90.	nōnāgēnī	2000.	bīna mīlia
12.	duodēnī			10,000.	dēna mīlia
13.	ternī dēnī, *etc.*			100,000.	centēna mīlia

Distributives are used as follows: —

a. In the sense of *so many apiece* or *on each side:* as, **sīngula sīngulīs**, *one apiece* (one each to each one); **agrī septēna iūgera plēbī dīvīsa sunt**, *i.e. seven jugera to each citizen*, etc.

b. Instead of cardinals, to express simple number, with a noun plural in form but singular in meaning: as, **bīna castra**, *two camps* (**duō castra** would mean *two forts*). But the plural **ūnī** is used (instead of **sīngulī**) to signify *one* (see § 94. *a*), and **trīnī** (not **ternī**) for *three*.

c. In multiplication: as, **bis bīna**, *twice two;* **ter septēnīs diēbus**, *in thrice seven days.*

d. By the poets freely instead of cardinals, particularly where *pairs* or *sets* are meant: as, **bīna hastīlia** *two shafts* (two in a set).

3. Numeral Adverbs.

96. The Numeral Adverbs answer the question **quotiēns (quotiēs)**, *how many times, how often.*

1. semel, *once.*	12. duodeciēns	40. quadrāgiēns
2. bis, *twice.*	13. terdeciēns	50. quīnquāgiēns
3. ter, *thrice.*	14. quaterdeciēns	60. sexāgiēns
4. quater	15. quīndeciēns	70. septuāgiēns
5. quīnquiēns (-ēs)	16. sēdeciēns	80. octōgiēns
6. sexiēns (-ēs)	17. septiēsdeciēns	90. nōnāgiēns
7. septiēns (-ēs)	18. duodēvīciēns	100. centiēns
8. octiēns	19. ūndēvīciēns	200. ducentiēns
9. noviēns	20. vīciēns	300. trecentiēns
10. deciēns	21. semel et vīciēns, *etc.*	1000. mīliēns
11. ūndeciēns	30. trīciēns	10,000. deciēns mīliēns

NOTE. — They are used, in combination with **mille**, to express the higher numbers: as, **ter et trīciēns (centēna mīlia) sēstertiūm**, 3,300,000 *sesterces.* Forms in **-ns** are often written without the **n**: as, **quīnquiēs.**

4. Other Numerals.

97. The adjectives **simplex**, *single*, **duplex**, *double, two-fold*, **triplex, quadru-, quīncu-, septem-, decem-, centu-, sēsqui-** (1½), **multi-plex**, *manifold*, are called Multiplicatives.

a. PROPORTIONALS are: **duplus, triplus**, etc., *twice as great*, etc.

b. TEMPORALS: **bīmus, trīmus**, *of two* or *three years' age;* **biennis, triennis**, *lasting two* or *three years;* **bīmēstris**, *of two months;* **bīduum, biennium**, *a period of two days* or *years.*

c. PARTITIVES: **bīnārius, ternārius**, *of two* or *three parts.*

d. FRACTIONS: **dīmidia pars**, *a half;* **tertia pars**, *a third.*

NOTE. — But fractions are regularly expressed by special words denoting the parts of the **ās** (*pound* or *unit*): as, **triēns**, *a third;* **bēs**, *two-thirds.*

e. Other derivatives are: **ūniō**, *unity;* **biniō**, *the two* (of dice); **prīmānus**, *of the first legion;* **prīmārius**, *of the first rank;* **dēnārius**, a sum of 10 *asses;* **bīnus** (distributive), *double*, etc.

5. PRONOUNS.

98. Pronouns have special forms of declension.

1. Personal Pronouns.

The Personal pronouns of the *first person* are **ego**, *I*, **nōs**, *we*; of the *second person*, **tū**, *thou*, **vōs**, *ye* or *you*.

FIRST PERSON.

Nom.	**ego**, *I.*	**nōs**, *we.*
Gen.	**meī**, *of me.*	**nostrūm** (-trī), *of us.*
Dat.	**mihi** (**mī**), *to me.*	**nōbīs**, *to us.*
Acc.	**mē**, *me.*	**nōs**, *us.*
Voc.	——	——
Abl.	**mē**, *by me.*	**nōbīs**, *by us.*

SECOND PERSON.

Nom.	**tū**, *thou* or *you.*	**vōs**, *ye* or *you.*
Gen.	**tuī**,	**vostrūm**, **vostrī**; **vestrūm** (-**trī**)
Dat.	**tibi**	**vōbīs**
Acc.	**tē**	**vōs**
Voc.	**tū**	**vōs**
Abl.	**tē**	**vōbīs**

a. The personal pronouns of the *third person* — *he*, *she*, *it*, *they* — are wanting in Latin, a demonstrative being used for them when required.

b. The plural **nōs** is often used for the singular **ego**; the plural **vōs** never for the singular **tū**.

2. Reflexive Pronouns.

Reflexive pronouns are used in the Oblique Cases to refer to the Subject of the sentence or clause (see § 196).

a. In the first and second persons the oblique cases of the Personal pronouns are used as Reflexives: as, **tē laudās**, *you praise yourself*; **nōbīs persuādēmus**, *we persuade ourselves*.

b. The reflexive pronoun of the Third Person has a special form, the same for both singular and plural. It is thus declined: —

GEN. **suī**, *of himself, herself, themselves.*
DAT. **sibi**, *to himself, herself, themselves.*
ACC. **sē** (**sēsē**), *himself, herself, themselves.*
ABL. **sē** (**sēsē**), *by* (etc.) *himself, herself, themselves.*

3. Possessive Pronouns.

The Possessive pronouns are, for the first person: **meus**, *my*, **noster**, *our;* for the second person: **tuus**, *thy, your*, **voster**, **vester**, *your;* for the third person: **suus**, *his, her, their.* These are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions (see §§ 81, 82). But **meus** has regularly **mī** (rarely **meus**) in the vocative singular masculine.

NOTE. — **Suus** is always reflexive, referring to the subject. For a possessive pronoun of the third person not referring to the subject, the genitive of a demonstrative must be used. Thus, **patrem suum occīdit**, *he killed his* (own) *father;* but **patrem ēius occīdit**, *he killed his* (somebody else's) *father.*

99. In the meaning and use of the Personal, Reflexive, and Possessive pronouns it is to be observed that —

a. To express Possession and similar ideas the possessive pronouns must be used, not the genitive of the personal or reflexive pronouns. Thus, *my father* is **pater meus**, never **pater meī**.

b. The forms **nostrūm**, **vostrūm**, etc., are used *partitively:* as, —

ūnusquisque nostrūm, *each one of us;*
but also **vostrūm omnium**, *of all of you.*

c. The genitives **meī**, **tuī**, **suī**, **nostrī**, **vestrī** are chiefly used *objectively* (see § 213. N.): as, —

memor sīs nostrī, *be mindful of us* (me).
mē tuī pudet, *I am ashamed of you.*

d. The reciprocals *one another* and *each other* are expressed by **inter sē** or **alter . . . alterum**: as, —

alter alterius ōva frangit, *they break each other's eggs* (one . . . of the other).
inter sē amant, *they love one another.*

e. The preposition **cum**, *with*, is joined with the ablative of the personal and reflexive pronouns : as, **tēcum loquitur**, *he talks with you*.

f. To the personal and reflexive (and sometimes to the possessive) pronouns certain enclitics are joined for emphasis : **-met** to all except **tū** (nom.) ; **-te** to **tū** (**tūte**, also **tūtimet**) ; **-pte** to the ablative singular of the adjectives, and in early Latin to the others, as, —

> **vōsmetipsōs prōditis**, *you betray your own very selves.*
> **suōpte pondere**, *by its own weight.*

4. Demonstrative Pronouns.

100. The Demonstrative pronouns are **hīc**, *this;* **is**, **ille**, **iste**, *that;* with the Intensive **ipse**, *self*, and **īdem**, *same*.

a. **Ille** is a later form of **ollus** (**olle**), which is sometimes used in poetry ; a genitive singular in **-ī**, **-ae**, **-ī** occurs in **ille** and **iste**.

b. **Hīc** is compounded of the stem **ho-** with the demonstrative **-ce**. In most of the forms final **e** is dropped, in some the whole termination. But in these latter it is sometimes retained for emphasis ; as, **hūius-ce**, **hīs-ce**. **Īdem** is the demonstrative **is** with the affix **-dem**.

101. The demonstratives are used either *with nouns* as Adjectives, or *alone* as Pronouns. From their signification they cannot (except **ipse**) have a vocative. They are thus declined : —

	hīc, *this*.			**is**, *that*.		
Sing.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	**hīc**	**haec**	**hōc**	**is**	**ea**	**id**
GEN.	**hūius**	**hūius**	**hūius**	**ēius**	**ēius**	**ēius**
DAT.	**huic**	**huic**	**huic**	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**
ACC.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hōc**	**eum**	**eam**	**id**
ABL.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**
Plur.						
NOM.	**hī**	**hae**	**haec**	**ī (eī)**	**eae**	**ea**
GEN.	**hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
DAT.	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**eīs (īs)**	**eīs (īs)**	**eīs (īs)**
ACC.	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
ABL.	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**eīs (īs)**	**eīs (īs)**	**eīs (īs)**

Sing.	**ille**, *that.*			**ipse**, *self.*		
NOM.	**ille**	**illa**	**illud**	**ipse**	**ipsa**	**ipsum**
GEN.	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**
DAT.	**illī**	**illī**	**illī**	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsī**
ACC.	**illum**	**illam**	**illud**	**ipsum**	**ipsam**	**ipsum**
VOC.	——	——	——	**ipse**	**ipsa**	**ipsum**
ABL.	**illō**	**illā**	**illō**	**ipsō**	**ipsā**	**ipsō**
Plur.						
NOM.	**illī**	**illae**	**illa**	**ipsī**	**ipsae**	**ipsa**
GEN.	**illōrum**	**illārum**	**illōrum**	**ipsōrum**	**ipsārum**	**ipsōrum**
DAT.	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**
ACC.	**illōs**	**illās**	**illa**	**ipsōs**	**ipsās**	**ipsa**
VOC.	——	——	——	**ipsī**	**ipsae**	**ipsa**
ABL.	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**

īdem, *the same.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	**īdem**	**eădem**	**ĭdem**	**īdem (eī-)**	**eaedem**	**eădem**
G.	**ēiusdem**	**ēiusdem**	**ēiusdem**	**eōrundem**	**eārundem**	**eōrundem**
D.	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīsdem(īs-)**	**eīsdem(īs-)**	**eīsdem(īs-)**
AC.	**eundem**	**eandem**	**ĭdem**	**eōsdem**	**eāsdem**	**eădem**
AB.	**eōdem**	**eādem**	**eōdem**	**eīsdem(īs-)**	**eīsdem(īs-)**	**eīsdem(īs-)**

iste, ista, istud, *that* (yonder), is declined like **ille**.

Ille and **iste** are combined with the demonstrative **-ce**. Thus, —

Sing.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	**illīc**	**illaec**	**illōc (illūc)**	**istīc**	**istaec**	**istōc (istūc)**
ACC.	**illunc**	**illanc**	**illōc (illūc)**	**istunc**	**istanc**	**istōc (istūc)**
ABL.	**illōc**	**illāc**	**illōc**	**istōc**	**istāc**	**istōc**
Plur.						
N., ACC.	——	——	**illaec**	——	——	**istaec**

NOTE. — This appended **-ce** is also found with pronouns in numerous combinations: as, **hūiusce, hunce, hōrunce, hārunce, hōsce, hīsce** (cf. § 100. *b*), **illīusce, īsce**; also with the interrogative **-ne**, in **hōcine, hōscine, istūcine, illīcine**, etc. The intensive **-pse** is found in the forms **eapse** (nom.), **eumpse, eampse, eōpse, eāpse** (abl.).

a. The combinations **hūiusmodī (hūiuscemodī), ēiusmodī**, etc., are used as indeclinable adjectives, equivalent to **tālis**, *such:* as, **rēs ēiusmodī**, *such a thing* (a thing of that sort; cf. § 215).

102. In the use of these demonstratives it is to be observed that —

a. **Hic** is used of what is *near the speaker* (in time, place, thought, or on the written page). It is sometimes used of the speaker himself; sometimes for "the latter" of two persons or things mentioned in speech or writing; more rarely for "the former," when that, though more remote *on the written page*, is nearer the speaker in *time, place*, or *thought*.

b. **Ille** is used of what is *remote* (in time, etc.). It is sometimes used to mean "the former" (see under **hīc**, *a*); also (usually following its noun) of what is *famous* or *well-known*.

c. **Iste** is used of what is *between the two others* in remoteness: often in allusion to the person addressed, — hence called the *demonstrative of the second person*. It especially refers to an opponent, and frequently implies a kind of antagonism or contempt.

d. **Is** is a weaker demonstrative than the others and does not denote any special object, but refers to one just mentioned, or to be afterwards explained by a relative. It is used oftener than the others as a personal pronoun; and is often merely a correlative to the relative **quī**: as, **eum quem**, *one whom;* **eum cōnsulem quī nōn dubitet** (Cic.), *a consul who will not hesitate.*

e. **Ipse** may be used with a personal pronoun of either person, or a noun: as **nōs ipsī (nōsmetipsī)**, *we ourselves;* **ipsī fontēs**, *the very fountains;* also independently (the verb or the context implying the pronoun), as **ipsī adestis**, *you are yourselves present.*

NOTE. — In English, the pronouns *himself*, etc., are used both intensively (as, *he will come himself*) and reflexively (as, *he will kill himself*): in Latin the former would be **ipse**; the latter, **sē** or **sēsē**.

f. The pronouns **hīc**, **ille**, and **is** are used to point in either direction, back to something mentioned or forward to something to be mentioned. The neuter forms are used to refer to a clause, phrase, or idea: as, **est illud quidem vel māximum animum vidēre** (Tusc. i. 22, 52), *that is in truth a very great thing, to see the soul.*

5. Relative Pronouns.

103. The relative pronoun **quī**, *who, which*, is thus declined: —

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
NOM.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
GEN.	**cūius**	**cūius**	**cūius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
DAT.	**cui**	**cui**	**cui**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
ACC.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
ABL.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

6. Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns.

104. The interrogative or indefinite **quis** (**quī**), *who? which? any*, is declined in the singular as follows:—

NOM.	**quis** (**quī**)	**quae**	**quid** (**quod**)
GEN.	**cūius**	**cūius**	**cūius**
DAT.	**cui**	**cui**	**cui**
ACC.	**quem**	**quam**	**quid** (**quod**)
ABL.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**

The plural is the same as that of the Relative. The singular **quis** is rare as an indefinite (see § 105. *d*).

NOTE.—The Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns are originally of the same Stem, and most of the forms are the same.

CASE-FORMS.—*a.* The relative has always **quī, quae, quod**. The interrogative and indefinite have **quis, quae, quid**, *substantive*, and **quī, quae, quod**, *adjective:* as, **quis vocat?** *who calls?* **quid vidēs?** *what do you see?* **quī homō vocat?** *what man calls?* **quod templum vidēs?** *what temple do you see?*

NOTE.—But **quī** is often used without any apparent adjective force; and **quis** is very common as an adjective, especially with words denoting a person: as, **quī nōminat mē?** *who calls my name?* **quis diēs fuit?** *what day was it?* **quis homō?** *what man?* but often **quī homō?** *what sort of a man?* **nesciō quī sīs**, *I know not who you are.*

b. Old forms for the genitive and dative are **quōius, quoi**.

c. The form **quī** is used for the ablative of both numbers and all genders; but especially as an adverb (*how*, *by which way*, *in any way*), and in the combination **quīcum**, *with whom*, as an interrogative or an indefinite relative.

d. A dative and ablative plur. **quīs** is old, but not infrequent.

e. The preposition **cum** is joined to all forms of the ablative, as with the personal pronouns: as, **quōcum, quīcum, quibuscum**.

f. The accusative form **quom, cum** (stem **quo-**) is used only as a conjunctive adverb, meaning *when* or *since*.

g. The adjective **uter** is used as an interrogative and indefinite relative. For its peculiar declension, see § 83.

105. The pronouns **quis** and **quī** appear in various combinations.

a. The adverb **-cumque** (**-cunque**) with the relative makes an indefinite relative, declined like the simple word: as, **quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque,** *whoever, whatever*; **cūiuscunque,** etc.

NOTE. — This suffix, with the same meaning, may be used with any relative: as, **quāliscumque,** *of whatever sort*; **quandōcumque** (also rarely **quandōque**), *whenever*; **ubicumque,** *wherever*.

b. The interrogative form doubled makes an indefinite relative: as, **quisquis,** *whoever* (so **utut,** *however*, **ubiubi,** *wherever*). Of **quisquis** both parts are declined, but the feminine is wanting in classic use: thus —

Sing.	NOM.	**quisquis** (**quīquī**)		**quidquid** (**quicquid**)
	ACC.	**quemquem**		**quidquid** (**quicquid**)
	ABL.	**quōquō**	**quāquā**	**quōquō**
Plur.	NOM.	**quīquī**		
	D., ABL.	**quibusquibus**		

c. Indefinite compounds are: **quīdam,** *a, a certain*; **quispiam,** *any*; **quīvīs, quīlibet,** *any you please*; **quisquam,** *any at all*. Of these the former part is declined like **quis** and **quī,** but all have both **quod** (adjective) and **quid** (substantive) in the neuter.

d. The indefinite **quis,** otherwise rare, is found in the compound **aliquis,** *some one*, and the combinations **sī quis,** *if any*; **nē quis,** *lest any, that none*; **ecquis, num quis,** *whether any*, and a few others.

These are declined like **quis,** but have generally **qua** instead of **quae,** except in the nominative plural feminine. The forms **aliquae, ecquae,** nominative singular feminine, occur rarely.

NOTE. — The compounds **quispiam, aliquis,** and **quisquam** are often used instead of **quis** with **sī, nē,** and **num,** and are rather more emphatic, as **sī quis,** if *any one*, **sī aliquis,** if *some one*, **sī quisquam,** if *any one* (*ever*, cf. *h*).

These compounds are thus declined: —

Sing.	**aliquis**, *some.*		
Nom.	**aliquis (aliquī)**	**aliqua**	**aliquid (aliquod)**
Gen.	**alicūius**	**alicūius**	**alicūius**
Dat.	**alicui**	**alicui**	**alicui**
Acc.	**aliquem**	**aliquam**	**aliquid (aliquod)**
Abl.	**aliquō**	**aliquā**	**aliquō**
Plur.			
Nom.	**aliquī**	**aliquae**	**aliqua**
Gen.	**aliquōrum**	**aliquārum**	**aliquōrum**
D., Abl.	**aliquibus**	**aliquibus**	**aliquibus**
Acc.	**aliquōs**	**aliquās**	**aliqua**

The forms in **-quī** and **-quod** are adjective; those in **-quis** and **-quid**, substantive: as, **aliquod bonum**, *some good thing;* but **aliquid bonī**, *something good* (something of good).

e. The enclitic particle **que** added to the interrogative gives a universal: as, **quisque**, *every one*, **uterque**, *either* of two, or *both.* In this combination **quis** is declined regularly.

In the compound **ūnusquisque**, *every single one*, both parts are declined, and they are sometimes separated by other words.

Quotus quisque has the signification *how many, pray?* often in a disparaging sense.

f. The relative and interrogative have a possessive adjective **cūius** (**-a, -um**), *whose;* and a patrial **cūiās** (**cūiātis**), *of what country.*

g. **Quantus**, *how great*, **quālis**, *of what sort*, are derivative adjectives from the interrogative. They are either interrogative or relative, corresponding to the demonstratives **tantus**, **tālis**.

h. **Quisquam**, with **ūllus**, *any*, **unquam**, *ever*, **usquam**, *anywhere*, are used only in negative sentences, or where there is an implied negative (as in interrogative or conditional sentences, or after **quam**, *than;* **sine**, *without;* **vix**, *scarcely*): as, **nec quisquam ex āgmine tantō**, *and nobody from that great throng;* **sī quisquam est timidus, is ego sum**, *if any one is timorous, I am the man;* **sine ūllō dominō**, *without any master.*

i. **Quisnam** is emphatic: *pray who?* **ecquis** and **numquis** are compounded from the indefinite particle **ēn** and the interrogative **num**; they mean not *who*, but *any* in a question: as, **ecquis nōs videt?** *does any one see us?* **num quid hōc dubitās**, *do you at all doubt this?*

7. Correlatives.

106. Many pronouns, pronominal adjectives, and adverbs have corresponding ***demonstrative, relative, interrogative*** and ***indefinite*** forms. Such parallel forms are called CORRELATIVES. They are shown in the following table:—

DEMONSTR.	RELATIVE.	INTERROG.	INDEF. RELATIVE.	INDEF.
is, *that, he*	**quī**, *who*	**quis?** *who?*	**quisquis**, *whoever*	**aliquis**, *some one*
tantus, *so great*	**quantus**	**quantus?**	**(quantuscumque)**	**aliquantus**
tālis, *such*	**quālis**	**quālis?**	**(quāliscumque)**	——
ibi, *there*	**ubi**	**ubi?**	**ubiubi**	**alicubi**
eō, *thither*	**quō**	**quō?**	**quōquō**	**aliquō**
eā, *that way*	**quā**	**quā?**	**quāquā**	**aliquā**
inde, *thence*	**unde**	**unde?**	**(undecumque)**	**alicunde**
tum, *then*	**quom, cum**	**quandō?**	**(cumcumque)**	**aliquandō**
tot, *so many*	**quot**	**quot?**	**quotquot**	**aliquot**
totiēs, *so often*	**quotiēs**	**quotiēs?**	**(quotiēscumque)**	**aliquotiēs**

a. The forms **tot** *so many*, **quot**, *how (as) many*, **aliquot**, *several*, **totidem**, *as many*, are indeclinable, and may take any gender or case: as, **per tot annōs, tot proeliīs, tot imperātōrēs** (Cic.), *so many commanders, for so many years, in so many battles.*

b. The relative word in a pair of correlatives is often to be rendered simply *as:* thus, **tantum argentī quantum aeris**, *as much* (of) *silver as* (of) *copper.*

c. A frequent form of correlative is found in the ablative **quō** or **quantō**, *by how much;* **eō** or **tantō**, *by so much*, used with comparatives (rendered in English *the* . . . *the*): as,—

quō magis cōnāris, eō longius prōgrederis, *the more you try, the farther on you get.*

107. Certain relative and demonstrative adverbs are used correlatively as conjunctions: as,—

ut (rel.) . . . **ita, sic** (dem.), *as (while)* . . . *so (yet).*

tam (dem.) . . . **quam** (rel.), *so (as)* . . . *as.*

cum (rel.) . . . **tum** (dem.), *both* . . . *and; while* . . . *so also; not only* . . . *but also.*

Compare **et** . . . **et**, *both* . . . *and;* **aut (vel)** . . . **aut (vel)**, *either* . . . *or;* **sive (seu)** . . . **sive**; **utrum** . . . **an**, *whether* . . . *or.*

6. VERBS.

I. INFLECTION OF THE VERB.

1. Voice, Mood, Tense.

108. The inflection of the Verb denotes Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

a. The VOICES are two: Active and Passive.

b. The MOODS are four: Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.

c. The TENSES are six, viz.: —

1. For continued action, Present, Imperfect, Future.
2. For completed action, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

d. PERSON and NUMBER. — There are separate terminations for each of the three PERSONS, — First, Second, and Third, — both in the singular and in the plural.

2. Noun and Adjective Forms.

109. The following Noun and Adjective forms are also included in the inflection of the Latin Verb: —

a. FOUR PARTICIPLES, viz.: —

Active: the Present and Future Participles.
Passive: the Perfect Participle and the Gerundive.

b. The GERUND: this is in form a neuter noun of the second declension, used only in the oblique cases of the singular. A corresponding nominative is supplied by the Infinitive (see § 114. note).

c. The SUPINE: see §§ 71. *a* and 114. *b*.

3. Defective Forms.

110. Special forms for some of the tenses are wanting in certain parts of the verb: —

a. The Subjunctive mood wants the Future and the Future Perfect.

b. In the Passive voice in all moods the tenses of completed action are supplied by the Perfect Participle with the present, imperfect, and future of the verb **esse**, TO BE: as, **occīsus est**, *he was killed.*

c. The Imperative mood has only the Present and the Future.

d. In the Infinitive mood the Present (active and passive) and the Perfect (active) only are formed by inflection. A Future in the active voice is formed by the Future Participle with the infinitive **esse** TO BE : as, **amātūrus esse**, *to be going to love;* in the passive, by the Former Supine with **īrī** (infin. pass. of **īre**, *to go*) : as, **amātum īrī**, *to be about to be loved.* For the Perfect passive, see *b* above.

II. SIGNIFICATION OF THE FORMS OF THE VERB.

1. Voices.

111. The Active and Passive Voices in Latin generally correspond to the active and passive in English ; but —

a. The passive voice often has a reflexive meaning : as, **induitur vestem**, *he puts on his* (own) *clothes;* **vertitur**, *he turns* (himself).

b. Many verbs are used only in the passive form, but with an active or reflexive meaning. These are called DEPONENTS (*dēpōnentia*), *i.e.* verbs which have laid aside (*dēpōnere*) the active form and the passive meaning (see § 135).

c. Three verbs have a passive form in the tenses of completed action : **audeō, ausus sum**; **gaudeō, gāvīsus sum**; **fīdo, fīsus sum.**

2. Moods.

112. The Moods are used as follows : —

a. The Indicative is used for *direct assertions* and *interrogations :* as, **valēsne? valeō**, *are you well? I am well;* and also in some other idiomatic forms of predication.

b. The Subjunctive has many uses, as in *commands*, *conditions*, and various *dependent clauses.* It is often translated by the Indicative ; often with the auxiliaries *may*, *might*, *would*, *should;* often by the Infinitive ; or by the Imperative. Thus,—

eāmus, *let us go.*
cum vēnisset, *when he had come.*
adsum ut videam, *I am here to see* (that I may see).
tū nē quaesieris, *do not thou inquire.*
nēmō est quī ita existimet, *there is no one who thinks so.*
beātus sīs, *may you be blessed.*

nē abeat, *let him not depart.*
quid morer, *why should I delay?*
sunt quī putent, *there are some who think.*
imperat ut scrībam, *he orders me to write* (that I write).
nesciō quid scrībam, *I know not what to write.*
licet eās, *you may go* (it is permitted that you go).
cave cadās, *don't fall.*
vereor nē eat, *I fear he will go.*
vereor ut eat, *I fear he will not go.*
sī moneam audiat (pres.), *if I should warn, he would hear.*
sī vocārem audīret (imperf.), *if I were* (now) *calling, he would hear.*

c. The IMPERATIVE is used for *exhortation, entreaty,* or *command;* but the Subjunctive is often used instead.

d. The INFINITIVE is used chiefly as an indeclinable noun, as the subject or object of another verb. In special uses it takes the place of the Indicative, and may be translated by that mood.

NOTE. — For the Syntax of the Moods, see §§ 264 ff.

3. Participles.

113. The Participles are used as follows: —

a. The Present participle (ending in **-ns**) has commonly the same meaning as the English participle in -ING: as, **vocāns,** *calling;* **legentēs,** *reading.* (For its inflection, see **egēns,** § 85.)

b. 1. The Future participle (ending in **-ūrus**) is oftenest used to express what is *likely* or *about* to happen.

NOTE. — With the tenses of **esse,** TO BE, it forms the First Periphrastic conjugation: as, **urbs est cāsūra,** *the city is about to fall.*

2. It is also used, more rarely, to express purpose (see § 293. *b*): as, **vēnit audītūrus,** *he came to hear* (about to hear).

c. The Perfect participle (ending in **-tus, -sus**) has two uses: —

1. It is sometimes equivalent to the English Perfect Passive participle in -ED: as, **tēctus,** *sheltered;* **acceptus,** *accepted;* **īctus,** *having been struck;* and often has simply an adjective meaning: as, **acceptus,** *acceptable.*

2. It is also used to form certain tenses of the passive (§ 110. *b*): as, **vocātus est,** *he was* (has been) *called.*

NOTE. — There is no Perfect Active or Present Passive participle in Latin. The perfect participle of deponents, however, is generally used in an active sense: as, **secūtus**, *having followed*. In the case of other verbs some different construction is used for these missing participles: as, **cum vēnisset**, *having come* (when he had come); **equitātū praemissō**, *having sent forward the cavalry* (the cavalry having been sent forward); **dum verberātur**, *while he is* (being) *struck*.

d. 1. The Gerundive (ending in **-ndus**) is often used as an adjective implying obligation or necessity (*ought* or *must*): as, **audiendus est**, *he must be heard*.

NOTE. — With the tenses of **esse**, TO BE, it forms the Second Periphrastic conjugation; as, **dēligendus erat**, *he ought to have been chosen*.

2. In the oblique cases the Gerundive commonly has the same meaning as the Gerund (cf. § 114. *a*), though its construction is different. (For examples, see §§ 295 ff.)

e. The Participles may all be used as simple adjectives; and the present and perfect are sometimes compared: as **amāns**, **amantior**, *more fond*; **dīlēctus**, **dīlēctissimus**, *dearest*.

f. The Present and Perfect participles are (like adjectives) often used as nouns: as, **regentēs**, *rulers*; **mortuī**, *the dead*.

g. As an adjective, the participle is often used predicatively to indicate some special circumstance or situation: as, **moritūrī vōs salūtāmus**, *we at the point of death* (about to die) *salute you*.

4. Gerund and Supine.

114. The Gerund and Supine are used as follows: —

a. The GERUND is, in form, the neuter singular of the Gerundive. It is a verbal noun, corresponding in meaning to the English verbal noun in -ING (§ 295): as, **loquendī causā**, *for the sake of speaking*.

NOTE. — The Gerund is found only in the oblique cases. A corresponding nominative is supplied by the Infinitive: thus, **scrībere est ūtile**, *writing* (to write) *is useful*; but, **ars scrībendī**, *the art of writing*.

b. The SUPINE is in form a noun of the fourth declension (§ 71. *a*), found only in the accusative, ending in **-tum**, **-sum**, and the ablative (or dative, probably both), ending in **-tū**, **-sū**. These are sometimes called the Former and the Latter Supine. The Former is used after verbs and the Latter after adjectives (§§ 302, 303): as, —

1. **vēnit spectātum**, *he came to see*.
2. **mīrābile dictū**, *wonderful to tell*.

5. Tenses.

115. The tenses of the verb are of two classes, viz.: —

1. Of continued action.

1. PRESENT : **scrībō**, *I am writing*.
2. IMPERFECT : **scrībēbam**, *I was writing*.
3. FUTURE : **scrībam**, *I shall write*.

2. Of completed action.

4. PERFECT : **scrīpsī**, *I have written, I wrote*.
5. PLUPERFECT ; **scrīpseram**, *I had written*.
6. FUTURE PERFECT : **scrīpserō**, *I shall have written*.

a. Tenses of the Indicative.

a. The tenses of the Indicative have, in general, the same meaning as the corresponding tenses in English ; but are in some cases distinguished differently in their use. Thus, —

1. The Future or Future Perfect is often used in subordinate clauses, where the English uses the Present : as, —

sī quid habēbō dabō, *if I have* (shall have) *anything, I will give*.
cum vēnerō scrībam, *when I come* (shall have come), *I will write*.

2. The Present and Imperfect are often used to express *continued action* where the English uses tenses of *completed action :* as, —

iam diū aegrōtō, *I have long been* (and still am) *sick*.
iam diū aegrōtābam, *I had long been* (and still was) *sick*.

NOTE. — Here the Perfect, **aegrōtāvī**, would imply that I am now well ; the Pluperfect, that I was well at the past time designated.

b. The Imperfect is used to *describe* in past time a *continued action* or a *condition of things :* as, **scrībēbat**, *he was writing ;* **ārdēbat**, *it was on fire*.

c. The Perfect, having two separate uses, is divided into the Perfect Definite and the Perfect Historical (or Indefinite).

1. The Perfect Definite represents the action of the verb as completed in present time, and corresponds to the English (present- or compound-) perfect : as, **scrīpsī**, *I have written*.

2. The Perfect Historical *narrates* a simple act or state in past time without representing it as in progress. It corresponds to the English past or preterite : as, **scrīpsit**, *he wrote ;* **ārsit**, *it blazed up*.

b. **Tenses of the Subjunctive.**

d. The tenses of the Subjunctive Mood are chiefly used in dependent clauses, following the rule for the Sequence of Tenses (see § 286); but have also special idiomatic uses (see Syntax).

III. PERSONAL ENDINGS.

116. Verbs have regular terminations for each of the three Persons, both singular and plural, active and passive. These are called Personal endings.

IV. FORMS OF THE VERB.

117. Every Latin verb-form (except the adjective and noun forms) is made up of two parts, viz.: —

1. The STEM. This is either the root or a modification of it.
2. The ENDING, consisting of —
    a. the signs of mood and tense.
    b. the personal ending (see § 116).

118. The Verb-endings, as they are formed by the signs for mood and tense combined with personal endings, are exhibited in the following table:

		ACTIVE.			PASSIVE.		
		INDIC.		SUBJ.	INDIC.		SUBJ.
				Present.			
Sing.	1.	**-ō**	*Vowel-Change:* I.[1] to ē; II. to eā; III. to ā; IV. to iā.	**-m**	**-or**	*Vowel-Change:* as in Active.	**-r**
	2.	**-s**		**-s**	**-ris** *or* **-re**		**-ris** *or* **-re**
	3.	**-t**		**-t**	**-tur**		**-tur**
Plur.	1.	**-mus**		**-mus**	**-mur**		**-mur**
	2.	**-tis**		**-tis**	**-minī**		**-minī**
	3.	**-nt**		**-nt**	**-ntur**		**-ntur**
				Imperfect.			
Sing.	1.	**-ba-m**		**-re-m**	**-ba-r**		**-re-r**
	2.	**-bā-s**		**-rē-s**	**-bā-ris (-re)**		**-rē-ris (-re)**
	3.	**-ba-t**		**-re-t**	**-bā-tur**		**-rē-tur**
Plur.	1.	**-bā-mus**		**-rē-mus**	**-bā-mur**		**-rē-mur**
	2.	**-bā-tis**		**-rē-tis**	**-bā-minī**		**-rē-minī**
	3.	**-ba-nt**		**-re-nt**	**-ba-ntur**		**-re-ntur**

[1] These numerals refer to the four conjugations given later (see § 122).

	ACTIVE.			PASSIVE.		
	INDICATIVE.		***Future.***	INDICATIVE.		
	I. II.[1]	III. IV.		I. II.		III. IV.
Sing. 1.	-b-ō	-*a*-m		-bo-r		-*a*-r
2.	-bi-s	-*ē*-s		-be-ris (-re)		-*ē*-ris (re)
3.	-bi-t	-*e*-t		-bi-tur		-*ē*-tur
Plur. 1.	-bi-mus	-*ē*-mus		-bi-mur		-*ē*-mur
2.	-bi-tis	-*ē*-tis		-bi-minī		-*ē*-minī
3.	-bu-nt	-*e*-nt		-bu-ntur		-*e*-ntur

Active: *Vowel-Change*: as indicated in italics; verbs in *iō* retaining *i* before these vowels.
Passive: *Vowel-Change*: as in Active.

Perfect.

	INDIC.	SUBJ.		INDIC.	SUBJ.
Sing. 1.	-ī	-eri-m	-tus (-ta, -tum)	sum	sim
2.	-i-stī	-eri-s		es	sīs
3.	-i-t	-eri-t		est	sit
Plur. 1.	-i-mus	-eri-mus	-tī (-tae, -ta)	sumus	sīmus
2.	-i-stis	-eri-tis		estis	sītis
3.	-ēru-nt *or* -ēre	-eri-nt		sunt	sint

Pluperfect.

Sing. 1.	-era-m	-isse-m	-tus (-ta, -tum)	eram	essem
2.	-erā-s	-issē-s		erās	essēs
3.	-era-t	-isse-t		erat	esset
Plur. 1.	-erā-mus	-issē-mus	-tī (-tae, -ta)	erāmus	essēmus
2.	-erā-tis	-issē-tis		erātis	essētis
3.	-era-nt	-isse-nt		erant	essent

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1.	-er-ō	-tus (-ta, -tum)	erō
2.	-eri-s		eris
3.	-eri-t		erit
Plur. 1.	-eri-mus	-tī (-tae, -ta)	erimus
2.	-eri-tis		eritis
3.	-eri-nt		erunt

IMPERATIVE.

Present.

Sing. 2. — *Plur.* 2. -te | *Sing.* 2. -re *Plur.* 2. -minī

Future.

2. -tō	2. -tōte	2. -tor	2. —
3. -tō	3. -ntō	3. -tor	3. -ntor

[1] These numerals refer to the four conjugations given later (see § 122).

For convenience, a table of the Noun and Adjective forms of the verb is here added.

INFINITIVES.

Pres. -re (Pres. stem)	I. II. IV.	-rī; III. -ī
Perf. -isse (Perf. stem)		-tus (-ta, -tum) esse
Fut. -tūrus (-a, -um) esse		-tum īrī

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. -ns, -ntis		———
Perf. ———		-tus, -ta, -tum
Fut. -tūrus, -a, -um	*Ger.*	-ndus, -a, -um

GERUND.	SUPINE.
-ndī, -ndō, -ndum -ndō	-tum, -tū

THE VERB SUM.

119. The verb **sum**, *be*, is irregular and has no gerund or supine, and no participle but the future.

Its conjugation is given at the outset, as it is used in the inflection of all other verbs.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: Pres. **sum**, Infin. **esse**, Perf. **fuī**, Fut. Part. **futūrus**.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	Present.	
Sing. 1.	**sum**, *I am.*	**sim**[1]
2.	**ĕs**, *thou art (you are).*	**sīs**
3.	**est**, *he (she, it) is.*	**sit**
Plur. 1.	**sumus**, *we are.*	**sīmus**
2.	**estis**, *you are.*	**sītis**
3.	**sunt**, *they are.*	**sint**
	Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	**eram**, *I was.*	**essem (forem)**
2.	**erās**, *you were.*	**essēs (forēs)**
3.	**erat**, *he (she, it) was.*	**esset (foret)**
Plur. 1.	**erāmus**, *we were.*	**essēmus**
2.	**erātis**, *you were.*	**essētis**
3.	**erant**, *they were.*	**essent (forent)**

[1] No translations of the subjunctive are given, as all are misleading.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Future.	
Sing. 1. **erō**, *I shall be.*	
2. **eris**, *you will be.*	
3. **erit**, *he will be.*	
Plur. 1. **erimus**, *we shall be.*	
2. **eritis**, *you will be.*	
3. **erunt**, *they will be.*	
Perfect.	
Sing. 1. **fuī**, *I was (have been).*	**fuerim**
2. **fuistī**, *you were.*	**fueris**
3. **fuit**, *he was.*	**fuerit**
Plur. 1. **fuimus**, *we were.*	**fuerimus**
2. **fuistis**, *you were.*	**fueritis**
3. **fuērunt**, **fuēre**, *they were.*	**fuerint**
Pluperfect.	
Sing. 1. **fueram**, *I had been.*	**fuissem**
2. **fuerās**, *you had been.*	**fuissēs**
3. **fuerat**, *he had been.*	**fuisset**
Plur. 1. **fuerāmus**, *we had been.*	**fuissēmus**
2. **fuerātis**, *you had been.*	**fuissētis**
3. **fuerant**, *they had been.*	**fuissent**

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. **fuerō**, *I shall have been.*	*Plur.* 1. **fuerimus**, *we shall have been.*
2. **fueris**, *you will have been.*	2. **fueritis**, *you will have been.*
3. **fuerit**, *he will have been.*	3. **fuerint**, *they will have been.*

IMPERATIVE.

Present.	*Sing.* 2. **ĕs**, *be thou.*	*Plur.* 2. **este**, *be ye.*
Future.	2. **estō**, *thou shalt be.*	2. **estōte**, *ye shall be.*
	3. **estō**, *he shall be.*	3. **suntō**, *they shall be.*

INFINITIVE.

Present. **esse**, *to be.*

Perfect. **fuisse**, *to have been.*

Future. **fore** or **futūrus esse**, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

Future. **futūrus, -a, -um,** *about to be.*

a. The present participle appears in **ab-sēns, prae-sēns**; and as **ēns** in **pot-ēns**.

b. For **essem,** etc., **forem, forēs,** etc., are often used.

120. The verb **sum** appears in numerous compounds, which are treated under Irregular Verbs (§ 137).

The Three Stems.

121. The parts of the Latin verb are formed upon three different stems (partly real and partly supposed), called the Present, the Perfect, and the Supine Stem.

a. The tenses of *continued action*, both active and passive, together with the Gerund and Gerundive, are formed upon the PRESENT STEM, and collectively are called the Present System.

b. The tenses of *completed action* in the active voice are formed upon the PERFECT STEM, and are called the Perfect System.

c. The Perfect and Future Participles and the Supine are formed upon the SUPINE STEM, and are called the Supine System.

V. REGULAR VERBS.

122. There are four regular forms of Present Stems ending respectively in **ā-, ē-, ĕ-, ī-**. With this difference most other differences of conjugation coincide.

a. Verbs are accordingly classed in Four Regular Conjugations, distinguished by the stem-vowel which appears before **-re** in the Present Infinitive Active.

b. The PRINCIPAL PARTS of a verb, which determine its conjugation throughout, are —

1. The Present Indicative } showing the *present stem* and
2. The Present Infinitive } the *conjugation.*
3. The Perfect Indicative, showing the *perfect stem.*
4. The Supine, showing the *supine stem.*

c. The regular forms of the conjugations are seen in the following: —

First : Active, **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum,** *love.*

Passive, **amor, amārī, amātus.**

Present stem **amā-**, Perfect stem **amāv-**, Supine stem **amāt-**.

Second : Active, **dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum,** *blot out.*

Passive, **dēleor, dēlērī, dēlētus.**

Present stem **dēlē-**, Perfect stem **dēlēv-**, Supine stem **dēlēt-**.

Third : Active, **tegō, tegĕre, tēxī, tēctum,** *cover.*

Passive, **tegor, tegī, tēctus.**

Root teg, Present stem **tegĕ-**, Perfect stem **tēx-**, Supine stem **tēct-**.

Fourth : Active, **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum,** *hear.*

Passive, **audior, audīrī, audītus.**

Present stem **audī-**, Perfect stem **audīv-**, Supine stem **audīt-**.

In the Second conjugation, the characteristic **ē-** rarely appears in the perfect and supine : the type of this conjugation is, therefore —

Second : Active, **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum,** *warn.*

Passive, **moneor, monērī, monitus.**

d. In many verbs the principal parts take forms belonging to two or more different conjugations : as, —

1, 2, **domō, domāre, domuī, domitum,** *subdue.*
2, 3, **maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum,** *remain.*
3, 4, **petō, petĕre, petīvī, petītum,** *seek.*
4, 3, **vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctum,** *bind.*

Such verbs are referred to the conjugation to which the Present stem conforms.

1. Present Stem.

123. The Present Stem is formed from the Root in regular verbs in several ways, as appears in dictionaries.

2. Perfect Stem.

124. The Perfect Stem is formed as follows:—

a. The suffix **v** (**u**) is added to the present stem: as, **vocā-v-ī, audī-v-ī**; or to the root: as, **son-u-ī** (**son-āre**), **mon-u-ī** (**mon-ēre**, MON treated as a root).

NOTE.—In a few verbs the vowel of the root is transposed and lengthened (see § 9. *d*): as, **strā-v-ī** (**ster-nō**), **sprē-v-ī** (**sper-nō**).

b. The suffix **s** is added to the root: as, **carp-s-ī** (**carp-ō**), **tēx-ī** (for **teg-s-ī, teg-ō**).

c. The root is *reduplicated* by prefixing the first consonant—generally with **ĕ**, sometimes with the root-vowel: as, **ce-cid-ī** (**cad-ō**), **to-tond-ī** (**tond-eō**).

NOTE.—In **fid-ī** (for † **fe-fid-ī, find-ō**), **scid-ī** (for † **sci-scid-ī, scindō**), the reduplication has been lost, leaving merely the root.

d. The root-vowel is lengthened: as, **ēg-ī** (**ăg-ō**), **fūg-ī** (**fŭg-i-ō**).

e. The root itself is used as the perfect stem: as, **vert-ī** (**vert-ō**), **solv-ī** (**solv-ō**, SOLV treated as a root).

f. Sometimes the perfect is formed from a lost or imaginary stem: as, **petī-v-ī** (as if from † **peti-ō**, † **petī-re, pet-ō**).

3. Supine Stem.

125. The Supine Stem is formed by adding **t-** (or, by a phonetic change, **s-**):—

a. To the present stem: as, **amā-t-um, dēlē-t-um, audī-t-um.**

b. To the root, with or without **ĭ**: **cap-t-um** (**cap-iō**), **moni-t-um** (**mon-eō**, MON treated as a root), **cās-um** (for **cad-t-um**).

126. Omitted in this edition.

4. Synopsis of the Verb.

127. The following synopsis shows the forms of the verbs arranged according to the several stems. **Amō**, a regular verb of the first conjugation, is taken as a type.

PRESENT STEM, **amā-**; PERFECT STEM, **amāv-**; SUPINE STEM, **amāt-**.

		PRES.	IMPERF.	FUT.	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUT. PERF.
ACTIVE.	IND.	**amō**	**amā-bam**	**amā-bō**	**amāv-ī**	**amāv-eram**	**amāv-erō**
	SUB.	**ame-m**	**amā-rem**	———	**amāv-erim**	**amāv-issem**	
	IMP. 2.	**amā**	———	**amā-tō**	———	———	
	INF.	**amā-re**	———	**amāt-ūrus esse**	**amāv-isse**		
	PART.	**amā-ns**		**amāt-ūrus**			
PASSIVE.	IND.	**am-or**	**amā-bar**	**amā-bor**	**amāt-us sum**	**— eram**	**— erō**
	SUB.	**ame-r**	**amā-rer**	———	**amāt-us sim**	**— essem**	
	IMP. 2.	**amā-re**	———	**amā-tor**	———	———	
	INF.	**amā-rī**	———	**amā-tum īrī**	**amāt-us esse**		
	PART.			*Ger.* **ama-ndus**	**amāt-us**		

128. SPECIAL FORMS. — *a.* In tenses formed upon the perfect stem, **v** between two vowels is often lost. Thus, —

1. Perfects in **-āvi**, **-ēvi**, **-ōvi** often contract the two vowels into **ā**, **ē**, **ō** respectively: as, **amāsse** for **amāvisse**; **amārim** for **amāverim**; **cōnsuērat** for **cōnsuēverat**; **flēstis** for **flēvistis**. So where the **v** is a part of the present stem: as, **commōrat** for **commōverat**.

2. Perfects in **-īvi** regularly omit **v**, but rarely contract the vowels except before **st** and **ss**: as, **audieram** for **audīveram**; **audīsse** for **audīvisse**; **audīstī** for **audīvistī**; **abiit** for **abīvit**.

b. In many forms from the perfect stem, **is**, **iss**, **sis** are lost in like manner when **s** would be repeated: as, **dīxtī** for **dīxistī** (**x** = **cs**).

c. Four verbs, — **dīcō**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, **ferō**, — with their compounds, drop the vowel-termination in the imperative, making **dīc**, **dūc**, **făc**, **fĕr**; but compounds in **-ficiō** retain it: as, **cōnfice** (**cōn-ficio**).

d. For the imperative of **sciō**, the future form **scītō** is always used in the singular, and **scītōte** usually in the plural.

e. The following ancient forms are chiefly found in poetry: —

1. In the fourth conjugation **-ībam**, **-ībō** for **-iēbam**, **-iam** (future).

2. In the present subjunctive **-im**: as in **duim** (for **dem**).

3. In the perfect subjunctive and future perfect **-sim**, **-sō**: as, **faxim**, **faxō** (= **fēcerō**, etc.); **ausim** (= **ausus sim**).

4. In the passive infinitive **-ier**: as, **īrier** for **īrī**; **agier** for **agī**.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: Pres. **amō**, Infin. **amāre**, Perf. **amāvī**, Supine **amātum**.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Present.	
amō, *I love.*	**amem**
amās, *thou lovest (you love).*	**amēs**
amat, *he (she, it) loves.*	**amet**
amāmus, *we love.*	**amēmus**
amātis, *you love.*	**amētis**
amant, *they love.*	**ament**
Imperfect.	
amābam, *I loved.*	**amārem**
amābās, *you loved.*	**amārēs**
amābat, *he loved.*	**amāret**
amābāmus, *we loved.*	**amārēmus**
amābātis, *you loved.*	**amārētis**
amābant, *they loved.*	**amārent**
Future.	
amābō, *I shall love.*	
amābis, *you will love.*	
amābit, *he will love.*	
amābimus, *we shall love.*	
amābitis, *you will love.*	
amābunt, *they will love.*	
Perfect.	
amāvī, *I loved.*	**amāverim**
amāvistī, *you loved.*	**amāveris**
amāvit, *he loved.*	**amāverit**
amāvimus, *we loved.*	**amāverimus**
amāvistis, *you loved.*	**amāveritis**
amāvērunt (-ēre), *they loved.*	**amāverint**

Pluperfect.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
amāv**eram**, *I had loved.*	amāv**issem**
amāv**erās**, *you had loved.*	amāv**issēs**
amāv**erat**, *he had loved.*	amāv**isset**
amāv**erāmus**, *we had loved.*	amāv**issēmus**
amāv**erātis**, *you had loved.*	amāv**issētis**
amāv**erant**, *they had loved.*	amāv**issent**

Future Perfect.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amāv**erō**, *I shall have loved.*	amāv**erimus**, *we shall have loved.*
amāv**eris**, *you will have loved.*	amāv**eritis**, *you will have loved.*
amāv**erit**, *he will have loved.*	amāv**erint**, *they will have loved.*

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	2. am**ā**, *love thou.*	am**āte**, *love ye.*
Fut.	2. am**ātō**, *thou shalt love.*	am**ātōte**, *ye shall love.*
	3. am**ātō**, *he shall love.*	am**antō**, *they shall love.*

INFINITIVE.

Present. am**āre**, *to love.*

Perfect. amāv**isse** or am**āsse**, *to have loved.*

Future. am**ātūrus esse**, *to be about to love.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present. am**āns**, **-antis**, *loving.*

Future. am**ātūrus**, **-a**, **-um**, *about to love.*

GERUND.

GEN. am**andī**, *of loving.*	ACC. am**andum**, *loving.*
DAT. am**andō**, *for loving.*	ABL. am**andō**, *by loving.*

SUPINE.

Former. am**ātum** *Latter.* am**ātū**, *to love.*

129. The so-called Periphrastic conjugations are formed by combining the tenses of **esse** with the Future Active Participle and with the Gerundive: as,—

First Periphrastic Conjugation.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Present.	**amātūrus sum**, *I am about to love.*	—— **sim**
Imperf.	**amātūrus eram**, *I was about to love.*	—— **essem**
Future.	**amātūrus erō**, *I shall be about to love.*	
Perfect.	**amātūrus fui**, *I was about*, etc.	—— **fuerim**
Pluperf.	**amātūrus fueram**, *I had been about*, etc.	—— **fuissem**
Fut. Perf.	**amātūrus fuerō**, *I shall have been about*, etc.	

INFINITIVE: *Pres.* **amātūrus esse** *Perf.* **amātūrus fuisse**

Second Periphrastic Conjugation.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Present.	**amandus sum**, *I am to be loved.*	—— **sim**
Imperf.	**amandus eram**, *I was to be loved.*	—— **essem**
Future.	**amandus erō**, *I shall be* [worthy] *to be loved.*	
Perfect.	**amandus fui**, *I was to be loved.*	—— **fuerim**
Pluperf.	**amandus fueram**, *I had been*, etc.	—— **fuissem**
Fut. Perf.	**amandus fuerō**, *I shall have been*, etc.	

INFINITIVE: *Pres.* **amandus esse** *Perf.* **amandus fuisse**

FIRST CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: Pres. **amor**, Infin. **amāri**, Perf. **amātus sum**.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Present.	
amor, *I am loved.*	**amer**
amāris (-re), *you are loved.*	**amēris (-re)**
amātur, *he is loved.*	**amētur**
amāmur, *we are loved.*	**amēmur**
amāmini, *you are loved.*	**amēmini**
amantur, *they are loved.*	**amentur**
Imperfect.	
amābar, *I was loved.*	**amārer**
amābāris (-re), *you were loved.*	**amārēris (-re)**
amābātur, *he was loved.*	**amārētur**
amābāmur, *we were loved.*	**amārēmur**
amābāmini, *you were loved.*	**amārēmini**
amābantur, *they were loved.*	**amārentur**

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Future.	
amābor, *I shall be loved.*	
amāberis (**-re**), *you will be loved.*	
amābitur, *he will be loved.*	
amābimur, *we shall be loved.*	
amābiminī, *you will be loved.*	
amābuntur, *they will be loved.*	
Perfect.	
amātus **sum**, *I was loved.*	amātus **sim**
amātus **es**, *you were loved.*	amātus **sīs**
amātus **est**, *he was loved.*	amātus **sit**
amātī **sumus**, *we were loved.*	amātī **sīmus**
amātī **estis**, *you were loved.*	amātī **sītis**
amātī **sunt**, *they were loved.*	amātī **sint**
Pluperfect.	
amātus **eram**, *I had been loved.*	amātus **essem**
amātus **erās**, *you had been loved.*	amātus **essēs**
amātus **erat**, *he had been loved.*	amātus **esset**
amātī **erāmus**, *we had been loved.*	amātī **essēmus**
amātī **erātis**, *you had been loved.*	amātī **essētis**
amātī **erant**, *they had been loved.*	amātī **essent**

Future Perfect.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amātus **erō**, *I shall have been loved.*	amātī **erimus**, *we shall have*, etc.
amātus **eris**, *you will have*, etc.	amātī **eritis**, *you will have*, etc.
amātus **erit**, *he will have*, etc.	amātī **erunt**, *they will have*, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	2. **amāre**, *be thou loved.*	**amāminī**, *be ye loved.*
Fut.	2. **amātor**, *thou shalt be loved.*	———
	3. **amātor**, *he shall be loved.*	**amantor**, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

Present. **amārī**, *to be loved.*

Perfect. **amātus esse**, *to have been loved.*

Future. **amātum īrī** (**amātus fore**), *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. **amātus**, *loved* (*beloved*, or *having been loved*).
Future. (Gerundive.) **amandus, -a, -um**, *to-be-loved* (*lovely*).

130. There are about 360 simple verbs of this conjugation, most of them formed directly on a noun- or adjective-stem: as, **armō**, *arm* (**arma**, *arms*); **caecō**, *to blind* (**caecus**, *blind*); **exsulō**, *be an exile* (**exsul**, *an exile*) (§ 166. *a*). Their conjugation is usually regular, like **amō**; though of many only a few forms are found in use.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *Active*, **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum**; *Passive*, **moneor, monērī, monitus sum.**

ACTIVE. INDIC.	SUBJ.	PASSIVE. INDIC.	SUBJ.
	Present.		
moneō, *I warn.*	**moneam**	**moneor**	**monear**
monēs, *you warn.*	**moneās**	**monēris (-re)**	**moneāris(-re)**
monet, *he warns.*	**moneat**	**monētur**	**moneātur**
monēmus	**moneāmus**	**monēmur**	**moneāmur**
monētis	**moneātis**	**monēminī**	**moneāminī**
monent	**moneant**	**monentur**	**moneantur**
	Imperfect.		
monēbam	**monērem**	**monēbar**	**monērer**
monēbās	**monērēs**	**monēbāris (-re)**	**monērēris (-re)**
monēbat	**monēret**	**monēbātur**	**monērētur**
monēbāmus	**monērēmus**	**monēbāmur**	**monērēmur**
monēbātis	**monērētis**	**monēbāminī**	**monērēminī**
monēbant	**monērent**	**monēbantur**	**monērentur**
	Future.		
monēbō		**monēbor**	
monēbis		**monēberis (-re)**	
monēbit		**monēbitur**	
monēbimus		**monēbimur**	
monēbitis		**monēbiminī**	
monēbunt		**monēbuntur**	

ACTIVE. INDIC.	ACTIVE. SUBJ.	PASSIVE. INDIC.	PASSIVE. SUBJ.
	Perfect.		
monuī	monuerim	monitus **sum**	monitus **sim**
monu**istī**	monue**ris**	monitus **es**	monitus **sīs**
monuit	monuerit	monitus **est**	monitus **sit**
monu**imus**	monuerimus	monitī **sumus**	monitī **sīmus**
monu**istis**	monue**ritis**	monitī **estis**	monitī **sītis**
monuērunt (-re)	monuerint	monitī **sunt**	monitī **sint**
	Pluperfect.		
monueram	monuissem	monitus **eram**	monitus **essem**
monuerās	monuissēs	monitus **erās**	monitus **essēs**
monuerat	monuisset	monitus **erat**	monitus **esset**
monuerāmus	monuissēmus	monitī **erāmus**	monitī **essēmus**
monuerātis	monuissētis	monitī **erātis**	monitī **essētis**
monuerant	monuissent	monitī **erant**	monitī **essent**
	Future Perfect.		
monuerō		monitus **erō**	
monueris		monitus **eris**	
monuerit		monitus **erit**	
monuerimus		monitī **erimus**	
monueritis		monitī **eritis**	
monuerint		monitī **erunt**	

IMPERATIVE.

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Pres. 2.	monē	monēte	monēre	monēminī
Fut. 2.	monētō	monētōte	monētor	———
3.	monētō	monentō	monētor	monentor

INFINITIVE.

	Active	Passive
Pres.	monēre	monērī
Perf.	monuisse	monitus esse
Fut.	monitūrus esse	monitum īrī (monitus fore)

PARTICIPLES.

Active	Passive
Pres. monēns	*Perf.* monitus
Fut. monitūrus	*Ger.* monendus

GERUND: monendī, -dō, -dum, -dō SUPINE: monitum, monitū

131. There are nearly 120 simple verbs of this conjugation, most of them denominative verbs of *condition*, having a corresponding noun and adjective from the same root, and an inceptive in **-scō** (§ 167. *a*): as, **caleō**, *be warm;* **calor**, *warmth;* **calidus**, *warm;* **calēscō**, *grow warm;* **timeō**, *fear;* **timor**, *fear;* **timidus**, *timid.*

Most verbs of this conjugation form their perfect and supine like **moneō**. The following have **-ēvī** and **-ētum**: **dēleō**, *destroy;* **fleō**, *weep;* **neō**, *spin;* **vieō**, *plat;* and compounds of **-pleō**, *fill;* **-oleō**, *grow.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *Active*, **tegō, tegĕre, tēxī, tēctum**;
Passive, **tegor, tegī, tēctus sum.**

ACTIVE. INDIC.	ACTIVE. SUBJ.	PASSIVE. INDIC.	PASSIVE. SUBJ.
	Present.		
tegō, *I cover.*	**tegam**	**tegor**	**tegar**
tegis, *you cover.*	**tegās**	**tegeris** (-re)	**tegāris** (-re)
tegit, *he covers.*	**tegat**	**tegitur**	**tegātur**
tegimus	**tegāmus**	**tegimur**	**tegāmur**
tegitis	**tegātis**	**tegiminī**	**tegāminī**
tegunt	**tegant**	**teguntur**	**tegantur**
	Imperfect.		
tegēbam	**tegerem**	**tegēbar**	**tegerer**
tegēbās	**tegerēs**	**tegēbāris** (-re)	**tegerēris** (-re)
tegēbat	**tegeret**	**tegēbātur**	**tegerētur**
tegēbāmus	**tegerēmus**	**tegēbāmur**	**tegerēmur**
tegēbātis	**tegerētis**	**tegēbāminī**	**tegerēminī**
tegēbant	**tegerent**	**tegēbantur**	**tegerentur**
	Future.		
tegam		**tegar**	
tegēs		**tegēris** (-re)	
teget		**tegētur**	
tegēmus		**tegēmur**	
tegētis		**tegēminī**	
tegent		**tegentur**	

ACTIVE. Indic.	Subj.	PASSIVE. Indic.	Subj.
	Perfect.		
tēxī	**tēxerim**	tēctus **sum**	tēctus **sim**
tēxistī	**tēxeris**	tēctus **es**	tēctus **sīs**
tēxit	**tēxerit**	tēctus **est**	tēctus **sit**
tēximus	**tēxerimus**	tēctī **sumus**	tēctī **sīmus**
tēxistis	**tēxeritis**	tēctī **estis**	tēctī **sītis**
tēxērunt (-re)	**tēxerint**	tēctī **sunt**	tēctī **sint**
	Pluperfect.		
tēxeram	**tēxissem**	tēctus **eram**	tēctus **essem**
tēxerās	**tēxissēs**	tēctus **erās**	tēctus **essēs**
tēxerat	**tēxisset**	tēctus **erat**	tēctus **esset**
tēxerāmus	**tēxissēmus**	tēctī **erāmus**	tēctī **essēmus**
tēxerātis	**tēxissētis**	tēctī **erātis**	tēctī **essētis**
tēxerant	**tēxissent**	tēctī **erant**	tēctī **essent**
	Future Perfect.		
tēxerō		tēctus **erō**	
tēxeris		tēctus **eris**	
tēxerit		tēctus **erit**	
tēxerimus		tēctī **erimus**	
tēxeritis		tēctī **eritis**	
tēxerint		tēctī **erunt**	

IMPERATIVE.

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Pres. 2.	**tege**, *cover.*	**tegite**	**tegere**	**tegiminī**
Fut. 2.	**tegitō**	**tegitōte**	**tegitor**	———
3.	**tegitō**	**teguntō**	**tegitor**	**teguntor**

INFINITIVE.

	Active	Passive
Pres.	**tegere**	**tegī**
Perf.	**tēxisse**	**tēctus esse**
Fut.	**tēctūrus esse**	**tēctum īrī (tēctus fore)**

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. **tegēns**	*Perf.* **tēctus**
Fut. **tēctūrus**	*Ger.* **tegendus (-undus)**

GERUND: **tegendī, -dō, -dum, -dō** SUPINE: **tēctum, tēctū**

VERBS IN -*IŌ*.

Verbs of the third conjugation in **-iō** have certain forms of the present stem like the fourth conjugation. They retain the **i** of the stem before **a**, **ō**, **u**, and **ē**, but lose it elsewhere except in the future and in the participle and gerund. They are conjugated as follows:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō, capĕre, cēpī, captum**; **capior, capī, captus sum.**

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
	Present.		
capiō, *I take.*	**capiam**	**capior**	**capiar**
capis, *you take.*	**capiās**	**caperis (-re)**	**capiāris (-re)**
capit, *he takes.*	**capiat**	**capitur**	**capiātur**
capimus	**capiāmus**	**capimur**	**capiāmur**
capitis	**capiātis**	**capiminī**	**capiāminī**
capiunt	**capiant**	**capiuntur**	**capiantur**
	Imperfect.		
capiēbam	**caperem**	**capiēbar**	**caperer**
	Future.		
capiam		**capiar**	
capiēs		**capiēris (-re)**	
capiet, etc.		**capiētur**, etc.	
	Perfect.		
cēpī	**cēperim**	captus **sum**	captus **sim**
	Pluperfect.		
cēperam	**cēpissem**	captus **eram**	captus **essem**
	Future Perfect.		
cēperō		captus **erō**	

IMPERATIVE.

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Pres.	2. **cape**	**capite**	**capere**	**capiminī**
Fut.	2. **capitō**	**capitōte**	**capitor**	———
	3. **capitō**	**capiunto**	**capitor**	**capiuntor**

INFINITIVE.

	SING.	PLUR.
Pres.	**capere**	**capī**
Perf.	**cēpisse**	**captus esse**
Fut.	**captūrus esse**	**captum īrī**

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. **capiēns**	*Perf.* **captus**
Fut. **captūrus**	*Ger.* **capiendus**

GERUND: **capiendī, -dō, -dum, -dō** SUPINE: **captum, -tū**

132. List of verbs omitted in this edition, see larger grammar.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *Active*, **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum**; *Passive*, **audior, audīrī, audītus sum.**

ACTIVE. INDIC.	SUBJ.	PASSIVE. INDIC.	SUBJ.
	Present.		
audiō, *I hear.*	**audiam**	**audior**	**audiar**
audīs, *you hear.*	**audiās**	**audīris (-re)**	**audiāris (-re)**
audit, *he hears.*	**audiat**	**audītur**	**audiātur**
audīmus	**audiāmus**	**audīmur**	**audiāmur**
audītis	**audiātis**	**audīminī**	**audiāminī**
audiunt	**audiant**	**audiuntur**	**audiantur**
	Imperfect.		
audiēbam	**audīrem**	**audiēbar**	**audīrer**
audiēbās	**audīrēs**	**audiēbāris (-re)**	**audīrēris (-re)**
audiēbat	**audīret**	**audiēbātur**	**audīrētur**
audiēbāmus	**audīrēmus**	**audiēbāmur**	**audīrēmur**
audiēbātis	**audīrētis**	**audiēbāminī**	**audīrēminī**
audiēbant	**audīrent**	**audiēbantur**	**audīrentur**
	Future.		
audiam		**audiar**	
audiēs		**audiēris (-re)**	
audiet		**audiētur**	
audiēmus		**audiēmur**	
audiētis		**audiēminī**	
audient		**audientur**	

ACTIVE. INDIC.	SUBJ.	PASSIVE. INDIC.	SUBJ.
Perfect.			
audīvī	audīverim	audītus sum	audītus sim
audīvistī	audīveris	audītus es	audītus sīs
audīvit	audīverit	audītus est	audītus sit
audīvimus	audīverimus	audītī sumus	audītī sīmus
audīvistis	audīveritis	audītī estis	audītī sītis
audīvērunt (-re)	audīverint	audītī sunt	audītī sint
Pluperfect.			
audīveram	audīvissem	audītus eram	audītus essem
audīverās	audīvissēs	audītus erās	audītus essēs
audīverat	audīvisset	audītus erat	audītus esset
audīverāmus	audīvissēmus	audītī erāmus	audītī essēmus
audīverātis	audīvissētis	audītī erātis	audītī essētis
audīverant	audīvissent	audītī erant	audītī essent
Future Perfect.			
audīverō		audītus erō	
audīveris		audītus eris	
audīverit		audītus erit	
audīverimus		audītī erimus	
audīveritis		audītī eritis	
audīverint		audītī erunt	

IMPERATIVE.

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Pres.	2. audī	audīte	audīre	audīminī
Fut.	2. audītō	audītōte	audītor	———
	3. audītō	audiunto	audītor	audiuntor

INFINITIVE.

	Active	Passive
Pres.	audīre	audīrī
Perf.	audīvisse	audītus esse
Fut.	audītūrus esse	audītum īrī (audītus fore)

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. audiēns	*Perf.* audītus
Fut. audītūrus	*Ger.* audiendus

GERUND: audiendī, -dō, -dum, -dō SUPINE: audītum, audītū

133. There are — besides a few deponents and some regular derivatives in **-ūriō**, as **ēsuriō**, *be hungry* (cf. § 167. *e*) — about 60 verbs of this conjugation, a large proportion of them being *descriptive* verbs.

Parallel Forms.

134. Many verbs have more than one set of forms, of which only one is generally found in classic use: as, —

> **lavō, lavāre** or **lavĕre**, *wash*.

DEPONENT VERBS.

135. Deponent Verbs have the form of the Passive Voice, with an active or reflexive signification: as, —

> 1st conj. **mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus**, *admire*.
> 2d conj. **vereor, verērī, veritus**, *fear*.
> 3d conj. **sequor, sequī, secūtus**, *follow*.
> 4th conj. **partior, partīrī, partītus**, *share*.

INDICATIVE.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
Pres.	**mīror**	**vereor**	**sequor**	**partior**
	mīrāris (-re)	**verēris (-re)**	**sequeris (-re)**	**partīris (-re)**
	mīrātur	**verētur**	**sequitur**	**partītur**
	mīrāmur	**verēmur**	**sequimur**	**partīmur**
	mīrāminī	**verēminī**	**sequiminī**	**partīminī**
	mīrantur	**verentur**	**secuntur**	**partiuntur**
Impf.	**mīrābar**	**verēbar**	**sequēbar**	**partiēbar**
Fut.	**mīrābor**	**verēbor**	**sequar**	**partiar**
Perf.	**mīrātus sum**	**veritus sum**	**secūtus sum**	**partītus sum**
Plup.	**mīrātus eram**	**veritus eram**	**secūtus eram**	**partītus eram**
F. P.	**mīrātus erō**	**veritus erō**	**secūtus erō**	**partītus erō**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	**mīrer**	**verear**	**sequar**	**partiar**
Impf.	**mīrārer**	**verērer**	**sequerer**	**partīrer**
Perf.	**mīrātus sim**	**veritus sim**	**secūtus sim**	**partītus sim**
Plup.	**mīrātus essem**	**veritus essem**	**secūtus essem**	**partītus essem**

IMPERATIVE.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
mīrāre, -ātor, etc.	**verēre, -ētor**	**sequere, -itor**	**partīre, -ītor**

INFINITIVE.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
Pres.	**mīrārī**	**verērī**	**sequī**	**partīrī**
Perf.	**mīrātus esse**	**veritus esse**	**secūtus esse**	**partītus esse**
Fut.	**mīrātūrus esse**	**veritūrus esse**	**secūtūrus esse**	**partītūrus esse**

PARTICIPLES.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
Pres.	**mīrāns**	**verēns**	**sequēns**	**partiēns**
Fut.	**mīrātūrus**	**veritūrus**	**secūtūrus**	**partītūrus**
Perf.	**mīrātus**	**veritus**	**secūtus**	**partītus**
Ger.	**mīrandus**	**verendus**	**sequendus**	**partiendus**

GERUND.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
mīrandī, -ō, etc.	**verendī**, etc.	**sequendī**, etc.	**partiendī**, etc.

SUPINE.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
mīrātum, -tū	**veritum, -tū**	**secūtum, -tū**	**partītum, -tū**

a. Deponents have the participles of both voices : as, —

sequēns, *following*. **secūtūrus**, *about to follow.*
secūtus, *having followed.* **sequendus**, *to-be-followed.*

b. The perfect participle generally has an active sense, but in verbs otherwise deponent it is often passive : as, **mercātus**, *bought ;* **adeptus**, *gained* (or *having gained*).

c. The future infinitive is always in the active form : thus, **sequor** has **secūtūrus esse** (not **secūtum īrī**).

d. The gerundive, being passive in meaning, is found only in transitive verbs, or neuter verbs used impersonally : as, —

hōc cōnfitendum est, *this must be acknowledged.*
moriendum est omnibus, *all must die.*

e. Most deponents are neuter or reflexive in meaning.

f. Some deponents are occasionally used in a passive sense : as, **crīminor**, *I accuse*, or *I am accused.*

g. About twenty verbs are, with an active meaning, found in both active and passive forms : as, **mereō** or **mereor**, *I deserve.*

h. More than half of all deponents are of the First Conjugation, and all of these are regular.

Semi-Deponents.

136. A few verbs having no perfect stem are regular in the present, but appear in the tenses of completed action as deponents. These are called *semi-deponents* or *neuter passives*. They are —

audeō, audēre, ausus, *dare.*	**gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus,** *rejoice.*
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus, *trust.*	**soleō, solēre, solitus,** *be wont.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

137. Several verbs add some of the personal endings of the present system directly to the root, or combine two verbs in their inflection. These are called Irregular Verbs. They are **sum, volō, ferō, edō, queō, eō, fīō,** and their compounds.

Sum has already been inflected in § 119.

a. **Sum** is compounded without any change of inflection with the prepositions **ab, ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, prō (prōd), sub, super.**

In the compound **prōsum, prō** retains its original **d** before **e.** Thus, —

	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Pres.	**prōsum,** *I help.*	**prōsim**
	prōdes	**prōsis**
	prōdest	**prōsit**
	prōsumus	**prōsīmus**
	prōdestis	**prōsītis**
	prōsunt	**prōsint**
Impf.	**prōderam,** *I was helping.*	**prōdessem**
Fut.	**prōderō,** *I shall help.*	
Perf.	**prōfuī,** *I helped.*	**prōfuerim**
Plup.	**prōfueram,** *I had helped.*	**prōfuissem**
F. P.	**prōfuerō,** *I shall have helped.*	

IMPER.	**prōdes, prōdestō,** etc.		
INFIN. *Pres.*	**prōdesse**	*Perf.* **prōfuisse**	*Fut.* **prōfutūrus esse**
PART.	**prōfutūrus,** *about to help.*		

b. **Sum** is also compounded with the adjective **potis**, or **pote**, *able*, making the verb **possum**. This is inflected as follows: —

		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	Pres.	**possum**, *I can.*	**possim**
		potes, *you can.*	**possis**
		potest, *he can.*	**possit**
		possumus, *we can.*	**possīmus**
		potestis, *you can.*	**possītis**
		possunt, *they can.*	**possint**
	Impf.	**poteram**, *I could.*	**possem**
	Fut.	**poterō**, *I shall be able.*	
	Perf.	**potuī**, *I could.*	**potuerim**
	Plup.	**potueram**	**potuissem**
	F. P.	**potuerō**, *I shall have been able.*	
INFIN.	*Pres.*	**posse**	*Perf.* **potuisse**
PART.		**potēns** (adj.), *powerful.*	

138. **Volō** and its compounds are inflected as follows: —

volō, velle, voluī, *wish.*

nōlō (for **nē volō**), **nōlle, nōluī**, *be unwilling.*

mālō (for **magis** or **mage volō**), **mālle, māluī**, *wish rather*, *prefer.*

Present.

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
volō	**velim**	**nōlō**	**nōlim**	**mālō**	**mālim**
vīs	**velīs**	**nōnvīs**	**nōlīs**	**māvīs**	**mālīs**
volt (vult)	**velit**	**nōnvolt**	**nōlit**	**māvolt**	**mālit**
volumus	**velīmus**	**nōlumus**	**nōlīmus**	**mālumus**	**mālīmus**
voltis(vul-)	**velītis**	**nōnvultis**	**nōlītis**	**māvultis**	**mālītis**
volunt	**velint**	**nōlunt**	**nōlint**	**mālunt**	**mālint**

Imperfect.

volēbam	**vellem**	**nōlēbam**	**nōllem**	**mālēbam**	**māllem**

Future.

volam, volēs, etc. **nōlam, nōlēs**, etc. **mālam, mālēs**, etc.

Perfect.

voluī	**voluerim**	**nōluī**	**nōluerim**	**māluī**	**māluerim**

Pluperfect.

volueram	**voluissem**	**nōlueram**	**nōluissem**	**mālueram**	**māluissem**

Future Perfect.

voluerō	**nōluerō**	**māluerō**

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	**nōlī**	**nōlīte**, *do not.*
Fut.	**nōlītō**	**nōlītōte**, *thou shalt not, ye shall not.*
	nōlītō	

INFINITIVE.

velle	**voluisse**	**nōlle**	**nōluisse**	**mālle**	**māluisse**

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. **volēns**, *willing.* **nōlens**, *unwilling.*

GERUND: **volendī** (late)

139. **Ferō, ferre, tŭlī, lātum,** *bear.*

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Pres.	**ferō**	**feram**	**feror**	**ferar**
	fers	**ferās**	**ferris**	**ferāris** (-re)
	fert	**ferat**	**fertur**	**ferātur**
	ferimus	**ferāmus**	**ferimur**	**ferāmur**
	fertis	**ferātis**	**feriminī**	**ferāminī**
	ferunt	**ferant**	**feruntur**	**ferantur**
Impf.	**ferēbam**	**ferrem**	**ferēbar**	**ferrer**
Fut.	**feram**		**ferar**	
Perf.	**tŭlī**	**tulerim**	**lātus sum**	**lātus sim**
Plup.	**tuleram**	**tulissem**	**lātus eram**	**lātus essem**
F. P.	**tulerō**		**lātus erō**	

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	**fer**	**ferte**	**ferre**	**feriminī**
Fut.	**fertō**	**fertōte**	**fertor**	———
	fertō	**feruntō**	**fertor**	**feruntor**

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	**ferre**	**ferrī**
Perf.	**tulisse**	**lātus esse**
Fut.	**lātūrus esse**	**lātum īrī** (**lātus fore**)

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	**ferēns**	*Perf.*	**lātus**
Fut.	**lātūrus**	*Ger.*	**ferendus**

GERUND: **ferendī, -dō, -dum, -dō** SUPINE: **lātum, -tū**

140. **Edō, edere, ēdī, ēsum,** *eat,* is regular of the third conjugation, but has also some forms directly from the root (ED) without the characteristic vowel. These are in full-faced type.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
	Present.		
edō	edam (**edim**)	edor	edar
edis (**ēs**)	edās (**edīs**)	ederis (-re)	edāris (**-re**)
edit (**ēst**)	edat (**edit**)	editur (**ēstur**)	edātur
edimus	edāmus (**edīmus**)	edimur	edāmur
editis (**ēstis**)	edātis (**edītis**)	ediminī	edāminī
edunt	edant (**edint**)	eduntur	edantur
	Imperfect.		
edēbam	ederem (**ēssem**)	edēbar	ederer
edēbās	ederēs (**ēssēs**)	edēbāris (-re)	ederēris (-re)
edēbat	ederet (**ēsset**)	edēbātur	ederētur (**ēssētur**)
	Future.		
edam		edar	
edēs		edēris	
edet, *etc.*		edētur, *etc.*	
	Perfect.		
ēdī	ēderim	ēsus sum	ēsus sim
	Pluperfect.		
ēderam	ēdissem	ēsus eram	ēsus essem
	Future Perfect.		
ēderō		ēsus erō	
	IMPERATIVE.		
ede (**ēs**)	edite (**ēste**)	edere	ediminī
editō (**ēstō**)	editōte (**ēstōte**)	editor	———
editō (**ēstō**)	eduntō	editor	eduntor
	INFINITIVE.		
edere (**ēsse**)		edī	
ēdisse		ēsus esse	
ēsūrus esse		ēsum īrī	
	PARTICIPLES.		
Pres. edēns		*Perf.* ēsus	
Fut. ēsūrus		*Ger.* edendus	

GERUND: edendī, -dō, -dum, -dō   SUPINE: ēsum, -sū

141. **Eō, īre, īvī, itum,** *go.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Pres. S.	**eō, īs, it**	**eam, eās, eat**
P.	**īmus, ītis, eunt**	**eāmus, eātis, eant**
Imperf.	**ībam, ībās, ībat**	**īrem, īrēs, īret**
	ībāmus, ībātis, ībant	**īrēmus, īrētis, īrent**
Future.	**ībō, ībis, ībit**	
	ībimus, ībitis, ībunt	
Perfect.	**īvī (iī)**	**īverim (ierim)**
Pluperf.	**īveram (ieram)**	**īvissem (īssem)**
Fut. Perf.	**īverō (ierō)**	

IMPERATIVE.

ī, īte, ītō, ītō, ītōte, euntō

INFINITIVE.

Pres. **īre** *Perf.* **īvisse(īsse)** *Fut.* **itūrus esse**

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. **iēns, euntis** *Fut.* **itūrus** *Ger.* **eundum**

GERUND: **eundī, -dō, -dum, -dō** SUPINE: **itum, itū**

a. The compounds **adeō,** *approach,* **ineō,** *enter,* and some others, are transitive. They are inflected as follows in the passive: —

INDICATIVE.				SUBJUNCTIVE.		
Pres.	**adeor**	*Impf.*	**adībar**	*Pres.*	**adear**	
	adīris	*Fut.*	**adībor**	*Impf.*	**adīrer**	
	adītur	*Perf.*	**aditus sum**	*Perf.*	**aditus sim**	
	adīmur	*Plup.*	**aditus eram**	*Plup.*	**aditus essem**	
	adīminī	*F. P.*	**aditus erō**	INFIN.	**adīrī,**	**aditus esse**
	adeuntur			PART.	**aditus**	**adeundus**

Thus inflected, the forms of **eō** are used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive: as, **itum est** (§ 146. *d*). The infinitive **īrī** is used with the supine in **-um** to make the future infinitive passive (§ 147. *c.* 1). The verb **vēneō,** *be sold* (*i.e.* **vēnum eō,** *go to sale*), has also several forms in the passive.

b. In the perfect system of **eō** and its compounds the forms with **v** are extremely rare.

c. The compound **ambiō,** inflected regularly like a verb of the fourth conjugation, has also **ambībat** in the imperfect indicative.

d. **Prō** with **eō** retains its original **d**: as, **prōdeō, prōdīs, prōdit.**

142. Faciō, facĕre, fēcī, factum, *make*, is regular. But it has imperative **fac** in the active, and besides the regular forms the future perfect **faxō**, perfect subjunctive **faxim**. The passive of **faciō** is —

fīō, fiĕrī, factus sum, *be made*, or *become*.

The tenses of the first stem of **fīō** are regular of the fourth conjugation, but the subjunctive imperfect is **fierem**, and the infinitive **fierī**.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Pres. S.	**fīō, fīs, fit**	**fiam, fīās, fiat**
P.	**fīmus, fītis, fīunt**	**fīāmus, fīātis, fiant**
Imperf.	**fīēbam, fīēbās,** etc.	**fierem, fierēs,** etc.
Future.	**fiam, fīēs,** etc.	
Perfect.	**factus sum**	**factus sim**
Pluperf.	**factus eram**	**factus essem**
Fut. Perf.	**factus erō**	

Imper. **fī, fīte, fītō, fītōte, fīuntō**

Infin. *Pres.* **fierī** *Perf.* **factus esse** *Fut.* **factum īrī**

Part. *Perf.* **factus** *Ger.* **faciendus**

a. Most compounds of **faciō** with prepositions change **ă** to **ĭ** (present stem), or **ĕ** (supine stem), and are inflected regularly: as, —

cōnficiō, cōnficĕre, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum, *finish*.
cōnficior, cōnficī, cōnfectus.

b. Other compounds retain **a**, and have **-fīō** in the passive: as, **benefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum**; pass. **benefīō, -fierī, -factus,** *benefit*. These retain the accent of the simple verb: as, **bene-fă′cis** (§ 19. *d*).

c. A few isolated forms of **-fīō** occur in other compounds: viz., —

cōnfit, *it happens*.	**dēfit,** *it lacks*.	**īnfit,** *he begins* (to speak).
cōnfiet	**dēfīunt**	**īnfīunt**
cōnfiat	**dēfiet**	**effierī,** *to be effected*.
cōnfieret	**dēfiat**	**interfierī,** *to perish*.
cōnfierī	**dēfierī**	**interfiat,** *let him perish*.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

143. Some verbs have lost their Present stem, and use only tenses of the Perfect, in which they are inflected regularly. These are —

a. **Coepi**, *I began;* Infin. **coepisse**; Fut. Part. **coeptūrus**; Perf. Pass. Part. **coeptus**.

The passive is used with the passive infinitive: as, **coeptus sum vocārī**, *I began to be called*, but **coepī vocāre**, *I began to call.* For the present **incipiō** is used.

b. **Ōdī**, *I hate;* perfect participle **ōsus**, *hating* or *hated* (**perōsus**, *utterly hateful*), future participle **ōsūrus**, *likely to hate.*

c. **Meminī**, *I remember;* with the Imperative **mementō**, **mementōte**; Part. **meminēns**.

NOTE. — **Ōdī** and **meminī** have a perfect form with a present meaning, and are called *preteritive verbs.* **Nōvī** and **cōnsuēvī** (usually referred to **nōscō** and **cōnsuēscō**) are often used in the sense of *I know* (have learned), and *I am accustomed* (have become accustomed), as preteritive verbs. Many other verbs are occasionally used in the same way (see § 279. Remark).

144. Many verbs are found only in the present system. Such are **maereō**, **-ēre**, *be sorrowful* (cf. **maestus**, *sad*); **feriō**, **-īre**, *strike.*

In many the simple verb is incomplete, but the missing parts occur in its compounds: as, **vādō, vādere, invāsī, invāsum**.

Some verbs occur very commonly, but only in a few forms: as, —

a. **Āiō**, *I say:* —

INDIC.	*Pres.*	**āiō, ais, ait**; —— —— **āiunt**
	Impf.	**āiēbam** (**aībam**), **āiēbās**, etc.
SUBJ.	*Pres.*	**āiās, āiat, āiant**
IMPER.		**ai**
PART.		**āiēns**

b. **Inquam**, *I say* (used only, except in poetry, in direct quotations, like the English *quoth*, which is possibly from the same root): —

INDIC.	*Pres.*	**inquam, inquis, inquit**
		inquimus, inquitis (late), **inquiunt**
	Impf.	**inquiēbat**
	Fut.	**inquiēs, -et**
	Perf.	**inquisti, inquit**
IMPER.		**inque, inquitō**

c. The deponent **fārī**, *to speak*, forms the perfect tenses regularly: as, **fātus sum, eram**, etc. It has also —

Indic.	*Pres.*	**fātur, fantur**
	Fut.	**fābor, fābitur**
Imper.		**fāre**
Infin.		**fārī**
Part.	*Pres.*	(dat.) **fantī**
	Perf.	**fātus**, *having spoken.*
	Ger.	**fandus**, *to be spoken of.*
Ger.		**fandī, -dō**
Sup.		**fātū**

Several forms compounded with the prepositions **ex, prae, prō, inter,** occur: as, **praefātur, affārī, prōfātus, interfātur**, etc. The compound **īnfāns** is regularly used as a noun (*child*). **Īnfandus, nefandus**, are used as adjectives, *unspeakable*, *abominable*.

d. **Quaesō**, *I ask*, *beg* (original form of **quaerō**), has —

Indic.	*Pres.*	**quaesō, quaesŭmus**
Infin.		**quaesere**
Part.		**quaesēns**

e. **Ovāre**, *to triumph*, has the following: —

Indic.	*Pres.*	**ovat**
Subj.	*Pres.*	**ovet**
	Impf.	**ovāret**
Part.		**ovāns, ovātūrus, ovātus**
Ger.		**ovandī**

f. A few verbs are found chiefly in the Imperative: as, —

Pres. sing. **salvē**, plur. **salvēte**, *hail!* (from **salvus**, *safe and sound*). An infin. **salvēre** also occurs.

Pres. sing. **avē** (or **havē**), plur. **avēte**, *Fut.* **avētō**, *hail* or *farewell.*

Pres. sing. **cedo**, plur. **cedite** (**cette**), *give*, *tell.*

Pres. sing. **apage**! *begone!* (properly a Greek word).

g. **Queō**, *I can*, **nequeō**, *I cannot*, are conjugated like **eō**. They are rarely used except in the present.

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
		Present.	
queō	**queam**	**nequeō (nōn queō)**	**nequeam**
quis	**queās**	**nōnquis**	**nequeās**
quit	**queat**	**nequit**	**nequeat**
quīmus	**queāmus**	**nequīmus**	**nequeāmus**
quītis	**queātis**	**nequītis**	**nequeātis**
queunt	**queant**	**nequeunt**	**nequeant**
		Imperfect.	
quībam	**quīrem**	**nequībam**	**nequīrem**
quībat	**quīret**	**nequībat**	**nequīret**
quībant	**quīrent**	**nequībant**	**nequīrent**
		Future.	
quībō		——	
quībunt		**nequībunt**	
		Perfect.	
quīvī		**nequīvī**	
——	——	**nequīvistī**	
quīvit	**quīverit**	**nequīvit**	
quīvērunt		**nequīvērunt**	
		Pluperfect.	
——	**quissent**	——	**nequīsset**
		INFINITIVE.	
quīre	**quīvisse (quīsse)**	**nequīre**	**nequīvisse**
		PARTICIPLES.	
quiēns, queuntis		**nequiēns**	

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

145. Many verbs, from their meaning, appear only in the *third person singular*, the *infinitive*, and the *gerund.* These are called Impersonal Verbs, as having no personal subject. Their synopsis may be given as follows :—

CONJ. I.	II.	III.	IV.	PASS. CONJ. I.
it is plain.	*it is allowed.*	*it chances.*	*it results.*	*it is fought.*
cōnstat	**licet**	**accidit**	**ēvenit**	**pūgnātur**
cōnstābat	**licēbat**	**accidēbat**	**ēveniēbat**	**pūgnābātur**
cōnstābit	**licēbit**	**accidet**	**ēveniet**	**pūgnābitur**
cōnstitit	**licuit, -itum est**	**accidit**	**ēvēnit**	**pūgnātum est**
cōnstiterat	**licuerat**	**acciderat**	**ēvēnerat**	**pūgnātum erat**
cōnstiterit	**licuerit**	**acciderit**	**ēvēnerit**	**pūgnātum erit**
cōnstet	**liceat**	**accidat**	**ēveniat**	**pūgnētur**
cōnstāret	**licēret**	**accideret**	**ēvenīret**	**pūgnārētur**
cōnstiterit	**licuerit**	**acciderit**	**ēvēnerit**	**pūgnātum sit**
cōnstitisset	**licuisset**	**accidisset**	**ēvēnisset**	**pūgnātum esset**
cōnstāre	**licēre**	**accidere**	**ēvenīre**	**pūgnārī**
cōnstitisse	**licuisse**	**accidisse**	**ēvēnisse**	**pūgnātum esse**
-stātūrum esse	**-itūrum esse**	——	**-tūrum esse**	**pūgnātum īrī**

146. Impersonal Verbs may be classified as follows: —

a. Verbs expressing the *operations of nature* and *the time of day*: as, **pluit**, *it rains*; **ningit**, *it snows*; **grandinat**, *it hails*; **fulgurat**, *it lightens*; **vesperāscit** (inceptive, § 167. *a*), *it grows late*; **lūcīscit hōc iam**, *it is getting light now*.

NOTE. — In these no subject is distinctly thought of. Sometimes, however, the verb is used personally with the name of a divinity as the subject: as, **Iūppiter tonat**, *Jupiter thunders*. In poetry other subjects are occasionally used: as, **fundae saxa pluunt**, *the slings rain stones*.

b. Verbs of *feeling*, where the person who is the proper subject becomes the object, as being himself affected by the feeling expressed in the verb (§ 221. *b*). Such are **miseret**, *it grieves*; **paenitet** (**poenitet**), *it repents*; **piget**, *it disgusts*; **pudet**, *it shames*; **taedet**, *it wearies*: as, **miseret mē**, *I pity* (it distresses me).

NOTE. — Such verbs often have also a passive form: as, **misereor**, *I pity* (am moved to pity); and occasionally other parts: as, **paenitūrus** (as from † **paeniō**), **paenitendus, pudendus, pertaesum est, pigitum est**.

c. Verbs which have a *phrase* or *clause* as their subject (§§ 270. *a*, 330, 332. *a*): as, —

accidit, contingit, ēvenit, obtingit, obvenit, fit, *it happens.*

libet, *it pleases.*	**dēlectat, iuvat** *it delights.*
licet, *it is permitted.*	**necesse est,** } *it is needful.*
certum est, *it is resolved.*	**oportet,** } *it is needful.*
cōnstat, *it is clear.*	**praestat,** *it is better.*
decet, *it is becoming.*	**interest, rēfert,** *it concerns.*

NOTE. — Many of these verbs may be used personally. **Libet** and **licet** have also the passive forms **libitum (licitum) est,** etc. The participles **libēns** and **licēns** are used as adjectives.

d. The *passive of intransitive verbs* is very often used impersonally: as, **pūgnātur,** *there is fighting* (it is fought); **ītur,** *some one goes* (it is gone); **parcitur mihi,** *I am spared* (it is spared to me, see § 230).

Periphrastic Forms.

147. The following periphrastic forms are found in the inflection of the verb : —

a. The so-called "Periphrastic Conjugations" (see § 129).

b. The tenses of completed action in the passive formed by the tenses of **esse** with the perfect participle : as, **amātus est.**

c. The future infinitive passive, formed as follows: —

1. By the infinitive passive of **eō,** *go,* used impersonally with the supine in **-um** : **amātum īrī.**

2. By **fore** (or **futūrum esse**), with the perfect participle (as **amātus fore**).

3. By **fore** with **ut** and the subjunctive (cf. § 288. *f*).

NOTE.

Origin and History of Verb-Forms.

The forms that make up the conjugation of a verb are composed of formations from a root, originally separate, but gradually grouped together, and afterwards supplemented by new formations made on old lines to supply deficiencies. Some of these forms were inherited, already made, by the Latin language ; others were developed in the course of the history of the language itself.

7. PARTICLES.

Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are called PARTICLES. In their origin they are (1) *case-forms*, actual or extinct, (2) *compounds* and *phrases*, or (3) meaningless *exclamations*.

I. ADVERBS.

1. Derivation.

148. Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives as follows: —

a. From adjectives of the *first and second declensions*, by changing the characteristic vowel of the stem to **-ē**: as, **cārē**, *dearly*, from **cārus**, *dear* (stem **cāro-**).

b. From adjectives of the *third declension* by adding **-ter** to the stem. Stems in **nt-** (nom. **-ns**) lose the **-t**. All others are treated as **i**-stems. Thus, —

> **fortiter**, *bravely*, from **fortis** (stem **forti-**), *brave*.
> **ācriter**, *eagerly*, from **ācer** (stem **ācri-**), *eager*.
> **vigilanter**, *watchfully*, from **vigilāns** (stem **vigilant-**).
> **prūdenter**, *prudently*, from **prūdēns** (stem **prūdent-**).
> **aliter**, *otherwise*, from **alius** (old stem **ali-**).

c. Some adjectives of the first and second declensions have adverbs of both forms (**-ē** and **-ter**). Thus, **dūrus**, *hard*, **dūrē** and **dūriter**.

d. The *neuter accusative* of adjectives and pronouns is often used as an adverb: as, **multum**, *much*; **facilĕ**, *easily*; **quid**, *why*.

So, regularly in the comparative degree: as, **ācrius**, *more keenly* (positive **ācriter**); **facilius**, *more easily* (positive **facilĕ**).

2. Classification.

149. Adverbs are classified as follows: —

a. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

hīc, *here*. **hūc**, *hither*. **hinc**, *hence*. **hāc**, *by this way*.

b. ADVERBS OF TIME.

quandō? *when?* (interrog.); **cum** (**quom**), *when* (relat.).

c. Adverbs of Degree or Cause.

quam, *how*, *as;* **tam**, *so;* **quamvīs**, *however much*, *although;* **quōmodō**, *how*.

d. Interrogative Particles.

an, **-ne**, **anne**, **utrum**, **utrumne**, **num**, *whether*.

e. Negative Particles.

nōn, *not* (in simple denial); **haud (hau, haut)**, **minimē**, *not* (in contradiction); **nē**, *not* (in prohibition); **nēve**, **neu**, *nor;* **nēdum**, *much less*.

f. Adverbs of Manner (see § 148).

g. Numeral Adverbs (see § 96).

3. Peculiar Uses of Adverbs.

150. Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative: as, —

nēmō nōn audiet, *every one will hear* (nobody will not hear).

a. Many compounds of which **nōn** is the first part express an *indefinite* affirmative: as, —

nōnnūllus, *some;* nōnnūllī (= aliquī), *some few*.
nōnnihil (= aliquid), *something*.
nōnnēmō (= aliquot), *sundry persons*.
nōnnumquam (= aliquotiēns), *sometimes*.
necnōn, *also* (nor not).

b. Two negatives of which the second is **nōn** (belonging to the predicate) express a *universal* affirmative: as, —

nēmō nōn, nūllus nōn, *nobody* [does] *not*, *i.e. everybody* [does] (cf. nōnnēmō, above, *not nobody*, *i.e. somebody*).
nihil nōn, *everything*.
numquam nōn, *never not*, *i e. always* (cf. nōnnumquam, above, *not never*, *i.e. sometimes*).

151. The following adverbs require special notice: —

a. **Etiam (et iam)**, *also*, *even*, is stronger than **quoque**, *also*, and usually precedes the emphatic word, while **quoque** follows it: as, —

nōn verbīs sōlum sed **etiam** vī (Verr. II. ii, 64), *not only by words, but also by force*.
hōc **quoque** maleficium (Rosc. Am. 118), *this crime too*.

b. **Nunc** (for †**num-ce**) means definitely *now*, *in the immediate present*, and is not used as in English of past time. **Iam** means *now*, *already*, *at length*, *presently*, and includes a reference to previous time through which the state of things described has been or will be reached. It may be used of *any* time. With negatives it means (*no*) *longer*.

Tum, *then*, is correlative to **cum**, *when*, and may be used of any time. **Tunc**, *then*, *at that time*, is a strengthened form of **tum** †**tum-ce**, cf. **nunc**). Thus, —

> **ut iam** anteā dīxī, *as I have already said before.*
>
> **sī iam** satis aetātis atque rōboris habēret (Rosc. Am. 149), *if he had attained a suitable age and strength* (lit. *if he now had*, as he will by and by).
>
> **nōn** est **iam** lēnitātī locus, *there is no longer room for mercy.*
>
> quod **iam** erat īnstitūtum, *which had come to be a practice* (had now been established).
>
> **nunc** quidem dēlēta est, **tunc** flōrēbat (Læl. 13), *now* ('tis true) *she* [Greece] *is ruined, then she was in her glory.*
>
> **tum cum** rēgnābat, *at the time when he reigned.*

c. **Certō** means *certainly*; **certē** (usually), *at any rate*: as, **certō sciō**, *I know for a certainty*; **ego certē**, *I at any rate.*

d. **Prīmum** means *first*, "*firstly*" (*first in order* or *for the first time*), and implies a series of events or acts. **Prīmō** means *at first*, as opposed to *afterwards*, giving prominence merely to the difference of time: as, —

> hōc **prīmum** sentiō, *this I hold in the first place.*
>
> aedēs **prīmō** ruere rēbāmur, *at first we thought the house was falling.*

In enumerations, **prīmum** (or **prīmō**) is often followed by **deinde**, *secondly*, *in the next place*, or by **tum**, *then*, or by both in succession. **Deinde** may be several times repeated (*secondly*, *thirdly*, etc.). The series is often closed by **dēnique** or **postrēmō**, *lastly*, *finally*. Thus, —

> **prīmum** dē genere bellī, **deinde** dē māgnitūdine, **tum** dē imperātōre dēligendō (Manil.), *first of the kind of war, next of its magnitude, then of the choice of a commander.*

e. **Quidem**, *to be sure*, gives emphasis, and often has a *concessive* meaning, especially when followed by **sed**, **autem**, etc.: as, —

> hōc **quidem** vidēre licet (Læl. 54), THIS *surely one may see.* [Emphatic.]
>
> (sēcūritās) speciē **quidem** blanda, **sed** reāpse multīs locīs repudianda (id. 47), (*tranquility*) *in appearance, 'tis true, attractive, but in reality to be rejected for many reasons.* [Concessive.]

Nē . . . **quidem** means *not even* or *not . . . either*. The emphatic word or words must stand between **nē** and **quidem**.

senex **nē** quod spēret **quidem** habet (C. M. 68), *an old man has* NOT *anything to hope for* EVEN.

sed **nē** Iugurtha **quidem** quiētus erat (Jug. 51), *but Jugurtha was not quiet* EITHER.

II. PREPOSITIONS.

152. Prepositions are regularly used either with the Accusative or with the Ablative.

a. The following are used with the Accusative: —

ad, *to*.
adversus, *against*.
adversum, *towards*.
ante, *before*.
apud, *at, near*.
circā, *around*.
circum, *around*.
circiter, *about*.
cis, **citrā**, *this side*.
contrā, *against*.
ergā, *towards*.
extrā, *outside*.
in, *into*.
īnfrā, *below*.
inter, *among*.
intrā, *inside*.
iuxtā, *near*.
ob, *on account of*.
penes, *in the power*.
per, *through*.
pōne, *behind*.
post, *after*.
praeter, *beyond*.
prope, *near*.
propter, *on account of*.
secundum, *next to*.
sub, *under*.
suprā, *above*.
trāns, *across*.
ūltrā, *on the further side*.
versus, *towards*.

b. The following are used with the Ablative: —

ā, **ăb**, **abs**, *away from, by*.
absque, *without, but for*.
cōram, *in presence of*.
cum, *with*.
dē, *from*.
ē, **ex**, *out of*.
in, *in*.
prae, *in comparison with*.
prō, *in front of, for*.
sine, *without*.
sub, *under*.
tenus, *up to, as far as*.

c. The following may be used with either the Accusative or the Ablative, but with a difference in meaning: —

in, *into, in*.
subter, *beneath*.
sub, *under*.
super, *above*.

In and **sub**, when followed by the accusative, indicate *motion to*, when by the ablative, *rest in*, a place: as, —

vēnit in aedēs, *he came into the house*; erat in aedibus, *he was in the house*.

sub īlice cōnsēderat, *he had seated himself under an ilex*.

sub lēgēs mīttere orbem, *to subject the world to laws* (to send the world under laws).

153. The uses of the Prepositions are various, and are explained in the dictionaries.

III. CONJUNCTIONS.

154. Conjunctions connect words, phrases, or sentences. They are of two classes : —

a. Co-ordinate, connecting co-ordinate or similar constructions (see § 180. *a*). These are —

1. Copulative or disjunctive, implying a connection or opposition of thought as well as of words : as, **et**, *and.*
2. Adversative, implying a connection of words, but a contrast in thought : as, **sed**, *but.*
3. Causal, introducing a cause or reason : as, **nam**, *for.*
4. Illative, denoting an inference : as, **igitur**, *therefore.*

b. Subordinate, connecting a subordinate or dependent clause with that on which it depends (see § 180. *b*). These are —

1. Conditional, denoting a condition or hypothesis : as, **sī**, *if;* **nisi**, *unless.*
2. Comparative, implying comparison as well as condition : as, **āc sī**, *as if.*
3. Concessive, denoting a concession or admission : as, **quamquam**, *although* (lit. *however* much it may be true that, etc.).
4. Temporal : as, **postquam**, *after.*
5. Consecutive, expressing result : as, **ut**, *so that.*
6. Final, expressing purpose : as, **ut**, *in order that;* **nē**, *that not.*

155. Conjunctions are more numerous and more accurately distinguished in Latin than in English. For classified lists, see larger grammar.

156. The following are the principal conjunctions whose meaning requires to be noticed :—

a. **Et**, *and*, simply *connects* words or clauses; **-que** *combines* more closely into one connected whole. **-que** is always enclitic to the word connected or to the first or second of two or more words connected. Thus, —

cum coniugibus et līberīs, *with* [their] *wives and children.*

ferrō īgnīque, *with fire and sword.* [Not as separate things, but as the combined means of devastation.]

aquā et īgnī interdictus, *forbidden the use of water and fire.* [In a legal formula, where they are considered separately.]

Atque (āc) adds with some emphasis or with some implied reflection on the word added. Hence it is often equivalent to ***and so, and yet, and besides.*** But these distinctions depend very much upon the feeling of the speaker, and are often untranslatable: as,—

omnia honesta atque inhonesta, *everything honorable and dishonorable* (too, without the slightest distinction).

ūsus atque disciplīna, *practice and theory beside* (the more important or less expected).

atque ego crēdō, *and yet I believe* (for my part).

In the second of two connected ideas, ***and not*** is expressed by **neque (nec)**: as,—

neque vērō hōc sōlum dīxit, *and he not only said this.*

Atque (āc), in the sense of ***as, than***, is also used after words of comparison and likeness: as,—

nōn secus (aliter) āc sī, *not otherwise than if.*

prō eō āc dēbuī, *as was my duty* (in accordance as I ought).

b. **Sed** and the more emphatic **vērum** or **vērō**, ***but***, introduce something in opposition to what precedes, especially after negatives (***not this . . . but*** something else). **At** introduces with emphasis a new point in an argument, but is also used like the others.

At enim almost always introduces a supposed objection which is presently to be overthrown. **At** is more rarely used alone in this sense. **Autem**, ***however, now***, is the weakest of the adversatives, and often has hardly any adversative force perceptible. **Atquī**, ***however, now***, sometimes introduces an objection and sometimes a fresh step in the reasoning. **Quod sī**, ***but if, and if, now if***, is used to continue an argument. **Ast** is old or poetic and is equivalent to **at**.

NOTE.—A concessive is often followed by an adversative either in a coordinate or a subordinate clause: as, **etiamsī quod scrībās nōn habēbis, scrībitō tamen** (Cic.), *though you have nothing to write, still write all the same.*

c. **Aut**, ***or***, excludes one alternative; **vel** and **-ve** give a choice between two. But this distinction is sometimes neglected. Thus,—

sed quis ego sum **aut** quae est in mē facultās, ***but who am I, or what special capacity have I?*** [Here **vel** could not be used, because in fact a negative is implied and both alternatives are excluded.]

quam tenuī **aut** nūllā potius valētūdine, ***what feeble health*** [he had], ***or rather none at all.*** [Here **vel** might be used, but would refer only to the expression, not to the fact.]

vīta tālis fuit **vel** fortūnā **vel** glōriā, ***his life was such either in respect to fortune or fame*** (whichever way you look at it).

sī propīnquōs habeant imbēcilliōrēs **vel** animō **vel** fortūnā, ***if they have relatives beneath them either in spirit or in fortune*** (in either respect, for example).

cum cōgnitī sunt et **aut** deōrum **aut** rēgum fīliī inventī, ***sons either of gods or of kings.*** [Here one case would exclude the other.]

Sīve (**seu**) is properly used in disjunctive conditions (*if either . . . or if*), but also with alternative words and clauses, especially with two names for the same thing: as,—

sīve arrīdēns **sīve** quod ita putāret (De Or. i. 91), ***either laughingly or because he really thought so.***

Vel is often used with no alternative force: as,—

vel minimus, ***the very least.***

d. **Nam** and **namque**, *for*, usually introduce a real reason, formally expressed, for a previous statement; **enim** (always postpositive), a less important explanatory circumstance put in by the way; **etenim** (*for, you see; for, you know*, and its negative **neque enim** introduce something self-evident or needing no proof.

(ea vīta) quae est sōla vīta nōminanda. **nam** dum sumus in hīs inclūsī compāgibus corporis mūnere quōdam necessitātis et gravī opere perfungimur. est **enim** animus caelestis, etc. (Cat. Maj. 77).

hārum trium sententiārum nūllī prōrsus assentior. nec **enim** illa prīma vēra est, *for of course that first one is n't true.*

e. **Ergō**, *therefore*, is used of things proved formally, but often has a weakened force. **Igitur**, *then, accordingly*, is weaker than **ergō** and is used in passing from one stage of an argument to another. **Itaque**, *therefore, accordingly, and so*, is used in proofs or inferences from the nature of things rather than in formal logical proof.

All of these are often used merely to resume a train of thought broken by a digression or parenthesis. **Idcircō**, *for this reason, on this account*, is regularly followed (or preceded) by a correlative: as,

quia, quod, si, ut, nē, and refers to the special point introduced by the correlative.

> nē aegrī quidem **quia** nōn omnēs convalēscunt, **idcircō** ars nūlla medicīnae est.
>
> malum mihi vidētur mors. est miserum **igitur, quoniam** malum. certē. **ergō** et eī quibus ēvēnit iam ut morerentur et eī quibus ēventūrum est miserī. mihi ita vidētur. nēmō **ergō** nōn miser. (Tusc. i. 9.)
>
> meministis **enim** cum illīus nefāriī gladiātōris vōcēs percrēbuissent quās, etc. — tum **igitur** (Mur. 50).

f. **Quia**, *because*, regularly introduces a fact; **quod**, either a fact or a statement. **Quoniam** (for **quom iam**), *inasmuch as*, *since*, *when now*, *now that*, has reference to motives, excuses, or justifications, and the like. **Quandō**, *since*, is mostly archaic or late.

> possunt **quia** posse videntur, *they can because they think they can.*
>
> locus est ā mē **quoniam** ita Mūrēna voluit retrāctandus (Mur. 54), *I must review the point, since Murena has so wished.*
>
> mē reprehendis **quod** idem dēfendam (as he had not) quod lēge pūnierim (Mur. 67), *you blame me because* [as you say] *I defend the same charge which I have punished by law.*

In the denial of a reason, **nōn quō** is used as well as **nōn quod**, **nōn quia**, and **nōn quin**, but not **nōn quoniam**. Thus, —

> **nōn quia** multīs dēbeō . . . sed **quia** saepe concurrunt aliquōrum bene dē mē meritōrum inter ipsōs contentiōnēs (Planc. 78), *not because I am indebted to many, but because*, etc.
>
> **nōn quin** parī virtūte et voluntāte aliī fuerint, **sed** tantam causam nōn habuērunt (Phil. vii. 6), *not that there were not others of equal courage and good-will, but they had not so much reason.*

g. **Cum (quom)**, *when*, is always a relative, and is often correlative with **tum**, (see *h.* 1, below); **quandō**, *when* (rarely *since*), is used as interrogative, relative, and indefinite: as, **quandō? hodiē**, *when? to-day;* **sī quandō**, *if ever.*

h. 1. Conjunctions, especially those of relative origin, frequently have a correlative in another clause, to which they correspond: as, —

> **ut** sēmentem fēceris, **ita** metēs, *as you sow, so shall you reap.*

2. Often the same conjunction is repeated in two co-ordinate clauses. Examples are —

> **et** . . . **et**, *both . . . and.*
>
> **modo** . . . **modo**, *now . . . now.*
>
> **nunc** . . . **nunc**, *now . . . now.*

i. The concessives (**etsī**, **quamvīs**, etc., *although*) may introduce either a fact or a mere supposition, and are often followed by the correlative **tamen**, *yet*, *nevertheless;* **quamquam** regularly introduces an admitted fact and not a mere supposition.

Quamquam (and rarely **etsī**, **tametsī**) in the sense of *though* (*and yet*, *but*, *however*) may also introduce an independent statement made to limit or correct the preceding: as, —

> ille volt diū vīvere, hīc diū vīxit, **quamquam**, ō dī bonī, quid est in hominis vītā diū? (Cat. M. 68), *the one wishes to live long, the other has lived long, though* (after all) *Good Heavens! what is there that is long in the life of man?*

k. **Autem**, **enim**, and **vērō** are postpositive, *i.e.* they always follow one or more words of their clause; so, generally, **igitur** and often **tamen**.

INTERJECTIONS.

ō, **ēn**, **ecce**, **ehem**, **papae**, **vāh** (of *astonishment*).
iō, **ēvae**, **ēvoe**, **euhoe** (of *joy*).
heu, **ēheu**, **vae**, *alas* (of *sorrow*).
heus, **eho**, **ehodum**, *ho* (of *calling*); **st**, *hist.*
ēia, **euge** (of *praise*).
prō (of *attestation*): as, **prō pudor**, *shame!*

FORMATION OF WORDS.

NOTE. — All formation of words is originally a process of composition. An element significant in itself is added to another significant element, and thus the meaning of the two is combined.

I. ROOTS AND STEMS.

157. Roots[1] are of two kinds: —

1. *Verbal*, expressing ideas of action or condition (sensible phenomena).

2. *Pronominal*, expressing ideas of position and direction.

[1] For the distinction between Roots and Stems, see §§ 21, 22.

Stems are divided into (1) Noun- (including Adjective-) stems, and (2) Verb-stems.

158. Words are formed by inflection :—

1. From roots inflected as stems, —

a. Without change: as, **duc-is** (**dux**), DUC; **nec-is** (**nex**); **is, id.** So in verbs: as, **est, fert, ēst.**

b. With change of the root-vowel: as, **lūc-is** (**lūx**), LUC; **pāc-is** (**pāx**). So in verbs: **ī-s** for †**eis**, from **eō, īre**; **fātur**, from **for, fārī.**

NOTE. — It is impossible to say whether the form of root in *a* or in *b* is the original one. But for convenience the above order is adopted.

c. With reduplication: as, **fur-fur, mar-mor, mur-mur.** So in verbs: as, **si-stō** (root STA).

2. From derived stems; see § 159.

II. SUFFIXES.

159. Stems are derived from roots or from other stems by means of *suffixes.* These are —

1. Primary: added to the root, or (later by analogy) to verb-stems.

2. Secondary: added to a noun- or adjective-stem.

Both primary and secondary suffixes are for the most part pronominal roots (§ 157. 2), but a few are of doubtful origin. Thus a word regularly consists of a verbal root and one or more pronominal roots and inflectional terminations.

1. Primary Suffixes.

160. The words in Latin formed immediately from the root by means of Primary suffixes are few.

a. Inherited words so formed were mostly further developed by the addition of other suffixes, as we might make an adjective *lone-ly-some-ish*, meaning nothing more than *lone*, *lonely*, or *lonesome.*

b. By such accumulation of suffixes, new compound suffixes were formed which crowded out even the old types of derivation: thus, —

A word like **mēns, mentis**, by the suffix **ōn-** (nom. **-ō**) gave **mentiō**, and this being divided into **men** + **tiō**, gave rise to a new type of abstract nouns in **-tiō** (phonetically **-siō**): as, **lēgātiō**, *embassy*.

A word like **audītor**, by the suffix **io-** (nom. **-ius**), gave rise to adjectives like **audītōrius**, of which the neuter is used to denote the place where the action of the verb is performed. Hence **-tōrium**, N., becomes a regular suffix (§ 164. *i.* 5).

So in English such a word as *mechanically* gives a suffix *-ally*, making *telegraphically*, though there is no such word as *telegraphical*.

c. Examples of primary suffixes are —

1. Vowel suffixes: as, —

a, found in nouns and adjectives of **a-** and **o**-stems: as, **sonus, ludus, vagus, scrība, toga** (root TEG).

2. Suffixes with a consonant: as, —

ta (in the form **to-**) in the regular perfect passive participle, as **tēctus, tēctum**; sometimes with an active sense, as in **pōtus, prānsus**; and found in a few words not recognized as participles, as **putus** (cf. **pūrus**), **altus** (**alō**).

va (commonly **uo-**) with an active or passive meaning, as in **ecus, arvum, cōnspicuus, exiguus, vacīvus** (**vacuus**).

2. Significant Endings.

161. Both primary and secondary suffixes, especially in the form of compound suffixes, were used in Latin with more or less consciousness of their meaning. They may therefore be called Significant Endings.

They form: 1. Nouns of Agency; 2. Names of Action; 3. Adjectives (active or passive).

III. DERIVATION OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

1. Nouns of Agency.

162. Nouns of Agency properly denote the *agent* or *doer* of an action. But they include many words in which the idea of agency has entirely faded out, and also many words used as adjectives. Their significant endings are —

a. **-tor** (**-sor**), M., **-trix**, F., added to roots or verb-stems to denote the *agent* or *doer* of an action.

canō, *sing* (CAN, supine †**cantum**); **cantor**, *singer*; **cantrix**, *songstress*.

tondeō, *shear* (TOND as root, sup. **tōnsum**); **tōnsor**, **tōnstrix**, *hair-cutter*.

By analogy **-tor** is sometimes added to noun-stems as if stems of lost verbs: as, **viātor**, *traveller*, from **via**, *way* (but cf. **inviō**).

b. **t-** (originally **ta-**, cf. § 160. *c*), C., added to verb-stems making nouns in **-es** (**-itis**, **-etis**, stem **-it-**, **-et-**) descriptive of a character: as, —

teges (verb-stem **tege-**, cf. **tegō**, *cover*), *a coverer*, *a mat*.

c. **-ō** (gen. **-ōnis**, stem **ōn-**), M., added to stems conceived as verb-stems (but perhaps originally noun-stems) to indicate a person employed in some specific art or trade: as, —

gerō (GES in **gerō**, **gerere**, *carry*, but compare **-ger** in **armiger**, *squire*), *a carrier*.

com-bibō (BIB as root in **bibō**, **bibere**, *drink*), *a pot-companion*.

2. Names of Actions.

163. Names of Actions are derived (1) really or apparently from roots and verb-stems (*primary*) or (2) from noun-stems (*secondary*).

NOTE. — These easily pass into pure Concrete nouns denoting the result, means, or instrument of the action. Compare *an apparition*, *a congregation*, *a rainfall*, *a large following*, *a drive of logs*.

1. Real or Apparent Primary Formations.

a. **-or** (st. **ōr-**, earlier **ōs-**), M., **-ēs** (gen. **-is**, st. **i-**, earlier **es-**), F., **-us** (st. **ĕs-**, or **os-**), N., added to roots make names of actions: as, —

timeō, *fear* (verb); **tim-or**, *fear* (noun).

sedeō, *sit*; **sēd-ēs**, *seat*.

decet, *it is becoming*; **dec-us**, *grace*, *beauty*.

NOTE. — Many nouns of this class are formed by analogy from imaginary roots: as, **facinus** (from a supposed root FACIN).

b. **-iō** (st. **iōn-**), **-tiō** (st. **tiōn-**), **-tūra** (st. **tūra-**), F., **-tus** (st. **tu-**), M., (phonetically **-siō**, **-sūra**, **-sus**), apparently added to roots or verb-stems, make *verbal abstracts*.

legō, *enroll;* **leg-iō** (*an enrolling, the thing enrolled*), *a legion.*
regō, *direct;* **reg-iō**, *a direction, a region.*
inserō (SA), *implant;* **insi-tiō**, *grafting.*
vocō, *call;* **vocā-tiō**, *a calling.*
mōlior, *toil;* **mōlī-tiō**, *a toiling.*
pingō (PIG), *paint;* **pic-tūra**, *the art of painting, a painting.*
sentiō, *feel;* **sēn-sus**, *feeling, perception, a feeling.*
fruor, *enjoy* (for †**fruguor**); **frūc-tus**, *enjoyment, fruit, a fruit.*

c. **-men**, **-mentum**, **-mōnium**, N., **-mōnia**, F., apparently added to roots or verb-stems denote ACTS, or MEANS and RESULTS of acts.

agō, root AG, *lead;* **āg-men**, *line of march, a company.*
regi- (stem seen in **regō**, *direct*); { **regi-men**, *rule.* / **regi-mentum**, *rule.* }
So **colu-men**, *pillar;* **mō-men**, *movement;* **nō-men**, *name.*
fruor, *enjoy;* **frū-mentum**, *grain.*
testor, *witness;* **testi-mōnium**, *testimony.*
queror, *complain;* **queri-mōnia**, *complaint.*
Also **flā-men** (M.), *a priest* (**flō**, *blow*, of the sacrificial fire).

REMARK. — **-mōnium** and **-mōnia** are also used as secondary, forming nouns from other nouns and from adjectives: as, **sancti-mōnia**, *sanctity* (**sanctus**, *holy*); **mātri-mōnium**, *marriage* (**māter**, *mother*).

d. **-bulum**, **-culum**, **-brum**, **-crum**, **-trum**, N., added to verb-stems or roots (rarely to noun-stems), denote MEANS, INSTRUMENT, or PLACE: as, —

pāscō, *feed;* **pā-bulum**, *fodder.*
stō, *stand;* **sta-bulum**, *stall* (*standing-place*).
tūs (gen. **tūris**), *incense;* **tūri-bulum**, *a censer.*
vehō, *carry;* **vehi-culum**, *wagon.*
piō, *purify;* **piā-culum**, *an expiation.*
flō, *blow;* **flā-bra** (pl.), *blasts.*
candēla, *a candle;* **candēlā-brum**, *a candlestick.*
sepeliō, *bury;* **sepul-crum**, *tomb* (*place for burying*).
claudō, *shut;* **claus-trum**, *a bar.*

A few Masculines and Feminines of the same formation occur as nouns and adjectives: as, —

for, *speak;* **fā-bula**, *tale.*
rīdeō, *laugh;* **rīdi-culus**, *laughable.*

faciō, *make;* **fa-ber**, *smith.*
lateō, *hide;* **late-bra**, *hiding-place.*
terō, *bore;* **tere-bra**, *auger.*
mulgeō, *milk;* **mūlc-tra**, *milk-pail.*
ūrō, *burn;* **Aus-ter**, *South wind.*

2. Secondary Formations.

e. **-ia**, **-tia** (**-iēs**, **-tiēs**), **-tās**, **-tūs**, **-tūdō**, F., are added to adjective stems and a few to nouns to make abstracts. So **-dō** and **-gō**, F., but associated with verbs, and apparently added to verb-stems. Thus, —

audāx, *bold;* **audāc-ia**, *boldness.* So, **fidūc-ia**, *confidence* († **fidūx**).
prūdēns, *wise;* **prūdent-ia**, *wisdom.*
superbus, *proud;* **superb-ia**, *pride.*
trīstis, *sad;* **trīsti-tia**, *sadness.*
pauper, *poor;* **pauper-iēs**, *poverty.*
sēgnis, *lazy;* **sēgni-tiēs**, *laziness.*
bonus, *good;* **boni-tās**, *goodness.*
cīvis, *citizen;* **cīvi-tās**, *citizenship.*
senex, *old;* **senec-tūs**, *age.*
sōlus, *alone;* **sōli-tūdō**, *solitude.*
dulcis, *sweet;* **dulcē-dō**, *sweetness* (probably from a lost stem **dulcē-**, cf. **dulcē-scō**).
cupiō, *I desire;* **cupī-dō** (as if from stem **cupī-**, cf. **cupī-vī**).
lumbus, *the loin;* **lumbā-gō**, *lumbago* (as if from † **lumbō**, **āre**).
rubus, *bramble* (red bush); **rūbī-gō**, *rust* (redness).
prūriō, *itch;* **prūrī-gō**, *itching.*

Stems ending in **o-** or **a-** lose these vowels before **-ia** (as **superb-ia**), and change them to **i** before **-tās**, **-tūs**, **-tia** (as **boni-tās**, above).

Consonant-stems often insert **-i** before **-tās**: as, **loquāx** (stem **loquāc-**), **loquāci-tās**; but **hones-tās**, **māies-tās** (as if from old adjectives in **-es**), **ūber-tās**, **volup-tās**. **o** after **i** is changed to **e**: as, **pius** (stem **pio-**), **pie-tās**; **socius**, **socie-tās** (see § 11. *d*).

f. **-ium**, **-tium**, added to noun- and perhaps verb-stems, form *neuter abstracts*, which easily pass into *concretes* denoting OFFICES and GROUPS: as, —

hospes (gen. **hospit-is**), *a guest;* **hospit-ium**, *hospitality, an inn.*
servus, *a slave;* **servi-tium**, *slavery, the slave class.*

collēga, *a colleague;* **collēg-ium**, *colleagueship, a college.*
auspex, *a soothsayer;* **auspic-ium**, *soothsaying, an omen.*
gaudeō, *rejoice;* **gaud-ium**, *joy.*
benefaciō, *benefit;* **benefic-ium**, *a kindness* (but cf. **beneficus**).
dē-siderō, *miss* (from † **dē-sīdēs**, *out of place*, of missing soldiers); **dēsīder-ium**, *longing.*
effugiō, *escape;* **effug-ium**, *an escape* (cf. **profugus**).
ad verbum, [added] *to a verb;* **adverb-ium**, *an adverb.*
inter-lūnās, *between moons;* **interlūn-ium**, *time of new moon.*
rēgis fuga, *flight of a king;* **rēgifug-ium**, *flight of kings.*

Vowel-stems lose their vowel before **-ium**, as **collēg-ium**, from **collēga**.

Less commonly **-nia**, F., **-nium**, **-lium**, **-cinium**, N., are added to noun-stems, but confused with verb-stems: as, —

pecū, *cattle;* **pecū-nia**, *property consisting of cattle, money* (cf. chattels).
conticēscō, *hush;* **contici-nium**, *the hush of night.*
augeō, *increase;* **auxi-lium**, *help.*
pecū, *cattle;* **pecū-lium**, *private property* (cf. **pecūlor**, implying a noun † **pecūlum**).
lātrō, *robber;* **lātrō-cinium**, *robbery* (cf. **lātrōcinor**, *rob*, implying an adj. † **lātrōcinus**).

3. Adjectives.

164. Derivative adjectives are *Nominal* (from nouns or adjectives) or *Verbal* (as from roots or verb-stems).

I. Nominal.

a. **-ulus** (**-a**, **-um**) (after a vowel **-olus**), **-culus**, **-ellus**, **-illus**, make an important class of adjectives, usually appropriated to one gender, that of the Primitive, and used as Diminutive Nouns: as, —

rīvus, *a brook;* **rīv-ulus**, *a streamlet.*
gladius, *a sword;* **gladi-olus**, *a small sword.*
fīlius, *a son;* **fīli-olus**, *a little son.*
fīlia, *a daughter;* **fīli-ola**, *a little daughter.*
ātrium, *a hall;* **ātri-olum**, *a little hall.*
homō, *a man;* **homun-culus**, *a dwarf.*

auris, *an ear;* **auri-cula**, *a little ear.*
mūnus, N., *a gift;* **mūnus-culum**, *a little gift.*
†puera (cf. **puer**, *a boy*); **puella** (for **†puer-ula**), *a girl.*
cōdex, *a block;* **cōdic-illī**, *writing-tablets.*
miser, *wretched;* **mis-ellus**, *rather wretched.*
liber, *a book;* **lib-ellus**, *a little book.*
aureus (-a, -um), *golden;* **aure-olus** (-a, -um), *golden.*
parvus (-a, -um), *little;* **parv-olus** (later **parv-ulus**), *very small.*
māior (old **māiōs**), *greater;* **māius-culus**, *somewhat larger.*

REMARK. — **-ciō**, added to stems in **n-**, has the same diminutive force, but is added to masculines only: as, **homun-ciō**, *a dwarf* (from **homō**, *a man*).

b. **-adēs**, M., **-ās**, F., **-idēs**, **-īdēs**, M., **-is**, **-ēis**, F., **-ēus**, **-eus**, M., are added to proper names, forming PATRONYMICS, to indicate *descent* or *relationship.*

These, originally Greek adjectives, have almost all become nouns in Latin: as, —

Tyndareus: **Tyndar-idēs**, *Castor* or *Pollux;* **Tyndar-is** (gen. **-idis**), *Helen, daughter of Tyndarus.*
Atlās: **Atlanti-adēs**, *Mercury;* **Atlant-idĕs** (Gr. pl.), *the Pleiads.*
Scīpiō: **Scīpi-adēs**, *son of Scipio.*
Anchīsēs: **Anchīsi-adēs**, *Æneas.*
Thēseus: **Thēs-īdēs**, *son of Theseus.*
Tȳdeus: **Tȳd-idēs**, *Diomedes, son of Tydeus.*
Oīleus: **Āiāx Oīl-ēus**, *son of Oileus.*
Thaumās: **Thaumanti-as** (gen. **-adis**), *Iris, daughter of Thaumas.*
Hesperus: **Hesper-idēs** (from **Hesper-is**, **idis**), F. pl., *the daughters of Hesperus, the Hesperides.*

c. **ānus**, **-ēnus**, **-īnus**; **-ās**, **-ēnsis**, **-acus** (**-ācus**), **-icus**; **-ēus** (generally shortened to **-ĕus**), **-ēius**, **-icius**, form adjectives with the sense of BELONGING TO.

1. So from common nouns: as, —

mōns (st. **monti-**), *mountain;* **mont-ānus**, *of the mountains.*
ante lūcem, *before light;* **antelūc-ānus**, *before daylight.*
egeō, *lack;* **eg-ēnus**, *needy.*
terra, *earth;* **terr-ēnus**, *earthly.*

collis, *hill;* **coll-īnus**, *of a hill.*
lībertus, *one's freedman;* **lībert-īnus**, *of the class of freedmen.*
vitulus, *a calf;* **vitul-īna** (sc. **carō**), *veal.*
quis, *who?* **cūi-ās**, *of what country?*
infimus, *lowest;* **infim-ās**, *of the lowest rank.*
forum, *a market-place;* **for-ēnsis**, *of a market-place*, or *the Forum.*
merum, *pure wine;* **mer-ācus**, *pure.*
cīvis, *a citizen;* **cīv-icus**, *civic, of a citizen.*
fēmina, *a woman;* **fēmin-eus**, *of a woman, feminine.*
lāc, *milk* (st. **lacti-**); **lact-eus**, *milky.*
plēbēs, *the commons;* **plēb-ēius**, *of the commons, plebeian.*
pater, *father;* **patr-icius**, *patrician.*

2. But especially from proper nouns (names of places, peoples, and persons) denoting BELONGING TO or COMING FROM: as, —

Rōma: **Rōm-ānus**, *Roman.*
Sulla: **Sull-ānī**, *Sulla's veterans.*
Cȳzicus: **Cȳzic-ēnī**, *Cyzicenes, people of Cyzicus.*
Liguria: **Ligur-īnus**, *of Liguria.*
Arpīnum: **Arpīn-ās**, *of Arpinum* (cf. **Samnium**: **Samnis**, gen. **-ītis**, *a Samnite*).
Sicilia: **Sicili-ēnsis**, *Sicilian.*
Īlum, *Troy;* **Īli-acus**, *Trojan* (a Greek form).
Platō: **Platōn-icus**, *Platonic.*
Aquila: **Aquil-ēius**, *a Roman name;* **Aquilēia**, *a town in Italy.*

3. Many derivative adjectives with these endings have by usage become nouns. Thus, —

silva, *woods;* **Silv-ānus**, M., *a god of the woods.*
membrum, *limb;* **membr-āna**, F., *skin.*
Aemilia (gēns); **Aemili-ānus**, M., *name of Scipio Africanus.*
lanius, *butcher;* **lāni-ēna**, F., *a butcher's stall.*
†**Aufidius (Aufidus)**, M.; **Aufidi-ēnus**, *a Roman name.*
incola, *an inhabitant;* **inquil-īnus**, M., *a lodger.*
caecus, *blind;* **Caec-īna**, used as M., *a Roman name.*
gallus, *a cock;* **gall-īna**, F., *a hen.*
ruō, *fall* (no noun existing); **ru-īna**, F., *a fall.*
doctor, *teacher;* **doctr-īna**, F., *learning.*

d. **-ālis, -āris, -ēlis, -īlis, ūlis, -nus,** PERTAINING TO, of various modes of *relation* or *possession*, but not used as Gentile adjectives: as, —

nātūra, *nature;* **nātūr-ālis,** *natural.*
populus, *a people;* **popul-āris,** *fellow-countryman.*
patruus, *uncle;* **patru-ēlis,** *cousin.*
hostis, *an enemy;* **host-īlis,** *hostile.*
currus, *chariot;* **sella cur-ūlis,** *curule chair.*
vēr, *spring;* **vēr-nus,** *vernal.*

e. **-ter (-tris), -ester (-estris), -timus, -ernus, -urnus, -ternus (-turnus),** BELONGING TO, of *places*, *times*, and the like (but some are *general* adjectives).

palūs, *a marsh;* **palūs-ter,** *of the marshes.*
pedes, *a footman;* **pedes-ter,** *of the foot.*
sex mēnsēs, *six months;* **sēmēs-tris,** *semi-annual.*
silva, *a wood;* **silv-ester, silv-estris,** *woody.*
fīnis, *an end;* **fīni-timus,** *neighboring, on the borders.*
herī (old **hesī**), *yesterday;* **hēs-ternus,** *of yesterday.*
diū, *long* (in time); **diū-turnus,** *lasting.*
hodiē, *to-day;* **hodi-ernus,** *of to-day.*
diēs, *day;* **di-urnus,** *daily.*

f. **-ātus, -ītus, -ūtus,** PROVIDED WITH, make adjectives with participial ending, formed from nouns, but in reference to an imaginary verb-stem (cf. the English *horned*, *crested*, *hooked*).

barba, *a beard;* **barb-ātus,** *bearded.*
auris, *an ear;* **aur-ītus,** *long-eared.*
versus, *a turning;* **vers-ūtus,** *crafty*, *adroit* (full of turns).

So **-tus,** added directly to nouns without reference to any verb: as, —

fūnus, *death;* **fūnes-tus,** *deadly.*
honor, *honor;* **hones-tus,** *honorable.*
favor, *favor;* **faus-tus** (for †**faves-tus**), *favorable.*

g. **-eus, -ius, -āceus, -īcius, -āneus (-neus), -ticus,** MADE OF or BELONGING TO, form adjectives of various meanings: as, —

aurum, *gold;* **aur-eus,** *golden.*
pater, *a father;* **patr-ius,** *paternal.*
uxor, *a wife;* **uxōr-ius,** *uxorious.*

rosa, *a rose;* **ros-āceus**, *of roses.*
later, *a brick;* **later-īcius**, *of brick.*
praesēns, *present;* **praesent-āneus**, *operating instantly.*
extrā, *without;* **extr-āneus**, *external.*
sub terrā, *underground;* **subterr-āneus**, *subterranean.*
salix, *willow;* **salig-neus**, *of willow.*
volō, *fly;* **volā-ticus**, *winged* (**volātus**, *a flight*).
domus, *a house;* **domes-ticus**, *of the house, domestic.*
silva, *a wood;* **silvā-ticus**, *sylvan.*

h. **-ārius**, **-tōrius** (**-sōrius**), BELONGING TO, make many adjectives often fixed as nouns (see *i*).

ōrdō, *rank, order;* **ōrdin-ārius**, *regular.*
argentum, *silver;* **argent-ārius**, *of silver* or *money.*
extrā, *outside;* **extr-ārius**, *stranger.*
meritus, *earned;* **meri-tōrius**, *profitable.*
dēvorsus, *turned aside;* **dēvor-sōrius**, *of an inn* (cf. *i.* 5).

i. Many fixed forms of the above adjective suffixes make nouns, more or less regularly used in particular senses: as, —

1. **-ārius** (regular), *person employed about anything:* as, —

argent-ārius, *silversmith, broker* (from **argentum**).

2. **-āria**, *thing connected with something:* as, —

arēn-āriae, F. pl., *sandpits* (from **arēna**, *sand*).
Asin-āria, F., name of a play (from **asinus**, *ass*).

3. **-ārium** (regular), *place of a thing* (with a few of more general meaning): as, —

aer-ārium, N., *treasury* (from **aes**, *copper*).
tepid-ārium, N., *warm bath* (from **tepidus**, *warm*).
sūd-ārium, N., *a towel* (cf. **sūdō**, **-āre**, *sweat*).
sal-ārium, N., *salt money, salary* (from **sāl**, *salt*).
calend-ārium, N., *a note-book* (from **calendae**, *calends*).

4. **-tōria** (**-sōria**): as, —

Agitā-tōria, F., a play of Plautus, *The Carter* (from **agitātor**).
vor-sōria, F., *a tack* (from **vorsus**, *a turn*).

5. **-tōrium** (**-sōrium**) (regular), *place of action* (with a few of more general meaning): as, —

dēvor-sōrium, N., *an inn* (as from **dēvortō**, *turn aside*).
audi-tōrium, N., *a lecture-room* (as from **audiō**, *hear*).
ten-tōrium, N., *a tent* (as from **tendō**, *stretch*).
tēc-tōrium, N., *plaster* (as from **tegō**, **tēctus**, *cover*).
por-tōrium, N., *toll* (cf. **portō**, *carry*, and **portus**, *harbor*).

6. **-īle**, *animal-stall:* as, —

bov-īle, N., *cattle-stall* (**bōs**, **bŏvis**, *ox*, *cow*).
ov-īle, *sheep-fold* (**ovis**, st. **ovi-**, *sheep*).

7. **-al** for **-āle**, *thing connected with* the primitive: as, —

capit-al, N., *head-dress*, *capital crime* (**caput**, *head*).
penetr-āle (esp. in pl.), N., *inner apartment* (cf. **penetrō**).
Sāturn-ālia, N. pl. (the regular form for *names of festivals*), *feast of Saturn* (from **Sāturnus**).

8. **-ētum**, N. (cf. **-ātus**, **-ūtus**, see *f*), *place of a thing;* as, —

querc-ētum, N., *oak grove* (from **quercus**, *oak*).
Argil-ētum, N., *The Clay-pit* (from **argilla**, *clay*).

9. **-cus** (sometimes with inserted **i**, **-icus**), **-īcus**, in any one of the genders, with various meanings: as, —

vīli-cus, M., **vīli-ca**, F., *a steward* (*stewardess*) (from **villa**, *farm-house*).
fabr-ica, F., *a workshop* (from **faber**, *workman*).
bubul-cus, M., *ox-tender* (from **būb-ulus**, dim., cf. **bōs**, *ox*).
cant-icum, N., *song* (from **cantus**, *act of singing*).
rubr-īca, F., *red paint* (from **ruber**, *red*).

10. **-eus**, **-ea**, **-eum**, with various meanings: as, —

alv-eus, M., *a trough* (from **alvus**, *the belly*).
capr-ea, F., *a roe* (from **caper**, *he-goat*).
flamm-eum, N., *a bridal veil* (from **flamma**, *flame*, from its color).

11. **-ium**, confounded with the primary suffix (see § 163. *f*).

12. **-ter** (stem **tro-**) and **-ter** (stem **tri-**), **-aster** **-ester**: as, —

Aus-ter, M., *South wind* (from **ūrō**, *burn*).
eques-ter, M., *knight* (for †**equet-ter**).
sequ-ester, M., *a stake-holder* (from derivative of **sequor**, *follow*).
ole-aster, M., *wild olive* (from **olea**) (cf. **surd-aster**, from **surdus**).

k. **-ōsus**, **-(o)lēns**, **-(o)lentus**, FULL OF, PRONE TO: as, —

flūctus, *wave;* **flūctu-ōsus**, *billowy.*
forma, *beauty;* **form-ōsus**, *beautiful.*
periculum, *peril;* **pericul-ōsus**, *full of danger.*
pestis, *pest;* **pesti-lēns**, **pesti-lentus**, *pestilent.*
vīnum, *wine;* **vīno-lentus**, **vīn-ōsus**, *given to drink.*

II. VERBAL.

l. **-āx**, **-idus**, **-ulus**, **-vus-** (**-uus**, **-īvus**, **-tīvus**), PRONE TO, FITTED TO, apparently[1] added to verb-stems, form adjectives, to express the action of a verb as a QUALITY or TENDENCY. **-āx**, denotes a *faulty* or *aggressive* tendency; **-tīvus** is oftener *passive.* Thus, —

pūgnō, *fight;* **pūgn-āx**, *pugnacious.*
audeō, *dare;* **aud-āx**, *bold.*
cupiō, *desire;* **cup-idus**, *eager.*
bibō, *drink;* **bib-ulus**, *thirsty* (as dry earth, etc.).
prōterō, *trample;* **proter-vus**, *violent*, *wanton.*
noceō, *do harm;* **noc-uus** (**noc-īvus**), *hurtful*, *injurious.*
capiō, *take;* **cap-tīvus**, *captive*, M., *a prisoner of war.*
recidō, *fall back;* **recid-īvus**, *restored.*

m. **-ilis**, **-bilis**, **-ius**, **-tilis** (**-silis**), express PASSIVE QUALITIES, but occasionally active: as, —

frangō (FRAG), *break;* **frag-ilis**, *frail*, *breakable.*
nōscō (GNO), *know;* **nō-bilis**, *well known*, *famous.*
eximō, *take out*, *select;* **exim-ius**, *choice*, *rare* (cf. **ē-greg-ius**).
agō, *drive;* **ag-ilis**, *active.*
habeō, *hold;* **hab-ilis**, *handy.*
alō, *nourish;* **al-tilis**, *fattened.*

n. **-minus**, **-mnus**, are properly *participial* (cf. Greek -μενος, and **amā-minī**). They form a few nouns in which the participial force is discernible: as, —

FE, *produce;* **fē-mina**, *woman* (the producer).
alō, *nourish;* **alu-mnus**, *a foster child*, *nursling.*

o. **-ndus** (the same as the gerund-ending) forms a few *active* or *reflexive* adjectives: as, —

[1] The forms felt as verbal are, like the nominal forms, derived from noun-stems, and the two are constantly confounded.

sequor, *follow;* **secu-ndus**, *second* (the following), *favorable.*
rotō, *whirl* (from **rota**, *wheel*) ; **rotu-ndus**, *round* (whirling).[1]

p. **-bundus**, **-cundus**, with a *participial* meaning, but denoting *continuance* of the act or quality.

iocus, *a jest;* **iū-cundus**, *pleasant* (cf. **iuvō**, **-āre**).
vītō, *shun;* **vītā-bundus**, *dodging about.*
tremō, *tremble;* **treme-bundus**, *trembling.*
morior, *die;* **mori-bundus**, *at the point of death.*
for, *speak;* **fā-cundus**, *eloquent.*
FE, *produce;* **fē-cundus**, *fruitful.*
So, **īra**, *anger;* **īrā-cundus**, *irascible* (cf. **īrā-scor**).

III. Irregular Derivatives.

q. The primary suffix **ōn**, (nom. **-ō**) is used as secondary to form nouns (originally adjectives), denoting POSSESSED OF and so expressing a *character*, often used as *proper names*[2]: as, —

epulae, *a feast;* **epul-ō**, *a feaster.*
nāsus, *a nose;* **nās-ō**, *with a large nose* (also as a proper name).
-volus (in **bene-volus**), *wishing;* **vol-ōnēs** (pl.), *volunteers.*
frōns, *forehead;* **front-ō**, *big-head* (also as a proper name).
So, **cūria**, *a curia;* **cūri-ō**, *head of a curia* (also as proper name).
restis, *a rope;* **resti-ō**, *a rope-maker.*
† **vespertīlis**, *of the evening;* **vespertīli-ō**, *a bat.*

r. Rarely suffixes are added to compound stems imagined, but not used in their compound form : as, —

ad-verb-ium, *adverb;* **ad**, *to*, and **verbum**, *verb*, but without the intervening † **adverbus**.
lāti-fund-ium, *large estate;* **lātus**, *wide*, **fundus**, *estate.*
su-ove-taur-īlia, *a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and a bull;* **sūs**, *swine*, **ovis**, *sheep*, **taurus**, *bull*, where the primitive would be impossible in Latin.

[1] Compare **volvendīs mēnsibus**, *in the revolving months* (Virg.).
[2] This suffix is the same as in § 162. *c*, but not connected with a verb.

IV. DERIVATION OF VERBS.

165. Verbs may be classed as *Primitive* or *Derivative*.

1. Primitive verbs are those inherited by the Latin from the parent speech.

2. Derivative verbs are those formed in the development of the Latin as a separate language. They are of two main classes : —

a. DENOMINATIVE VERBS, formed from nouns or adjectives.

b. Verbs apparently derived from other verbs (see § 167).

1. Denominative Verbs.

166. Verbs were formed in Latin from almost every form of noun- and adjective-stem.

a. 1. Verbs of the first conjugation are formed directly from a-stems, regularly with a transitive meaning : as, **fuga**, *flight;* **fugō**, *put to flight;* **belliger, belligero** (not **bellum** and **gero**, which would be impossible).

NOTE. — Originally particular forms of stem formed particular conjugations of verbs, but from changes of stem and from various cross-analogies the relation between conjugations and stem-forms became entirely confused. Thus **poena** should make † **pūnāre**, but it really makes **pūnīre**, as if an ī-stem (as in **impūni-s**) ; **servus** makes **servāre** in one sense, **servīre** in another.

2. Many verbs of the First Conjugation (commonly transitive) are formed from **o**-stems, changing the **o-** into **ā-**. Thus, —

stimulus, *a goad* (stem **stimulo-**); **stimulō** (**-āre**), *incite*.
aecus, *even* (stem **aequo-**); **aequō** (**-āre**), *make even*.
hībernus, *of the winter* (stem **hīberno-**); **hībernō**, *pass the winter*.
albus, *white* (stem **albo-**); **albō** (**-āre**), *whiten*.
pius, *pure* (stem **pio-**); **piō** (**-āre**), *expiate*.

3. A few verbs, generally neuter, are formed by analogy from consonant- and **u-** stems, adding **ā** to the stem : as, —

vigil, *awake;* **vigilō** (**-āre**), *watch*.
exsul, *an exile;* **exsulō** (**-āre**), *be in exile*.

hiemps (stem **hiem-**), *winter;* **hiemō** (**-āre**), *pass the winter.*
aestus, *tide*, *seething;* **aestuō** (**-āre**), *surge*, *boil.*
levis (stem **levi-**), *light;* **levō** (**-āre**), *lighten.*

b. A few verbs of the Second Conjugation (generally intransitive) are recognizable as formed from noun-stems, but most are inherited, or the primitive noun-stem is lost: as, —

albus, *white;* **albeō**, *be white* (cf. **albō**, **-āre**, *whiten*, under *a*. 2).
cānus (stem **cāno-**), *hoary;* **cāneō**, *be hoary.*
tumulus, *hill* (implying † **tumus**, *swelling*); **tumeō**, *swell.*
prō-vidus, *foreseeing;* **prō-videō**, *foresee.*
But **moneō**, *remind;* cf. **meminī**, *remember.*
algeō, *be cold;* cf. **algidus**, *cold.*

c. Some verbs in **-uō**, **-uere** are formed from noun-stems in **u-** where probably an **i** has been lost: as, —

status, *position;* **statuō**, *set up.*
metus, *fear;* **metuō**, *fear.*

d. Many verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are formed from real or imagined **i-stems**: as, —

mōlēs (**-is**), *mass;* **mōlior**, **-īrī**, *toil.*
fīnis, *end;* **fīniō**, **-īre**, *bound.*
sitis, *thirst;* **sitiō**, **-īre**, *thirst.*
stabilis, *stable;* **stabiliō**, **-re**, *establish.*

Some wrongly from other stems treated as if **i-stems**: as, —

bulla, *bubble;* **bulliō**, **-īre**, *boil.*
condus, *storekeeper;* **condiō**, **-īre**, *preserve.*
īnsānus, *mad;* **īnsāniō**, **-īre**, *rave.*
gestus, *gesture;* **gestiō**, **-īre**, *show wild longing.*
custōs, *guardian;* **custōdiō**, **-īre**, *guard.*

2. Verbs from other Verbs.

167. The following classes of verbs regularly derived from other verbs have special meanings connected with their terminations.

a. INCEPTIVES or INCHOATIVES add **-scō** to the present stem of verbs. They denote the *beginning* of an action. Of some there is no simple verb in existence. Thus, —

caleō, *be warm;* **calē-scō**, *grow warm.*
labō, *totter;* **labā-scō**, *begin to totter.*
sciō, *know;* **scī-scō**, *determine.*
cupiō, *desire;* **con-cupī-scō**, *conceive a desire for.*
alō, *feed;* **ale-scō**, *grow.*
So, **īrā-scor**, *get angry;* cf. **īrā-tus**.
iuvene-sco, *grow young;* cf. **iuvenis**, *young man.*
vesperā-scit, *it is getting late;* cf. **vesper**, *evening.*

NOTE. — Inceptives properly have only the present stem, but many use the perfect and supine systems of simple verbs: as, **calēscō, caluī; proficiscor, profectus.**

b. INTENSIVES or ITERATIVES end in **-tō** or **-itō** (rarely **-sō**), and denote a *forcible* or *repeated* action: as, —

iaciō, *throw;* **iac-tō**, *hurl.*
dīcō, *say;* **dict-itō**, *keep on saying.*
quatiō, *shake;* **quas-sō**, *shatter.*

They are of the first conjugation, and are properly denominative, derived from the participle in **-tus** (stem **to-**).

c. Another form of Intensives — sometimes called Meditatives, or verbs of *practice* — ends in **-essō** (rarely **-issō**). These denote *energy* or *eagerness* of action: as, —

capiō, *take;* **cap-essō**, *lay hold on.*
faciō, *do;* **fac-essō**, *do* (with energy).
petō, *seek;* **pet-issō**, *seek* (eagerly).

These are of the third conjugation, usually having the perfect and supine of the fourth: as, —

lacessō, lacessĕre, lacessīvī, lacessītum, *provoke.*

d. DIMINUTIVES (derived from real or supposed diminutive nouns) end in **-illō**, and denote a *feeble* or *petty* action: as, —

cavilla, *raillery;* **cav-illor**, *jest.*
cantō, *sing;* **cant-illō**, *chirp* or *warble.*

e. DESIDERATIVES end in **-turiō** (**-suriō**), and express *longing* or *wishing.* They are of the fourth conjugation, and only three are in common use: —

emō, *buy;* **emp-turiō**, *want to buy.*
edō, *eat;* **ē-suriō**, *be hungry.*
pariō, *bring forth;* **par-turiō**, *be in labor.*

NOTE. — Desideratives are derived from some noun of agency: as, **empturiō**, from **emptor**, *buyer*. **Vīsō**, *go to see*, is an inherited desiderative of a different formation.

3. Compound Words.

A Compound Word is one whose stem is made up of two or more simple stems.

Only noun-stems can be thus compounded. A preposition, however, often becomes attached to a verb.

168. New stems are formed by composition, as follows:[1]

a. The second part is simply added to the first: as, —

su-ove-taurīlia (**sūs, ovis, taurus**), *the sacrifice of a hog, sheep, and bull* (cf. § 164. *r*).
septen-decim (**septem, decem**), *seventeen.*

b. The first part modifies the second as an adjective or adverb (*Determinative Compounds*): as, —

lāti-fundium (**lātus, fundus**), *a large landed estate.*

c. The first part has the force of a case, and the second a verbal force (*Objective Compounds*): as, —

agri-cola (**ager**, †**cola** akin to **colō**), *a farmer.*
armi-ger (**arma**, †**ger** akin to **gerō**), *armor-bearer.*
corni-cen (**cornū**, †**cen** akin to **canō**), *horn-blower.*
carni-fex (**carō**, †**fex** akin to **faciō**), *executioner.*

[1] In these compounds only the second part receives inflection, commonly the proper inflection of the last stem; but, as this kind of composition is older than inflection, the compounded stem sometimes has an inflection of its own (as, **cornicen, -cinis**; **lūcifer, -ferī**; **iūdex, -dicis**), from stems not occurring in Latin. Especially do compound adjectives take the form of i-stems: as, **animus, exanimis**; **nōrma, abnōrmis** (see note, p. 23). In composition stems regularly have their uninflected form: as, **īgni-spicium**, *divining by fire*. But **o-** and **a-**stems weaken the final vowel of the stem to **i-**, as in **āli-pēs** (from **āla**); and **i-** is so common a termination of compounded stems, that it is often added to stems which do not properly have it: as, **foederi-fragus** (for †**foeder-fragus**: **foedus**, †**fragus**), *treaty-breaking*.

d. Compounds of the above kinds, in which the last word is a noun, acquire the signification of adjectives, meaning *possessed of* the quality denoted (*Possessive Compounds*) : as, —

āli-pēs (**āla, pēs**), *wing-footed.*
māgn-animus (**māgnus, animus**), *great-souled.*
con-cors (**con-, cor**), *harmonious.*
an-ceps (**amb-, caput**), *double* (having a head at both ends).

NOTE. — Many compounds of the above classes appear only in the form of some further derivative, the proper compound being not found in Latin.

169. In many apparent compounds, complete words — not stems — have grown together in speech.

These are not strictly compounds in the etymological sense. They are called *Syntactic Compounds*. Examples are —

a. Compounds of **faciō, factō**, with an actual or formerly existing noun-stem confounded with a verbal stem in **e-**. These are CAUSATIVE in force : as, **cōnsuē-faciō**, *habituate* (cf. **cōnsuē-scō**, *become accustomed*) ; **cale-faciō, cale-factō**, *to heat* (cf. **calē-scō**, *grow warm*).

b. An adverb or noun combined with a verb : as, **bene-dīcō** (**bene dīcō**), *to bless ;* **sat-agō** (**satis agō**), *to be busy enough.*

c. Many apparent compounds : as, **fidē-iubeō** (**fideī iubeō**), *to give surety;* **mān-suētus** (**manuī suētus**), *tame;* **Iūppiter** (**†Iūs-pater**); **Mārci-por** (**Mārcī puer**), *slave of Marcus.*

d. A few *phrases* forced into the inflections of nouns : as, —

prō-cōnsul, *proconsul* (for **prō cōnsule**, *instead of a consul*).
trium-vir, *triumvir* (singular from **trium virōrum**).
septen-triō, *the Bear*, a constellation (supposed singular of **septem triōnēs**, *The Seven Oxen*).

170. Many syntactic compounds are formed by prefixing a Particle to some other part of speech : —

a. Prepositions are prefixed to Verbs or Adjectives and in these compounds retain their original adverbial sense :[1] as, —

[1] The prepositions sometimes, however, especially **ad, in, circum, trāns**, have their ordinary force as prepositions, and govern the case of a noun : as, **trānsīre flūmen**, *to cross a river* (see § 239. *b.* Rem.).

ā, ab, AWAY : **au-ferre (ab-ferō)**, *to take away*.
ad, TO, TOWARDS : **af-ferre (ad-ferō)**, *to bring*.
ante, BEFORE : **ante-ferre**, *to prefer;* **ante-cellere**, *to excel*.
circum, AROUND : **circum-mūnire**, *to fortify completely*.
com-, con- (cum), TOGETHER or FORCIBLY : **cōn-ferre**, *to bring together;* **col-locāre**, *to set firm*.
dē, DOWN, UTTERLY : **dē-spicere**, *despise;* **dēstruere**, *destroy*.
ē, ex, OUT: **ef-ferre (ec-ferō)**, *to carry forth, uplift*.
in (with verbs), IN, ON, AGAINST : **in-ferre**, *to bear against*.
inter, BETWEEN, TO PIECES : **inter-rumpere**, *to interrupt*.
ob, TOWARDS, TO MEET : **of-ferre**, *to offer;* **ob-venīre**, *to meet*.
sub, UNDER : **sub-struere**, *to build beneath*.
super, UPON, OVER AND ABOVE : **super-fluere**, *to overflow;* **superstes**, *a survivor*.

NOTE. — In these compounds short **a** of the root is weakened to **i** before one consonant, to **e** before two : as, **faciō, cōnficiō, cōnfectus; iaciō, ēiciō, ēiectus**. But long **a** is retained : as, **perāctus**.

b. Verbs are also compounded with the following inseparable particles, which do not appear as prepositions in Latin : —

amb- (am-, an-), AROUND : **amb-īre**, *to go about* (cf. ἀμφί, *about*).
dis-, dī-, ASUNDER, APART: **dis-cēdere**, *to depart* (cf. **duo**, *two*).
por-, FORWARD : **por-tendere**, *to hold forth, predict* (cf. **porrō**, *forth*).
red-, re-, BACK, AGAIN : **red-īre**, *to return;* **re-clūdere**, *to open* (from **claudō**, *shut*) ; **re-ficere**, *to repair* (make again).
sēd-, sē-, APART: **sē-cernō**, *to separate* (cf. **sed**, *but*).

c. An Adjective is sometimes modified by an adverbial prefix.

Of these, **per** (less commonly **prae**), *very;* **sub**, *somewhat;* **in-**, *not*, are regular, and may be prefixed to almost any adjective : as, —

per-māgnus, *very large*.	**prae-longus**, *very long*.
sub-rūsticus, *rather clownish*.	**in-fīnītus**, *boundless*.

NOTE. — **Per** and **sub**, in these senses, are also prefixed to verbs : as, **perterreō**, *terrify;* **sub-rīdeō**, *smile*. In **īgnōscō**, **in-** appears to be the negative prefix.

d. Many Verbals are found compounded with a preposition, like the verbs to which they correspond. Thus, —

per-fuga, *deserter;* cf. **per-fugiō**.
trādux, *vine-branch;* cf. **trāns-dūcō**.

PART SECOND.—USE OF WORDS (SYNTAX).

INTRODUCTORY NOTE.

THE study of formal grammar arose at a late period in the history of language, and deals with language as fully developed. The terms of Syntax correspond accordingly to the logical habits of thought that have grown up at such a period, and have therefore a logical as well as a simply grammatical meaning. But Syntax as thus developed is not essential to language. A form of words—like **ō puerum pulcrum!** *oh! beautiful boy*—may express a thought, and in some languages might even be a sentence, while it does not logically declare anything, and does not, strictly speaking, make what we call a sentence at all.

In the fully developed methods of expression to which we are almost exclusively accustomed, the unit of expression is the SENTENCE[1]; that is, the completed statement, with its distinct Subject and Predicate. Originally every sentence is simple. But two simple sentences may be used together, without the subordination of either, to express a more complex form of thought than can be denoted by one alone. This is *parataxis* (arrangement side by side). In time, two sentences, thus habitually used in connection, come to be regularly associated with each other, in certain relations, as parts of one logical idea, and the one is felt to *depend* upon the other. This is *syntaxis* (arrangement together). In this way, through various courses of development, which correspond to the growth of our habitual forms of thought, there are produced various forms of *complex sentences*. Thus, **timeō nē id accidat** was originally two simple sentences: *I fear. Let that not happen!* and these, becoming attached, formed the complex sentence: *I fear* (lest) *that may happen*. The results of these processes constitute the subject-matter of Syntax as shown in the annexed Outline.

I. A SENTENCE may be either Simple or Compound: viz.,—

1. SIMPLE:	Containing a single statement (Subject and Predicate) (§ 180).
2. COMPOUND:	*a.* Containing two or more Co-ordinate Clauses (§ 180. *a*). *b.* Modified by Subordinate Clauses (*complex*) (§ 180. *b*).

[1] The meaning of Sentence is "Thought" (**sententia**, from **sentire**). The grammatical form of the sentence is the form in which the thought is expressed.

II. The Essential Parts of the Sentence are —

1. The SUBJECT: consisting of
   - *a*. Noun or its equivalent (§ 174. 1).
   - *b*. Pronoun contained in verb-ending (§ 174. 2).

2. The PREDICATE: consisting of
   - *a*. Neuter (intransitive) Verb (§ 175. *a*).
   - *b*. Copula with Predicate Noun or Adjective (§ 172. note).
   - *c*. Verb with Object (§§ 175. *b*, 177).

III. The Subject and Predicate may be MODIFIED as follows: —

1. The Noun (*Subject or Object*) by
   - *a*. Noun in Apposition (§ 184).
   - *b*. Adjective or Participle (§ 186).
   - *c*. Noun in Oblique Case (§ 178. *a*, *b*).
   - *d*. Preposition with its case (§ 260).
   - *e*. Relative Clause (§ 180. *c*).

2. The VERB (*predicate*) by
   - *a*. Adverb or Adverbial Phrase (§§ 179, 207).
   - *b*. Predicate Adjective (§ 191).
   - *c*. Subordinate Clause (§ 180. *b*).

IV. Hence:
   - *a*. Rules of AGREEMENT (*the Four Concords*) (§ 182).
   - *b*. Rules of GOVERNMENT (*Construction of Cases*) (§§ 213 ff.).

THE SENTENCE.

1. Definitions.

171. A SENTENCE is a form of words which contains a Statement, a Question, an Exclamation, or a Command.

a. A sentence in the form of a Statement is called a DECLARATIVE SENTENCE: as, **ecus currit**, *the horse runs.*

b. A sentence in the form of a Question is called an INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE: as, **ecusne currit**? *does the horse run?*

c. A sentence in the form of an Exclamation is called an EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE: as, **quam celeriter currit ecus**! *how fast the horse runs!*

d. A sentence in the form of a Command, an Exhortation, or an Entreaty is called an IMPERATIVE SENTENCE: as, **currat ecus**, *let the horse run;* **i, curre per Alpēs**, *go run across the Alps.*

172. Every sentence consists of a Subject and a Predicate.

The SUBJECT of a sentence is the person or thing spoken of.

The PREDICATE is that which is said of the Subject.

Thus, in **ecus currit**, *the horse runs*, **ecus** is the subject, and **currit** the predicate.

NOTE. — Every complete sentence must contain a subject (§ 174) and a verb. The verb itself is usually the predicate, but when any form of **sum** is used simply to connect a noun or adjective as an attribute with the subject, such word is called the *predicate noun* or *adjective*, and **sum** is known as the *copula* (or connective) (§ 176. *a*). Thus, in **Caesar cōnsul erat**, *Cæsar was consul*, **Caesar** is the subject, **cōnsul** the predicate noun, and **erat** the copula.

But **sum** in the sense of *exist* makes a complete predicate alone. It is then called the *substantive* verb : as, **sunt virī fortēs**, *there are* (exist) *brave men.*

2. Subject and Predicate.

173. 1. (RULE 13.) The Subject of a Finite verb is in the NOMINATIVE CASE : as, —

ecus currit, *the horse runs.* rēgīna sedet, *the queen sits.*

2. (RULE 36.) The Subject of an Infinitive is in the ACCUSATIVE (see § 240. *f*).

NOTE. — A finite verb is a verb in the Indicative, Subjunctive, or Imperative. These are called finite moods to distinguish them from the Infinitive.

174. 1. The Subject of a sentence is usually a Noun or some word or phrase used as a Noun : as, —

hūmānum est errāre, *to err is human.*
quaeritur num mors malum sit, *the question is whether death is an evil.*
vēnit, incertum est unde, *he came, where from is uncertain.*

2. But in Latin the subject may be implied in the termination of the verb (see § 206. *a*, *b*) : as, —

sedē-mus, *we sit.* curri-tis, *you run.* inqui-t, *says he.*

175. Verbs are either Intransitive or Transitive.

a. An Intransitive (or Neuter) verb contains in itself an entire statement: as, —

cadō, *I fall* (am falling).
sōl lūcet, *the sun is shining.*
sunt virī fortēs, *there are brave men.*

b. A Transitive (or Active) verb has or requires a Direct Object to complete its sense (see § 177): as, —

frātrem cecīdit, *he slew his brother.*

NOTE 1. — Among transitive verbs FACTITATIVE VERBS are sometimes distinguished as a separate class. These state an act which *produces* the thing expressed by the word which completes their sense. Thus, **mēnsam fēcit**, *he made a table* (which was not in existence before), is distinguished from **mēnsam percussit**, *he struck a table* (which already existed).

NOTE 2. — A transitive verb may often be used *absolutely* without any object expressed: as, **arat**, *he is ploughing*, where the verb does not cease to be transitive because the object is left indefinite, as we see by adding, — **quid**, *what?* **agrum suum**, *his land.*

3. Predicate Noun.

176. An intransitive verb is often followed by a noun or adjective to describe or define the subject. This is called a Predicate Noun or Adjective: as, —

mortuus cecidit, *he fell dead.*
Quīntus sedet **iūdex**, *Quintus sits as judge.*
Caesar **victor** incēdit, *Cæsar advances victorious* (a victor).

a. The copula **sum**, especially, is used with a predicate noun or adjective (see § 172. note). So, also, verbs signifying *to become*, *to be made*, *to be named*, *to appear*, whence these are called COPULATIVE (*i.e. coupling*) verbs.

NOTE. — A noun in agreement with some part of the predicate is sometimes called a Predicate Noun (see § 185. *c*).

b. A Predicate noun or adjective after the copula **sum** or a copulative verb is in the same case as the subject (see § 185. *a*).

Rōma est **patria** nostra, *Rome is our country.*
stellae **lūcidae** erant, *the stars were bright* (cf. stellae lūcēbant).
cōnsul creātus est, *he was elected consul.*
mors **fīnis** esse vidētur, *death seems to be the end.*
dīcit nōn omnēs bonōs esse **beātōs**, *he says that not all good men are happy.*

4. Object.

177. The person or thing immediately affected by the action of a verb is called the DIRECT OBJECT.

A person or thing indirectly affected is called the INDIRECT OBJECT.

Only transitive verbs can have a Direct Object ; but an Indirect Object may be used with both transitive and intransitive verbs (§§ 225, 226). Thus, —

pater vocat **fīlium** (direct object), *the father calls his son.*
mihi (ind. obj.) **agrum** (dir. obj.) ostendit, *he showed me a field.*
mihi (ind. obj.) placet, *it is pleasing to me.*

NOTE. — The distinction between transitive and intransitive verbs is not fixed, but most transitive verbs may be used intransitively, and many verbs usually intransitive may take a direct object and so become transitive (§ 237. *b*).

a. When a transitive verb is changed from the Active to the Passive voice, the Direct Object becomes the Subject and is put in the nominative case : as, —

Active : pater **fīlium** vocat, *the father calls* [his] *son.*
Passive: **fīlius** ā patre vocātur, *the son is called by his father.*
Active : **lūnam** et **stellās** vidēmus, *we see the moon and the stars.*
Passive: **lūna** et **stellae** videntur, *the moon and stars are seen* (appear).

b. With certain verbs, the Genitive, Dative, or Ablative is used where the English, from a difference in meaning, requires the Objective. Thus, —

hominem videō, *I see the man* (ACCUSATIVE).
hominī serviō, *I serve the man* (DATIVE, see § 227).
hominis misereor, *I pity the man* (GENITIVE, see § 221. *a*).
homine amīcō ūtor, *I treat the man as a friend* (ABLATIVE, see § 249).

c. Many verbs transitive in Latin are translated in English by an intransitive verb with a preposition : as, —

petit aprum, *he aims at the boar.*
laudem affectat, *he strives after praise.*
cūrat valētūdinem, *he takes care of his health.*

NOTE. — One or more words, essential to the grammatical completeness of a sentence, but clear enough to the mind of a hearer, are often omitted. This omission is called ELLIPSIS, and the sentence is called an ELLIPTICAL SENTENCE: as, **adest**, *he is here*; **quis?** (sc. **adest**), *who?* **miles** (sc. **adest**), *the soldier*.

5. Modification.

178. A Subject or a Predicate may be modified by a single word, or by a group of words (a Phrase or a Clause, see §§ 179, 180).

The modifying word or group of words may itself be modified in the same way.

a. A single modifying word may be an adjective, an adverb, an appositive (§ 184), or the oblique case of a noun. Thus, in the sentence **vir fortis patienter fert**, *a brave man bears patiently*, the adjective **fortis**, *brave*, modifies the subject **vir**, *man*, and the adverb **patienter**, *patiently*, modifies the predicate **fert**, *bears*.

b. The modifying word is in some cases said to LIMIT the word to which it belongs. Thus, in the sentence **puerī patrem videō**, *I see the boy's father*, the genitive **puerī** limits **patrem** (by excluding any other father).

179. A PHRASE is a group of words, without subject or predicate of its own, which may be used as an Adjective or an Adverb.

Thus, in the sentence **vir fuit summā nōbilitāte**, *he was a man of the highest nobility*, the words **summā nōbilitāte**, *of the highest nobility*, are used for the adjective **nōbilis**, *noble* (or **nōbilissimus**, *very noble*), and are called an ADJECTIVE PHRASE. In the sentence **māgnā celeritāte vēnit**, *he came with great speed*, the words **māgnā celeritāte**, *with great speed*, are used for the adverb **celeriter**, *quickly* (or **celerrimē**, *very quickly*), and are called an ADVERBIAL PHRASE.

180. Sentences are either Simple or Compound.

A SIMPLE SENTENCE is a sentence containing a single statement.

A Compound Sentence is a sentence containing more than one statement, and each single statement in it is called a Clause.

a. If one statement is simply added to another, the clauses are said to be Co-ordinate. They are usually connected by a Co-ordinate Conjunction (§ 154. *a*); but this is sometimes omitted (§ 208. *b*). Thus, —

dīvide et imperā, *divide and conquer.* But, —
vēnī, vīdī, vīcī, *I came, I saw, I conquered.*

b. If one statement modifies another in any way, the modifying clause is said to be Subordinate, and the clause modified is called the Main Clause.

This subordination is indicated by some connecting word, either a Subordinate Conjunction or a Relative (§ 154. *b*) : as, —

ōderint **dum** metuant, *let them hate so long as they fear.*
servum mīsit **quem** sēcum habēbat, *he sent the slave whom he had with him.*

A sentence containing one or more subordinate clauses is sometimes called Complex.

Note. — A subordinate clause may itself be modified by another subordinate clause.

c. A clause introduced by a Relative pronoun or adverb is called a Relative Clause.

A clause introduced by an adverb of time is called a Temporal Clause. Thus, —

dum tacent clāmant, *while they are silent they cry aloud.*
hominēs aegrī morbō gravī **cum** iactantur aestū febrīque, sī **aquam** gelidam biberint prīmō relevārī videntur, *men suffering with a severe sickness, when they are tossing with the heat of fever, if they drink cold water, seem at first to be relieved.*

d. A clause containing a Condition, introduced by **sī**, *if*, or some equivalent, is called a Conditional Clause. A sentence containing a conditional clause is called a Conditional Sentence.

Thus, **sī aquam gelidam biberint, prīmō relevārī videntur** is a Conditional Sentence, and **sī . . . biberint** is a Conditional Clause.

e. A clause expressing the Purpose of an action is called a FINAL or PURPOSE CLAUSE.

edō **ut** vīvam, *I eat to live* (that I may live).
mīsit lēgātōs **quī** dīcerent, *he sent ambassadors to say* (who should say).

A clause expressing the Result of an action is called a CONSECUTIVE or RESULT CLAUSE.[1]

tam longē aberam **ut nōn** vidērem, *I was too far away to see* (so far away that I did n't see).

AGREEMENT.

181. A word is said to *agree* with another when it is required by usage to be in the same Gender, Number, Case, or Person.

182. The following are the general forms of Agreement, sometimes called the Four Concords: —

1. The agreement of the NOUN in Apposition or as Predicate (§§ 184, 185).
2. The agreement of the ADJECTIVE with its Noun (§ 186).
3. The agreement of the RELATIVE with its Antecedents (§ 198).
4. The agreement of the VERB with its Subject (§ 204).

a. SYNESIS, or *cōnstrūctiō ad sēnsum* (construction according to sense) is a construction in which a word takes the gender or number, not of the word with which it should regularly agree, but of some other word *implied* in that word.

I. NOUNS.

183. (RULE I.) A noun used to describe another, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in Case: as, —

Servius **rēx**, *Servius the king.*
ad urbem **Athēnās**, *to the city* [of] *Athens.*
Cicerō **cōnsul** creātur, *Cicero is chosen consul.*

The descriptive noun may be either an Appositive (§ 184) or a Predicate noun (§ 185).

[1] Observe that the classes defined in *a–e* are not mutually exclusive, but that a single clause may belong to several of them at once. Thus, a relative clause is usually subordinate, and may be at the same time conditional; and subordinate clauses may be co-ordinate with each other.

1. Apposition.

184. The descriptive noun, when in the same part of the sentence with the noun described, is called an APPOSITIVE, and is said to be in APPOSITION : as, —

externus timor, māximum concordiae **vinculum**, iungēbat animōs (Liv. ii. 39), *fear of the foreigner, the chief bond of harmony, united their hearts.* [Here the descriptive noun belongs to the *subject.*]

quattuor hīc **prīmum ōmen** equōs vīdī (Æn. iii. 537), *I saw here four horses, the first omen.* [Here both nouns are in the *predicate.*]

litterās Graecās **senex** didicī (Cat. M. 26), *I learned Greek when an old man.* [Here **senex** is in apposition with the omitted subject of **didicī**, and expresses the *time, condition,* etc., of the act.]

a. Words expressing *parts* may be in apposition with a word including the parts, or *vice versa :* as, —

Gnaeus et Pūblius Scīpiōnēs, *Cneius and Publius, the Scipios.*

b. An appositive generally agrees in GENDER and NUMBER when it can : as, —

secuntur nātūram, optimam ducem (Læl. 19), *they follow nature, the best guide.*

omnium doctrīnārum inventrīcēs Athēnās (De Or. i. 13), *Athens, discoverer of all learning.*

c. A common noun in apposition with a Locative (§ 258. *c*) is put in the Ablative, with or without the preposition **in** : as, —

Antiochīae, celebrī quondam **urbe** (Arch. 4), *at Antioch, once a famous city.*

Albae cōnstitērunt **in urbe** mūnītā (Phil. iv. 6), *they halted at Alba, a fortified town.*

d. A possessive pronoun or an adjective implying possession may take an appositive in the genitive case agreeing in gender, number, and case with an implied noun or pronoun (§ 197. *e*): as, —

in nostrō omnium flētū (Mil. 92), *amid the tears of us all.*

ex Anniānā Milōnis domō (Att. iv. 3) [= ex Annī Milōnis domō], *out of Annius Milo's house.*

2. Predicate Agreement.

The Predicate noun may agree (1) with the subject, being connected with it by the copula or a copulative verb (§ 176. *a*), or (2) with the direct object of a verb.

185. A descriptive noun used to form a predicate is called a PREDICATE NOMINATIVE (or other case, according to the construction).

a. The case of the predicate after the copula and copulative verbs is the same as that of the subject (§ 176. *b*): as,—

pācis semper **auctor** fuī (Lig. 28), *I have always been an adviser of peace.*

quae **pertinācia** quibusdam, eadem aliīs **cōnstantia** vidērī potest (Marc. 31), *what may seem obstinacy to some, may seem to others consistency.*

ēius mortis sedētis **ultōrēs** (Mil. 79), *you sit as avengers of his death.*

ego **patrōnus** exstitī (Rosc. Am. 5), *I have come forward as an advocate.*

b. A predicate noun referring to two or more singular nouns is in the plural: as,—

cōnsulēs creantur Caesar et Servīlius (B. C. iii. 1), *Cæsar and Servilius are elected consuls.*

c. For Predicate Accusative, see under that case, § 239. *a*.

II. ADJECTIVES.

1. Rules of Agreement.

186. (RULE 2.) Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles agree with their nouns in *Gender, Number,* and *Case.*

vir fortis, *a brave man.*
illa mulier, *that woman.*
urbium māgnārum, *of great cities.*
cum ducentīs mīlitibus, *with 200 soldiers.*
imperātor victus est, *the general was beaten.*

NOTE.—All rules for the agreement of adjectives apply also to adjective pronouns and to participles.

Adjectives are either Attributive or Predicate.

a. An Attributive adjective simply qualifies its noun without the intervention of a verb or participle, expressed or implied.

bonus imperātor, *a good commander.*
stellae lūcidae, *bright stars.*

b. All other adjectives are called Predicate adjectives.

1. A predicate adjective, like a predicate noun, may be connected with the subject by **esse** or a copulative verb expressed or implied (see § 176. *a*): as, —

stellae lūcidae erant, *the stars were bright.*

2. After verbs of *naming, calling, making,* etc., an adjective may be used as a predicate accusative like a noun (see § 239. *a*).

3. A predicate adjective may be used in apposition like a noun (see *c*, below).

c. Predicate adjectives in apposition follow the rules of agreement of other adjectives (see § 186, above): as, —

Scīpiōnem **vīvum** vīdī, *I saw Scipio in his lifetime* (lit. living).

d. With two or more nouns the adjective is regularly plural, but sometimes agrees with the nearest (especially when attributive). Thus, —

Nīsus et Euryalus **prīmī** (Æn. v. 294), *Nisus and Euryalus first.*
Caesaris **omnī** et grātiā et opibus fruor (Fam. i. 9, 21), *I enjoy all Cæsar's favor and resources.*

187. One adjective may belong in sense to two or more nouns of different genders.

a. In such cases —

1. An attributive adjective agrees with the nearest noun: as, —

multae operae āc labōris, *of much trouble and toil.*
vīta mōrēsque **meī**, *my life and character.*
sī rēs, sī vir, sī tempus **ūllum**, dīgnum fuit (Mil. 19), *if any thing, if any man, if any time was fit.*

2. A predicate adjective may agree with the nearest, if the nouns form one connected idea: as, —

factus est strepitus et admurmurātiō (Verr. i. 45), *a noise of assent was made* (noise and murmur).

NOTE. — This is only when the Copula agrees with the nearest subject (§ 205. *d*).

b. But generally a predicate adjective will be masculine, if nouns of different genders mean *living beings;* neuter, if *things without life:* as, —

uxor deinde āc līberī **amplexī** (Liv. ii. 40), *then his wife and children embraced him.*

labor (M.) **voluptāsque** (F.), societāte quādam inter sē nātūrālī sunt iūncta (N.) (id. v. 4), *labor and delight are bound together by a certain natural alliance.*

NOTE. — If nouns of different genders include both male beings and things without life, a predicate adjective is sometimes masculine, sometimes neuter, and sometimes agrees in gender with the nearest if that is plural: as, —

rēx rēgiaque clāssis ūnā **profectī** (Liv. xxi. 50), *the king and the royal fleet set out together.*

nātūrā **inimīca** sunt lībera cīvitās et rēx (id. xliv. 24), *by nature a free state and a king are hostile.*

lēgātōs sortēsque ōrāculī **exspectandās** (id. v. 15), *that the ambassadors and the replies of the oracle should be waited for.*

c. Two or more abstract nouns of the same gender may have a predicate adjective in the neuter plural (cf. § 189. *c*): as, —

stultitia et timiditās et iniūstitia . . . sunt **fugienda** (Fin. iii. 39), *folly, rashness, and injustice are* [things] *to be shunned.*

d. A collective noun may take an adjective of a different gender and number agreeing with the gender and number of the individuals implied (*Synesis*, § 182. *a*): as, —

pars certāre **parātī** (Æn. v. 108), *a part ready to contend.*
duo mīlia **relictī** (Liv. xxxvii. 39), *two thousand were left.*

2. Adjectives used Substantively.

188. Adjectives are often used as Nouns (*substantively*), the masculine usually to denote *men* or *people in general* of that kind, the feminine *women*, and the neuter *things*: as, —

omnēs, *all men* (everybody).	omnia, *all things* (everything).
māiōrēs, *ancestors.*	minōrēs, *descendants.*
Rōmānī, *Romans.*	barbarī, *barbarians.*

REMARK. — The plural of adjectives, pronouns, and participles is very common in this use. The singular is rare except in a few words which have become practically nouns. See below and § 189. *a*.

a. Certain adjectives have become practically nouns, and are often modified by other adjectives. Thus, —

tuus vīcīnus proximus, *your next-door neighbor.*
propīnquī cēterī, *his other relatives.*

b. When any ambiguity would arise from the substantive use of an adjective, a noun must be added. Thus, —

bonī, *the good;* omnia, *everything* (all things); but —
potentia **omnium rērum**, *power over everything.* [**omnium** alone would mean *all men.*]

c. Many adjectives are used substantively either in the singular or the plural, with the added meaning of some noun which is understood from constant association: as, —

Āfricus [ventus], *the south-west wind.*
vitulīna [carō], *veal* (calf's flesh).
fera [bestia], *a wild beast.*
patria [terra], *the fatherland.*

d. A noun is sometimes used as an adjective, and may then be modified by an adverb: as, —

victor exercitus, *the victorious army.*
servum pecus, *a servile troop.*
admodum puer, *quite a boy* (young).
magis vir, *more of a man* (more manly).

e. A few adverbs appear to be used like adjectives. Such are —

1. **obviam**: as, —

fit obviam, *he goes to meet* (becomes in the way of).

2. **contrā**, contradicting some previous adjective, and so in a manner repeating it: as, —

alia probābilia, **contrā** alia dīcimus (Off. ii. 7), *we call some things probable, others the opposite* (not probable).

3. **palam**: as, —

palam rēs est, *the thing is all out.*

189. Neuter adjectives are used substantively in the following special senses: —

a. The neuter *singular* may denote either a single object or an abstract quality: as, —

raptō vīvere, *to live by plunder.*
in ārīdō, *on dry ground.*

b. The neuter *plural* is used to signify *objects in general* having the quality denoted, and hence may stand for the abstract idea: as,—

honesta, *honorable deeds* (in general).
omnēs fortia laudant, *all men praise bravery* (brave things).

c. A neuter adjective may be used as an appositive or predicate noun with a noun of different gender (cf. § 187. *c*): as,—

trīste lupus stabulīs, *the wolf is a grievous thing for the sheepfold.*
varium et mūtābile semper fēmina, *woman is ever a changing and fickle thing.*

d. A neuter adjective is used in agreement with an Infinitive or a Substantive Clause: as,—

istūc ipsum nōn esse (Tusc. i. 12), *that very "not to be."*
hūmānum est errāre, *to err is human.*
aliud est errāre Caesarem nōlle, aliud nōlle miserērī (Lig. 16), *it is one thing to be unwilling that Cæsar should err, another to be unwilling that he should pity.*

3. Possessives.

190. Possessive and other derivative adjectives are often used in Latin where the English has the possessive case, or a noun with a preposition (cf. §§ 184. *d*, 197. *a*): as,—

pūgna Cannēnsis, *the fight at Cannæ.*
C. Blossius Cūmānus, *Caius Blossius of Cumæ.*
aliēna domus, *another man's house.*

a. Possessive and other derivative adjectives are often used substantively to denote some special class or relation (see § 197. *d*): as,—

nostrī, *our countrymen* or *men of our party.*
Sullānī, *the veterans of Sulla's army.*

4. Adjectives with Adverbial Force.

191. An adjective agreeing with the subject or object is often used to qualify the action of the verb, having the force of an adverb: as,—

prīmus vēnit, *he came first* (was the first to come).
laetī audiēre, *they were glad to hear.*
erat Rōmae frequēns (Rosc. Am. 16), *he was often at Rome.*

5. Comparatives and Superlatives.

192. When two qualities of an object are compared, both adjectives are in the comparative: as, —

longior quam **lātior** aciēs erat (Liv. xxvii. 48), *the line was longer than it was broad* (or, *rather long than broad*).

a. Where **magis** is used, both adjectives are in the positive: as, —

clārī magis quam **honestī** (Jug. 8), *more renowned than honorable.*

193. (RULE 5.) Superlatives (and more rarely comparatives) denoting order and succession — also **medius, cēterus, relicus** — usually designate not *what object*, but *what part of it*, is meant: as, —

summus mōns, *the top of the hill.*
reliquī captīvī, *the rest of the prisoners.*
in colle mediō (B. G. i. 24), *half way up the hill* (on the middle of the hill).

NOTE. — A similar use is found in such expressions as **sērā (multā)** nocte, *late at night.* But **medium viae**, *the middle of the way*; **multum diēī**, *much of the day*, also occur.

III. PRONOUNS.

1. Personal Pronouns.

194. The Personal Pronouns have, in general, the same constructions as nouns.

a. The personal pronouns are not expressed as subjects, except for distinction or emphasis (compare § 346. *d*): as, —

tē vocō, *I call you*; but
quis mē vocat? **ego** tē vocō, *who is calling me? I* (emphatic) *am calling you.*

b. (RULE 6.) The personal pronouns have two forms for the genitive plural, that in **-ūm** being used *partitively* (§ 216), and that in **-ī** oftenest *objectively* (cf. § 213. 2): as, —

māior **vestrūm**, *the elder of you.*
habētis ducem memorem **vestrī**, oblītum suī (Cat. iv. 19), *you have a leader who thinks* (is mindful) *of you and forgets* (is forgetful of) *himself.*
pars nostrūm, *a part* (*i.e.* some) *of us.*

NOTE. — The genitives **nostrūm**, **vestrūm** are occasionally used objectively (§ 217): as, **cupidus vestrūm** (Verr. iii. 224), *fond of you*; **custōs vestrūm** (Cat. iii. 29), *the guardian of you* (your guardian).

2. Demonstrative Pronouns.

195. Demonstrative pronouns are used either adjectively or substantively.

As adjectives, they follow the rules for the agreement of adjectives (§§ 186, 187).

As substantives, they are equivalent to personal pronouns. This use is regular in the oblique cases, especially of **is**. Thus, —

1. Personal: —

Caesar et exercitus **ēius**, *Cæsar and his army* (not **suus**). [But, Caesar exercitum **suum** dīmīsit, *Cæsar disbanded his* [own] *army*.]
hīs Caesar ita respondit, *to them Cæsar thus replied.*

2. Adjective: —

hōc proeliō factō, *after this battle was fought* (this battle having been, etc.).
eōdem proeliō, *in the same battle.*
[For special significations of the demonstratives, see § 102.]

a. The demonstratives are sometimes used as pronouns *of reference*, to indicate with emphasis a noun or phrase just mentioned: as, —

nūllam virtūs aliam mercēdem dēsīderat praeter **hanc** laudis (Arch. 28), *virtue wants no other reward except that* [just spoken of] *of praise.*

b. But the demonstrative as a pronoun of reference is commonly omitted, or some other construction is preferred: as, —

memoriae artem quam oblīviōnis mālō, *I prefer* (like more) *the art of memory to* (than) [that] *of forgetfulness.*

c. When a quality or act is ascribed with emphasis to a person or thing already named, **is** or **īdem** (often with the concessive **quidem**) is used to indicate that person or thing: as, —

vincula, **et ea** sempiterna (Cat. iv. 7), *imprisonment, and that perpetual.*
legiōnem **neque eam** plēnissimam dēspiciēbant (B. G. iii. 2), *they despised the single legion, and that not a very full one.*
tuus dolor hūmānus **is quidem** sed, etc., *your grief is human, to be sure, but*, etc.

d. An adjective pronoun usually agrees with an appositive or predicate noun, if there be one, rather than with the word to which it refers (cf. § 199): as, —

hic labor **hōc** opus est, *this is the toil, this the task* [namely, **revocāre gradum**, which would regularly take a neuter pronoun].

e. **Īdem**, *the same*, is often equivalent to an adverb or adverbial phrase (*also, too, yet, at the same time*): as, —

ōrātiō splendida et grandis et **eadem** in prīmīs facēta (Brut. 273), *an oration, brilliant, able, and very witty, too.*

f. The intensive **ipse**, *self*, is used with any of the other pronouns or a noun for the sake of emphasis: as, —

turpe mihi **ipsī** vidēbātur (Cic.), *even to me* (to me myself) *it seemed disgraceful.*
id ipsum, *that very thing.*

Remark. — The emphasis of **ipse** is often expressed in English by *just, very, mere*, etc. (see above examples).

g. **Ipse** is often used alone, substantively, as an emphatic pronoun of the third person: as, —

mihi satis, **ipsīs** nōn satis (Cic.), *enough for me, not for themselves.*
beātōs illōs quī cum adesse **ipsīs** nōn licēbat aderant tamen (id.), *happy they who, when it was not allowed them to attend in person, still were there.*
dī capitī **ipsīus** generīque reservent (Æn. viii. 484), *may the gods hold in reserve* [such a fate] *to fall on his own and his son-in-law's head.*

h. **Ipse** is often used alone, substantively, to emphasize an omitted subject of the first or second person: as, —

vōbīscum **ipsī** recordāminī (Cic.), *remember in your own minds* (yourselves with yourselves).

i. **Ipse**, used substantively, sometimes refers to a principal personage, to distinguish him from subordinate persons: as, —

ipse dīxit (cf. αὐτὸς ἔφα), HE (the Master) *said it.*

k. **Ipse** is often (**is** rarely) used instead of a reflexive. (Cf. § 196. *i.*)

l. **Ipse** usually agrees with the subject, even when the real emphasis is in English on a reflexive in the predicate: as, —

mē ipse cōnsōlor, *I console myself.* [Not **mē ipsum.**)

3. Reflexive Pronouns.

196. (RULE 7.) The Reflexive pronoun (**sē**),[1] and usually its corresponding possessive (**suus**), are used in some part of the predicate to refer to the subject of the sentence or clause: as, —

virtūs **sē** nōvit, *virtue knows itself.*
prōmīsit **sē** ventūrum [esse], *he promised that he would come.*
Brūtus amīcum **suum** occīdit, *Brutus killed his friend.*

a. In a subordinate clause of a compound sentence there is a double use of reflexives.

1. The Reflexive may always be used to refer to the subject of its own clause (*Direct Reflexive*): as, —

ex quō iūdicārī potest quantum habeat in **sē** bonī cōnstantia (B. G. i. 40), *from which it can be determined how much good firmness possesses* (has in itself).

[Caesar] nōluit eum locum vacāre, nē Germānī ē **suīs** fīnibus trānsīrent (B. G. i. 28), *Cæsar did not wish this place to lie vacant, for fear the Germans would cross over from their territories.*

2. If the subordinate clause expresses the words or thought of the subject of the main clause, the reflexive is regularly used to refer to that subject (*Indirect Reflexive*): as, —

petiērunt ut **sibi** licēret (B. G. i. 30), *they begged that it might be allowed them* (the petitioners).

Iccius nūntium ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium **sibi** submittātur, etc. (B. G. ii. 6), *sends him a message that unless relief be furnished him* (Iccius), etc.

sī obsidēs ab **eīs** (the Helvetians) **sibi** (Cæsar, who is the speaker) dentur, **sē** (Cæsar) cum **eīs** pācem esse factūrum (B. G. i. 14), [Cæsar said] *that if hostages were given him by them, he would make peace with them.*

NOTE. — Sometimes **is** or **ipse** is used as an Indirect Reflexive either from careless writing or to avoid ambiguity (cf. *i*): as, —

quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī vellent, nōn **sē** hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et māgnitūdinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter

[1] This seems to have been originally the personal pronoun of the third person, but it came by use to be purely reflexive.

ipsōs (the persons referred to by **sē** above) atque Ariovistum . . . timēre dīcēbant (B. G. i. 39), *those of them who wished to be thought less timid said they did not fear the enemy, but were afraid of the narrows and the vast extent of the forests which were between themselves and Ariovistus.*

audīstis nūper dīcere lēgātōs Tyndaritānōs Mercurium quī sacrīs anniversāriīs **apud eōs** colerētur Verris imperiō esse sublātum (Verr. iv. 84), *you have just heard the ambassadors from Tyndaris say that the statue of Mercury which was worshipped with annual rites among them was taken away*, etc. [Here Cicero wavers between **apud eōs colēbātur,** a remark of his own, and **apud sē colerētur**, the words of the *lēgātī*. **eōs** does not strictly refer to the ambassadors, but to the people — the **Tyndaritānī.**]

3. If the subordinate clause does not express the words or thought of the main subject, the reflexive is not regularly used, though it is occasionally found. Thus, —

sunt ita multī ut **eōs** carcer capere nōn possit (Cat. ii. 22), *they are so many that the prison cannot hold them.* [Here **sē** could not be used.]

ibi in proximīs villīs ita bipartītō fuērunt, ut Tiberis **inter eōs** et pōns interesset (Cat. iii. 5), *there they stationed themselves in the nearest farmhouses, in two divisions, in such a manner that the Tiber and the bridge were between them* (the divisions). [Here **inter sē** might be used, but it would refer to a purpose of the soldiers.]

b. The reflexive in a subordinate clause sometimes refers to the subject of a suppressed main clause: as, —

Paetus, omnēs librōs quōs frāter **suus** relīquisset mihi dōnāvit (Att. ii. 1, 12), *Pætus gave me all the books which* (as he said in the act of donation) *his brother had left* (*him*).

c. The reflexive may refer to any noun in its own clause which is so emphasized as to become in a manner the *subject of discourse* (cf. the note): as, —

Sōcratem cīvēs **suī** interfēcērunt, *Socrates was put to death by his own fellow-citizens.*

quī poterat salūs **sua cuiquam** nōn probārī (Mil. 81), *how can any one fail to approve his own safety?* [In this and the preceding example the emphasis is preserved in English by the change to the passive.]

hunc sī secūtī erunt **suī** comitēs (Cat. ii. 10), *this man, if his companions follow him.*

NOTE. — Occasionally the clause to which the reflexive really belongs is absorbed: as, —

studeō sānāre **sibi ipsōs** (Cat. ii. 17), *I am anxious to cure these men for their own benefit* (*i.e.* **ut sānī sibi sint**).

suō **sibi** gladiō (Plautus), *with his own sword.* [Here the clause is too indefinite to be supplied.]

d. The reflexive may follow a verbal noun or adjective: as, —

suī laus, *self-praise.*

impotēns **suī** (Q. C.), *without self-control.*

e. The reflexive may refer to the subject implied in an infinitive or verbal abstract used indefinitely: as, —

bellum est **sua** vitia nōsse (Cic.), *it is a fine thing to know one's own faults.*

cui prōposita sit cōnservātiō **suī** (Fin. v. 37), *one whose aim is self-preservation.*

f. **Inter sē**, *among themselves*, is regularly used to express reciprocal action: as, —

cohaerentia inter sē, *things consistent with each other.*

g. **Suus** is used for *one's own* as emphatically opposed to *that of others*, in any part of the sentence and with reference to any word in it: as, —

suīs flammīs dēlēte Fīdēnās (Liv. iv. 33), *destroy Fidenæ with its own fires* (the fires kindled by that city, figuratively). [Cf. Cat. i. 32.]

h. For reflexives of the first and second persons the oblique cases of the personal pronouns (**meī**, **tuī**, etc.) are used (see § 98. 2, *a*): as, —

mortī **mē** obtulī (Mil. 94), *I have exposed myself to death.*

hinc **tē** rēgīnae ad līmina perfer (Æn. i. 389), *do you go* (bear yourself) *hence to the queen's threshold.*

i. **Ipse** is often (**is** rarely) used instead of an *indirect reflexive*, to avoid ambiguity; and in later writers is sometimes found instead of the *direct reflexive* (cf. *a.* 2 and 3): as, —

cūr dē **suā** virtūte aut dē **ipsīus** dīligentiā dēspērārent (B. G. i. 40), *why* (he asked) *should they despair of their own courage or his diligence?*

4. Possessive Pronouns.

197. The Possessive pronouns are derivative adjectives, which take the gender, number, and case of the noun *to which they belong*, not those of the *possessor:* as, —

Caesar uxōrem **suam** repudiāvit, *Cæsar put away his wife.*

haec sunt **mea** ōrnāmenta, *these are my jewels.* [**mea** is neut. pl., though the speaker is a woman.]

a. (RULE 8.) The possessive pronouns are used instead of the genitive of a personal pronoun.

1. Always instead of the Possessive Genitive: as, —

domus mea, *my house.* [Never **domus meī.**]
pater noster, *our father.* [Never **pater nostrī.**]

NOTE 1. — In different languages the ideas associated with possessives are not always the same, and hence idiomatic uses differ. Thus *my eulogist* may, in Latin, be **laudātor nostrī** (Att. i. 14, 6), or, like the English, **laudātor noster** (see Att. i. 16, 5), with a different conception of the relation.

NOTE 2. — The possessive **cūius, -a, -um,** is rare: as, **cūium pecus?** *whose flock?* The genitive **cūius** is generally used instead.

2. Rarely instead of the Objective Genitive. Thus, regularly, —

suī dēspiciēns, *disdainful of himself.*
nōn sōlum **suī** dēprecātōrem, sed etiam accūsātōrem **meī**, *not only a mediator for himself, but an accuser of me* (Att. xi. 8).

But occasionally, —

ea quae faciēbat, **tuā** sē **fidūciā** facere dīcēbat (Verr. v. 176), *what he was doing, he said he did relying on you* (with your reliance).

b. The possessives have often the acquired meaning of *peculiar to*, or *favorable* or *propitious towards* the person or thing spoken of: as, —

[petere] ut **suā** clēmentiā āc mānsuētūdine ūtātur, *they asked* (they said) *that he would show his* [wonted] *clemency and humanity.*
īgnōrantī quem portum petat nūllus **suus** ventus est (Sen. Ep. 71. 3), *to him who knows not what port he is bound to, no wind is fair* (his own).

c. The possessives are regularly omitted (like other pronouns) when they are plainly implied in the context: as, —

amīcum grātulātur, *he greets his friend.* [**amīcum suum** would be distinctive, *his friend* (and not another's); **suum amīcum,** emphatic, *his own friend.*]

d. Possessives are often used substantively (§ 190. *a*): as, —

nostrī, *our countrymen*, or *men of our party.*
suōs continēbāt (B. G. i. 15), *he held his men in check.*
flamma extrēma meōrum (Æn. ii. 431), *last flames of my countrymen.*

e. (RULE 9.) A possessive representing a genitive may have a genitive in apposition (§ 184. *d*): as, —

meā sōlīus causā, *for my sake only.*
nostra omnium patria, *the country of us all.*

5. Relative Pronouns.

NOTE. — A Relative pronoun is properly an Adjective, in agreement with some word expressed or implied either in its own clause, or (often) in the antecedent (demonstrative) clause. The full construction would require the antecedent to be expressed in both clauses, with more commonly a corresponding *demonstrative* to which the relative would refer: as, —

iter in **ea loca** facere coepit, **quibus in locīs** esse Germānōs audiēbat (B. G. iv. 7), *he began to march into those* PLACES *in which* PLACES *he heard the Germans were.*

Relatives serve two uses: —

1. as Nouns (or adjectives) in their own clause: as, —

eī **quī** Alesiae obsidēbantur, *those who were besieged at Alesia.*

2. as Connectives: as, —

T. Balventiō, **quī** superiōre annō prīmum pīlum dūxerat, *Titus Balventio, who the year before had been a centurion of the first rank.*

In this latter use they are often equivalent merely to a demonstrative: as, —

quae cum ita sint (= cum **ea** ita sint), *since these things are so.*

197a. A Relative pronoun indicates a relation between its own clause and some substantive. This substantive is called the Antecedent of the relative.

Thus, in the sentence —

eum nihil dēlectābat, quod fās esset, *nothing pleased him which was right,*

the relative **quod** connects its antecedent **nihil** with the predicate **fās esset**, indicating a relation between the two.

198. (RULE 3.) A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in GENDER and NUMBER; but its CASE depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands: as, —

puer **quī** vēnit abiit, *the boy who came has gone away.*
liber **quem** legis meus est, *the book you are reading is mine.*
via **quā** ambulat dūcit ad urbem, *the path he walks in leads to the city.*

This rule applies to all relative words so far as they are variable in form: as, **quālis, quantus, quīcumque.**

NOTE. — The relative may be the subject or object in its own clause, or a modifier of either: as, —

eōs enim cīvēs pūgna illa sustulerat **quibus** nōn modo vīvīs sed etiam victōribus incolumis et flōrēns cīvitās esse posset (Phil. xiv. 23).

a. If a relative has two or more antecedents, it follows the rules for the agreement of predicate adjectives (§§ 186, 187): as, —

fīlium et fīliam, **quōs** valdē dīlēxit, ūnō tempore āmīsit, *he lost a son and a daughter at the same time, whom he dearly loved.*

ōtium atque dīvitiae **quae** prīma mortālēs putant (Sall. Cat. 36), *idleness and wealth which men count the first* (objects of desire).

199. A relative generally agrees in gender and number with an appositive or predicate noun in its own clause, rather than with an antecedent of different gender or number (cf. § 195. *d*): as, —

mare etiam **quem** Neptūnum esse dīcēbās (N. D. iii. 52), *the sea, too, which you said was Neptune.* [Not **quod.**]

Thēbae ipsae, **quod** Boeōtiae caput est (Liv. xlii. 44), *even Thebes, which is the chief city of Bœotia.* [Not **quae.**]

NOTE. — This rule is occasionally violated: as, —

flūmen **quod** appellātur Tamesis (B. G. v. 11), *a river which is called the Thames.*

a. A relative occasionally agrees with its antecedent in case (by *attraction*): as, —

sī aliquid agās **eōrum quōrum** cōnsuēstī (Fam. v. 14), *if you should do something of what you are used to do.* [For **eōrum quae.**]

b. A relative may agree in gender and number with an *implied* antecedent: as, —

quārtum genus . . . **quī** aere vetere aliēnō vacillant (Cat. ii. 21), *a fourth class, that are staggering under old debts.*

NOTE. — So regularly when the antecedent is implied in a possessive pronoun: as, —

nostra **quī** adsumus salūs, *the safety of us who are present.* [Here **quī** agrees with the **nostrūm** implied in **nostra.**]

200. The antecedent noun sometimes appears in both clauses; but usually only in the one that precedes. Sometimes it is wholly omitted. Thus, —

a. The antecedent may be repeated in the relative clause: as, —

locī nātūra erat haec quem **locum** nostrī dēlēgerant (B. G. ii. 18), *the nature of the ground which our men had chosen was this.*

b. The antecedent may appear only in the relative clause: as, —

quās **rēs** in cōnsulātū nostrō gessimus attigit hīc versibus (Arch. 28), *he has touched in verse the things which I did in my consulship.*

urbem quam statuō vestra est (Æn. i. 573), *the city which I am founding is yours.*

NOTE. — In this case a demonstrative (**is**, **ille**, or **hīc**) usually stands in the antecedent clause: as, —

quae pars cīvitātis calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, **ea** prīnceps poenās persolvit (B. G. i. 12), *that part of the state which had brought disaster on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty.*

c. The antecedent may be entirely omitted, especially if it is indefinite: as, —

quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat (B. G. iv. 25), [the man] *who bore the eagle of the tenth legion.*

quī cōgnōscerent mīsit (id. i. 21), *he sent* [men] *to reconnoitre* (who should, etc.).

d. A predicate adjective (especially a superlative) agreeing with its antecedent in gender and number may stand in the relative clause: as, —

vāsa ea quae **pulcherrima** apud eum vīderat (Verr. iv. 63), *those most beautiful vessels which he had seen at his house.* [Nearly equivalent to *the vessels of which he had seen some very beautiful ones.*]

e. The phrase **id quod** or **quae rēs** is used (instead of **quod** alone) to refer to a group of words or an idea: —

[obtrēctātum est] Gabīniō dīcam anne Pompēiō? an utrīque — **id quod** est vērius? (Manil. 57), *an affront is offered — shall I say to Gabinius or to Pompey? or — which is truer — to both?*

multum sunt in vēnātiōnibus . . . **quae rēs** vīrēs alit (B. G. iv. 1), *they spend much time in hunting, which* [practice] *increases their strength.* [Cf. B. G. ii. 5.]

NOTE. — But **quod** alone often occurs: as, —

Cassius noster, **quod** mihi māgnae voluptātī fuit, hostem reiēcerat (Fam. ii. 10), *our friend Cassius — which was a great satisfaction to me — had driven back the enemy.*

201. In the use of relatives, the following points are to be observed: —

a. The relative is never omitted in Latin, as it often is in English. Thus, —

liber quem mihi dedistī, ***the book you gave me.***
is sum quī semper fuī, ***I am the same man I always was.***

b. A relative clause in Latin often takes the place of some other construction in English; particularly of a participle, an appositive, or a noun of agency: as, —

lēgēs quae nunc sunt, ***the existing laws*** (the laws which now exist).
Caesar quī Galliam vīcit, ***Cæsar the conqueror of Gaul*** (who conquered Gaul).

c. In formal or emphatic discourse, the relative clause usually comes first, often containing the antecedent noun (cf. § 200. *b*): as, —

quae mala cum multīs patimur, **ea** nōbīs leviōra videntur, ***the evils we suffer*** [in common] ***with many, seem to us lighter.***

d. The antecedent, when in apposition with the main clause, or with some word of it, is put in the relative clause: as, —

fīrmī amīcī, cūius **generis** est māgna pēnūria, ***steadfast friends, a class of which there is a great lack*** (of which class).

e. A relative may stand (even with another relative or an interrogative) at the beginning of a sentence or clause, where in English a demonstrative must be used: as, —

quae quī audiēbant, ***and those who heard this*** (which things).
quae cum ita sint, ***and since these things are so.***
quōrum quod simile factum (Cat. iv. 13), ***what deed of theirs like this?***

f. 1. A relative adverb is regularly used in referring to an antecedent in the Locative case: as, —

mortuus Cūmīs **quō** sē contulerat (Liv. ii. 21), ***having died at Cumæ, whither he had retired.*** [Here **in quam urbem** might be used, but not **in quās.**]

2. So, often, to express any relation of place instead of the formal relative pronoun (cf. *whence, whereto, wherewith*): as, —

locus **quō** aditus nōn erat, ***a place to which*** (whither) ***there was no access.***
rēgna, **unde** genus dūcis, ***the kingdom from which you derive your race.***

g. The relatives **quī, quālis, quantus, quot,** etc., are often rendered simply by AS[1] in English (§ 106. *b*): as, —

idem **quod** semper, ***the same as always.***
tālis dux quālem Hannibalem nōvimus, ***such a chief as we know Hannibal*** (to have been).

[1] The English *as* in this use is strictly a relative, though invariable in form.

h. The general construction of relatives is found in clauses introduced by relative or temporal adverbs: as, **ubi, quō, unde, cum, quārē**.

6. Indefinite Pronouns.

202. The Indefinite pronouns are used to indicate that *some* person or thing is meant, without designating *what one*.

NOTE. — For the meanings of the compounds of **quī** and **quis**, see § 105.

a. Of the particular indefinites meaning *some* or *any* (**quis, quispiam, nesciō quis, aliquis, quīdam**), the simple **quis** is least definite, **quīdam** most definite: as, —

dīxerit **quis** (**quispiam**), *some one may say.*

aliquī philosophī ita putant, *some philosophers think so.* [**quīdam** would mean *certain particular persons* defined to the speaker's mind.]

habitant hīc **quaedam** mulierēs pauperculae, *some poor women live here* [*i.e.* some women he knows of; *some women or other* would be **aliquae** or **nesciō quae**].

b. In a *particular* negative **aliquis** (**aliquī**) is regularly used, where in a *universal* negative **quisquam** (subst.) or **ūllus** (adj.) would be required: as, —

iūstitia numquam nocet **cuiquam** quī eam habet (Cic.), *justice never does harm to anybody who possesses it.* [**alicui** would mean *to somebody who possesses it.*]

sine **aliquō** metū, [you cannot do this] *without some fear.*

sine **ūllō** metū, [you may do this] *without any fear.*

NOTE. — These pronouns are used in like manner in conditional and other sentences (§ 105. *h*): as, —

sī **quisquam**, ille sapiēns fuit (Læl. 9), *if any man was* (ever) *a sage, he was.*

dum praesidia **ūlla** fuērunt (Rosc. Am. 126), *while there were any armed forces* (till they ceased to be).

c. Of the general indefinites, **quīvīs** and **quīlibet** (*any you will*), **utervīs** (*either you will*, of two), are used chiefly in affirmative, **quisquam** and **ūllus** (*any at all*) in negative, interrogative, or conditional clauses: as, —

cuivīs potest accidere quod **cuiquam** potest, *what can happen to any* [one] *man can happen to any man* [whatever].

nōn cuivīs hominī contingit adīre Corinthum, *it is not every man's luck to go to Corinth.* [**nōn cuiquam** would mean *not any man's.*]

minus habeō vīrium quam **vestrūm utervīs**, *I have less strength than either of you.*

quidlibet modo **aliquid** (Cic.), *anything you will, provided it be something.*

cūr **cuiquam** mīsī prius, *why did I send to anybody before* [you]*?*

d. The distributives **quisque** (*every*), **uterque** (*each*), and **ūnus quisque** (*every single one*) are used in general assertions. They are equivalent to a plural, and sometimes have a plural verb (cf. § 205. *c.* 2): as, —

bonus liber melior est **quisque** quō māior, *the larger a good book is, the better* (each good book is better [in the same measure] as it is larger).

ambō exercitūs suās **quisque abeunt** domōs, *both armies go away, every man to his home.*

uterque utrīque erat exercitus in cōnspectū, *each army was in sight of the other* (each to each).

pōnite ante oculōs **ūnumquemque** rēgum, *set before your eyes each of the kings.*

e. **Quisque** is regularly placed in a dependent clause, if there is one:

quō quisque est sollertior, hōc docet īrācundius (Rosc. Com. 31), *the keener-witted a man is, the more impatiently he teaches* (as each is so, etc.).

NOTE. — **Quisque** is generally post-positive. Thus, **suum cuique**, *to every man his own.*

f. **Nēmō**, *no one*, is used: either

As a substantive: as, —

nēmō fit repentē turpissimus, *no one suddenly becomes absolutely base.*

As an adjective pronoun: as, —

vir **nēmō** bonus (Leg. ii. 41), *no good man.*

NOTE. — Even when used as a substantive, **nēmō** may take a noun in apposition: as, —

nēmō scrīptor, *nobody* [who is] *a writer.*

7. *Alius* and *Alter.*

203. The expressions **alter**, . . . **alter**, *the one . . . the other*, **alius** . . . **alius**, *one . . . another*, may be used in pairs to denote either *division* of a group or *reciprocity* of action: as, —

arma ab **aliīs** posita ab **aliīs** ērepta sunt (Marc. 31), *arms were laid down by some and were snatched from others.*

alterī dīmicant, **alterī** victōrem timent (Fam. vi. 3), *one party fights, the other fears the victor.*

hī frātrēs **alter alterum** amant, *these brothers love one another.*

alius alium percontāmur, *we ask each other.*

a. **Alius** means simply *other*, *another* (of an indefinite number); **alter**, *the other* (of two), often the *second* in a series; **cēterī** and **reliquī**, *all the rest*, *the others;* **alteruter**, *one of the two*. Thus, —

quid **aliud** agis, *what else are you doing* (what other thing)?

ūnī epistulae respondī, veniō ad **alteram** (Fam. ii. 17. 6), *one letter I have answered, I come to the other.*

alterum genus (Cat. ii. 19), *the second class.*

iēcissem ipse mē potius in profundum ut **cēterōs** cōnservārem (Sest. 45), *I should have rather thrown myself into the deep to save the rest.*

Servīlius cōnsul, **reliquīque** magistrātūs (B. C. iii. 21), *Servilius the consul and the rest of the magistrates.*

cum sit necesse **alterutrum** vincere (Fam. vi. 3), *when it must be that one of the two should prevail.*

b. **Alius** and **alter** are often used to express *one* as well as *another* (*the other*) of the objects referred to: as, —

alter cōnsulum, *one of the* [two] *consuls.*

aliud est maledīcere, **aliud** accūsāre (Cic.), *it is one thing to slander, another to accuse.*

c. **Alius** repeated in another case, or with an adverb from the same stem, expresses shortly a double statement: as, —

alius aliud petit, *one man seeks one thing, one another* (another seeks another thing).

alius aliā viā cīvitātem auxērunt (Liv. i. 21), *they enlarged the State, each in his own way.*

IV. VERBS.

1. Verb and Subject.

204. (RULE 4.) A Finite verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person: as, —

ego statuō, *I resolve.*

silent lēgēs inter arma, *the laws are dumb in time of war.*

NOTE. — In verb-forms containing a participle, the participle agrees with the subject in gender and number (§ 186): as, —

ōrātiō est **habita**, *the plea was delivered.*
bellum **exortum** est, *a war arose.*

a. A verb having a relative as its subject takes the person of the expressed or implied antecedent: as, —

adsum quī **fēcī** (Æn. ix. 427), *here am I who did it.*

b. The verb sometimes agrees in number, a participle in the verb-form in number and gender, with an appositive or predicate noun: as, —

nōn omnis error stultitia est **dīcenda** (Div. ii. 90), *not every error should be called folly.*

Corinthus lūmen Graeciae **exstinctum** est, *Corinth, the light of Greece, is put out.*

2. Double Subject.

205. Two or more singular subjects take a verb in the plural: as, —

pater et avus **mortuī sunt**, *his father and grandfather are dead.*

a. When subjects are of different *persons*, the verb is in the *first* person rather than the *second*, and in the *second* rather than the third: as, —

sī tū et Tullia **valētis** ego et Cicerō **valēmus** (Fam. xiv. 5), *if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.* [Notice that the first person is also *first in order*, not last, as by courtesy in English.]

NOTE. — In case of different genders a participle in a verb-form follows the rule for predicate adjectives; see § 187. *b*, *c*.

b. If the subjects are connected by disjunctives, or if they are considered as a single whole, the verb is usually singular: as, —

quem **neque** fidēs **neque** iūsiūrandum **neque** illum misericordia **repressit** (Ter. Ad. 306), *not faith, nor oath, nay, nor mercy, checked him.*

Senātus populusque Rōmānus **intellegit** (Fam. v. 8), *the Roman Senate and people understand.* But, — neque Caesar neque ego **habitī essēmus** (Fam. xi. 20), *neither C. nor I should have been considered.*

c. A collective noun commonly takes a verb in the singular: as, —

Senātus haec **intellegit** (Cat. i. 2), *the Senate is aware of this.*

ad hīberna exercitus **redit** (Liv. xxi. 22), *the army returns to winter quarters.*

1. But the plural is often found with collective nouns when *individuals* are thought of: as, —

pars praedās **agēbant** (Jug. 32), *a part brought in booty.*
cum tanta **multitūdō** lapidēs **cōnicerent** (B. G. ii. 6), *when such a crowd was throwing stones.*

NOTE. — The point of view may change in the course of a sentence: as, —

equitātum omnem ... **quem** habēbat praemīttit, **quī videant** (B. G. i. 15), *he sent ahead all the cavalry he had, to see* (who should see).

2. **Quisque** has very often a plural verb, but may be considered as in apposition with a plural subject implied (cf. § 202. *d*): as, —

sibi quisque habeant quod suum est (Plaut. Curc.), *let every one keep his own* (let them keep every man his own).

d. When a verb belongs to two or more subjects *separately*, it may agree with one and be understood with the others: as, —

intercēdit M. Antōnius et Cassius tribūnī plēbis (B. C. i. 2), *Antony and Cassius, tribunes of the people, interpose.*

3. Incomplete Sentences.

206. The subject of the verb is sometimes omitted. Thus, —

a. A personal pronoun, as subject, is usually omitted unless emphatic. Thus, —

loquor, *I speak.* But, ego loquor, *it is I that speak.*

b. An *indefinite* subject is often omitted.

This is usually a plural, as in **dīcunt**, **ferunt**, **perhibent** (*they say*); but sometimes singular, as in **inquit** (Tusc. i. 93), *one says* (referring to a class of reasoners just spoken of).

c. The verb is often omitted. Thus, —

1. **Dīcō**, **faciō**, **agō**, and other verbs in familiar phrases: as, —

quōrsum haec [spectant], *what does this aim at?*
ex ungue leōnem [cōgnōscēs], *you will know a lion by his claw.*
quid multa, *what need of many words* (why should I say much)?
quid? quod, *what of this, that,* etc. (what shall I say of this, that, etc.)? [A form of transition.]

2. The copula **sum**, very commonly in the indicative and infinitive, rarely (except by late authors) in the subjunctive: as, —

tū coniūnx (*Æn.* iv. 113), *you* [are] *his wife.*
omnia praeclāra rāra (Læl. 79), *all the best things are rare.*
accipe quae peragenda prius (Æn. vi. 136), *hear what is first to be accomplished.* [Direct: **quae peragenda prius?**]

V. PARTICLES.

1. Adverbs.

207. (RULE 10.) Adverbs are used to modify Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs.

a. A Demonstrative or Relative adverb is often equivalent to the corresponding Pronoun with a preposition (see § 201. *f*): as, —

eō mīlitēs impōnere (B. G. i. 42), *on them* (thereon, on the horses) *he puts the soldiers.*

quī eum necāsset unde ipse nātus esset (Rosc. Am. 71), *one who should have killed his own father* (him whence he had his birth).

b. The adverbs **propius**, *near;* **proximē**, *next* (like the adjectives **propior, proximus**); **prīdiē**, *the day before;* **postrīdiē**, *the day after*, are sometimes followed by the accusative (see § 261. *a*).

The adverbs **palam**, *openly;* **procul**, *afar;* **simul**, *at the same time*, are sometimes followed by the ablative (see § 261. *b*).

NOTE. — **Prīdiē** and **postrīdiē** are often used with the genitive. **Clam**, *without the knowledge of*, may take the accusative, the ablative, or the genitive (§ 261. *c*).

c. Many perfect participles used as nouns regularly retain the adverb which modified them as participles: as, —

praeclārē factum, *a glorious deed* (a thing gloriously done).

d. Very rarely adverbs are used with nouns which contain a verbal idea (cf. § 188. *d*): as, —

populus lātē rēx (Æn. i. 21), *a people ruling far and wide.*
hinc abitiō (Plaut.), *a going away from here.*

2. Conjunctions.

NOTE. — For the classification of conjunctions, see §§ 154, 155.

208. Copulative and Disjunctive Conjunctions connect similar constructions, and are regularly followed by the same case or mood that precedes them: as, —

scrīptum senātuī et populō (Cat. iii. 10), *written to the senate and people.*

ut eās [partīs] sānārēs et cōnfīrmārēs (Mil. 68), *that you might cure and strengthen those parts.*

neque meā prūdentiā **neque** hūmānīs cōnsiliīs frētus (Cat. ii. 29), *relying neither on my own foresight nor on human wisdom.*

a. Conjunctions of Comparison (as **ut**, **quam**, **tanquam**, **quasi**) also commonly connect similar constructions: as, —

hīs igitur **quam** physicīs potius crēdendum exīstimās (Div. ii. 37), *do you think these are more to be trusted than the natural philosophers?*

ut nōn omne vīnum **sīc** nōn omnis nātūra vetustāte coacēscit (Cat. Maj. 65), *as every wine does not sour with age, so* [does] *not every nature.*

Cf. pērge **ut** īnstituistī (Rep. ii. 22), *go on as you have begun.*

b. Two or more co-ordinate words, phrases, or sentences are often put together without the use of conjunctions (*Asyndeton*): as, —

omnēs dī, hominēs, *all gods and men.*

līberī, servī, *freemen and slaves.*

1. With more than two co-ordinate words, etc., a conjunction, if used at all, must be used with all (or all except the first): as, —

aut aere aliēnō **aut** māgnitūdine tribūtōrum **aut** iniūriā potentiōrum (B. G. vi. 13), *by debt, excessive taxation, or oppression on the part of the powerful.*

summā fidē **et** cōnstantiā **et** iūstitiā, *with perfect good faith,* [and] *consistency, and justice.* [Not **fidē cōnstantiā et iūstitiā**, as in English.]

2. But words are often so divided into groups that the members of the groups omit the conjunction (or express it), while the groups themselves express the conjunction (or omit it): as, —

propudium illud **et** portentum, L. Antōnius īnsīgne odium omnium hominum (Phil. xiv. 8), *that wretch and monster, Lucius Antonius, the abomination of all men.*

3. The enclitic **-que** is sometimes used with the last member of a series, even when there is no grouping apparent: as, —

vōce vultū mōtūque (Brut. 110), *by voice, expression, and gesture.*

multō sūdōre labōre vigiliīsque (Caecil. 72), *with much fatigue, toil, and waking.*

c. Two adjectives belonging to the same noun are regularly connected by a conjunction: as, —

multae **et** gravēs causae, *many weighty reasons.*

d. Many words properly adverbs may be used correlatively, and so become conjunctions, partly or wholly losing their adverbial force (see § 107). Such are —

cum . . . tum, *while . . . so also* (*both . . . and*).
tum . . . tum, *now . . . now.*
modo . . . modo, *now . . . now.*
simul . . . simul, *at the same time . . . at the same time* (at once . . . as well as).
quā . . . quā, *now . . . now.*
nunc . . . nunc, *now . . . now.*

Thus, —

cum difficile est, **tum** nē aecum quidem (Læl. 26), *not only is it difficult, but even unjust.*
modo ait **modo** negat (Ter. Eun. 712), *now he says yes, now no.*
simul grātiās agit, **simul** grātulātur (Q. C. vi. 7, 15), *he thanks him and at the same time congratulates him.*

e. Two conjunctions of similar meaning are often used together, for the sake of emphasis or to bind a sentence more closely to what precedes: as, **at vērō,** *but in truth, still, however;* **itaque ergō,** *accordingly then;* **namque,** *for;* **et-enim,** *for, you see* (§ 156. *d*).

f. For conjunctions introducing subjunctive clauses, see §§ 316 *ff.*

3. Negative Particles.

NOTE. — For the list of negative particles, see § 149. *e.*

209. In the use of the Negative Particles, the following points are to be observed: —

a. Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative, as in English (§ 150): as, **nēmō nōn videt,** *everybody sees.*

But a *general* negation is not destroyed —

1. By a following **nē . . . quidem,** *not even,* or **nōn modo,** *not only:* as, —

numquam tū **nōn modo** ōtium, sed **nē** bellum **quidem** nisi nefārium concupīstī (Cat. i. 25), *not only have you never desired repose, but you have never desired any war except one which was infamous.*

2. By succeeding negatives, each introducing a separate subordinate member: as, —

eaque **nesciēbant nec** ubi **nec** quālia essent (Tusc. iii. 4), *they knew not where or of what kind these things were.*

3. By **neque** introducing a co-ordinate member: as, —

nequeō satis mīrārī **neque** cōnicere (Ter. Eun. 547), *I cannot wonder enough nor conjecture.*

b. The negative is frequently joined to some other word. Hence the forms of negation in Latin differ from those in English in many expressions. Thus, —

neque (nec), *and not, but not* (neither . . . nor) (not **et nōn**).
nec quisquam, *and no one* (nor any one) (not **et nēmō**).
nūllī *or* **neutrī** crēdō, *I do not believe either* (I believe neither) (not **nōn crēdō ūllī**).
negō haec esse vēra, *I say this is not true* (I deny that these things are true) (not **dīcō nōn esse**).
sine ūllō perīculō (less commonly **cum nūllō**), *with no danger* (without any danger).
nihil unquam audīvī iūcundius, *I never heard anything more amusing* (nothing more amusing have I ever heard).

c. A statement is often made emphatic by denying its contrary (*Litotes*): as, —

nōn haec **sine** nūmine dīvōm ēveniunt (Æn. ii. 777), *these things do not occur without the will of the gods.*
haec **nōn nimis** exquīrō (Att. vii. 18, 3), *not very much, i.e. very little.*

NOTE. — Compare **nōnnūllus, nōnnēmō**, etc. (§ 150. *a*).

d. The particle **immō**, *nay*, is used to contradict some part of a preceding statement or question, or its form; in the latter case, the same statement is often repeated in a stronger form, so that **immō** becomes nearly equivalent to *yes* (*nay but, nay rather*): as, —

causa igitur nōn bona est? **immō** optima (Att. ix. 7), *is the cause then not a good one? on the contrary, the best.*

e. **Minus**, *less* (especially with **sī**, *if*, **quō**, *in order that*), and **minimē**, *least*, often have a negative force. Thus, —

sī **minus** possunt, *if they cannot.* [For **quō minus**, see §§ 319. *c*, 331. *e*.]
audācissimus ego ex omnibus? **minimē** (Rosc. Am. 2), *am I the boldest of them all? by no means* (not at all).

[For *do not* in Prohibitions, see § 269. *a*.]

VI. QUESTIONS.

210. Questions are either Direct or Indirect.

1. A Direct Question gives the exact words of the speaker: as, —

quid est? *what is it?*

2. An Indirect Question gives the substance of the question, adapted to the form of the sentence in which it is quoted. It depends on a verb or other expression of *asking*, *doubting*, *knowing*, or the like: as, —

rogāvit **quid esset**, *he asked what it was.* [Direct: **quid est**, *what is it?*]
nesciō **ubi sim**, *I know not where I am.* [Direct: **ubi sum**, *where am I?*]

Questions in Latin are introduced by special interrogative words, and are not distinguished by the order of words, as in English.

NOTE. — For the list of Interrogative Particles, see § 149. *d.*

a. (RULE 11.) A question *of simple fact*, requiring the answer YES or NO, is formed by adding the enclitic **-ne** to the emphatic word: as, —

tū**ne** id veritus es (Cic.), *did* YOU *fear that?*
hīci**ne** vir usquam nisi in patriā moriētur (Mil. 104), *shall* THIS *man die anywhere but in his native land?*

b. The interrogative particle **-ne** is sometimes omitted: as, —

patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs (Cat. i. 1), *do you not see that your schemes are manifest* (you do not see, eh)?

NOTE — In such cases no sign of interrogation appears except in the punctuation, and it is often doubtful whether the sentence is a question or an ironical statement.

c. (RULE 12.) When the enclitic **-ne** is added to a negative word, as in **nōnne**, — an *affirmative* answer is expected. The particle **num** suggests a *negative* answer. Thus, —

nōnne animadvertis (N. D. iii. 89), *do you not observe?*
num dubium est (Rosc. Am. 107), *there is no doubt, is there?*

d. The particle **-ne** often when added to the verb, less commonly when added to some other word, has the force of **nōnne**: as, —

meministī**ne** mē in senātū dīcere (Cat. i. 7), *don't you remember my saying in the Senate?*
rēctē**ne** interpretor sententiam tuam (Tusc. iii. 37), *do I not rightly interpret your meaning?*

NOTE. — This was evidently the original meaning of **-ne**; but in most cases the negative force was lost, and **-ne** was used merely to express a question. So the English interrogative *no?* shades off into *eh?*

e. A question concerning *some special circumstance* is formed by prefixing to the sentence an interrogative pronoun or adverb (§ 106), as in English: as, —

quid est quod iam amplius exspectēs (Cat. i. 6), *what is there for you to look for any more?*
quō igitur haec spectant (Fam. vi. 6), *whither, then, is all this tending?*
Īcare, ubi es (Ov. M. viii. 232), *Icarus, where are you?*

REMARK. — A question of this form becomes an exclamation by changing the inflection of the voice: as, **quālis vir erat!** *what a man he was!* **quot calamitātēs passī sumus!** *how many misfortunes have we suffered!*

f. The particles **nam** (enclitic) and **tandem** may be added to interrogative pronouns and adverbs for the sake of emphasis: as, —

quisnam est, *pray who is it?* [**quis tandem est?** would be stronger.]
ubinam gentium sumus (Cat. i. 9), *where in the world are we?*
in quā tandem urbe hōc disputant (Mil. 7), *in what city, pray, do they maintain this?*

In indirect questions **num** loses its peculiar force (§ 210. *c*).

Double Questions.

211. A Double or Alternative Question is an inquiry as to which of two or more supposed cases is true.

In Double or Alternative Questions, **utrum** or **-ne**, *whether*, stands in the first member; **an, anne,** *or*, **annōn, necne,** *or not*, in the second; and usually **an** in the third, if there be one: as, —

utrum nescīs, **an** prō nihilō id putās (Fam. x. 26), *is it that you don't know, or do you think nothing of it?*
quaerō servōs**ne an** līberōs (Rosc. Am. 74), *I ask whether slaves or free.*

REMARK. — **Annōn** is more common in direct questions, **necne** in indirect.

a. The interrogative particle is often omitted in the first member; in which case **an** or **-ne** (**anne, necne**) may stand in the second: as, —

Gabīniō dīcam **anne** Pompēiō **an** utrīque (Man. 57), *shall I say to Gabinius, or to Pompey, or to both?*
sunt haec tua verba **necne** (Tusc. iii. 41), *are these your words or not?*

b. Sometimes the first member is omitted or implied, and **an** (**anne**) alone asks the question, — usually with indignation or surprise : as, —

an tū miserōs putās illōs (Tusc. i. 13), *what! do you think those men wretched?*

c. Sometimes the second member is omitted or implied, and **utrum** may ask a question to which there is no alternative : as, —

utrum in clārissimīs est cīvibus is, quem . . . (Flacc. 45), *is he among the noblest citizens, whom*, etc.?

d. The following table exhibits the various forms of alternative questions : —

utrum . . . an . . . an	**-ne . . . an**
utrum . . . annōn	—— **. . . -ne, necne**
—— **. . . an (anne)**	**-ne . . . necne**

Question and Answer.

212. There is no one Latin word in common use meaning simply *yes* or *no*. In answering a question *affirmatively*, the verb or some other emphatic word is generally repeated; in answering *negatively*, the verb, etc., with **nōn** or a similar negative : as, —

valetne, *is he well?* **valet,** *yes* (he is well).
eratne tēcum, *was he with you?* **nōn erat,** *no* (he was not).
numquidnam novī, *there is nothing new, is there?* **nihil sānē,** *oh! nothing.*

a. An intensive or negative particle, a phrase, or a clause is sometimes used to answer a direct question : thus, —

1. For YES : —

etiam, *even so, yes*, etc.
vērō, *in truth, true, no doubt, yes.*
ita, *so, true*, etc.
sānē, *surely* (soundly), *no doubt, doubtless*, etc.
certē, *certainly, most assuredly, unquestionably*, etc.
ita vērō, *certainly* (so in truth), etc.
sānē quidem, *yes, no doubt*, etc.
ita est, *it is so, true*, etc.

2. For NO : —

nōn, *not* [so].
nūllō modō, *by no means.*
minimē, *not at all* (in the smallest degree, cf. § 209. *e*).
minimē vērō, *no, not by any means; oh! no*, etc.
nōn quidem, *why, no; certainly not*, etc.
nōn hercle vērō, *why, gracious, no* (certainly not, by Hercules)!

Examples are :—

quidnam? an laudātiōnēs? **ita**, *why, what? is it eulogies? just so.*

aut etiam aut **nōn** respondēre (Acad. ii. 104), *to answer* (categorically) *yes or no.*

estne ut fertur forma? **sānē** (Ter. Eun. 360), *is* [she] *as handsome as they say she is* (is her beauty as it is said)*? oh! yes.*

fugisne hinc? **ego vērō** ac lubēns (Ter. And. 337), *will you clear out from here? indeed I will, and be glad to.*

miser ergō Archelāus? **certē** sī iniūstus (Tusc. v. 35), *was Archelaus wretched then? certainly, if he was unjust.*

haec contemnitis? **minimē** (De Or. ii. 295), *do you despise these things? not at all.*

volucribusne et ferīs? **minimē vērō** (Tusc. i. 104), *to the birds and beasts? why, of course not.*

ex tuī animī sententiā tu uxōrem habēs? **nōn hercle**, ex meī animī sententiā (De Or. ii. 260), *Lord! no*, etc.

b. In answering a double question, one member of the alternative, or some part of it, must be repeated : as,—

tūne an frāter erat, *was it you or your brother?* ego [eram], *it was I.*

REMARK.—From double questions must be distinguished those which are in themselves single, but of which *some detail only* is alternative. These have the common disjunctive particles **aut** or **vel** (**-ve**) : as,—

quaerō num iniūstē **aut** improbē fēcerit (Off. iii. 54), *I ask whether he acted unjustly or even dishonestly.*

Here there is no double question. The only inquiry is whether the man did *either* of the two things supposed, not *which* of the two he did.

CONSTRUCTION OF CASES.

1. GENITIVE.

NOTE.—The Genitive is regularly used to express the relation of one noun to another. Hence it is sometimes called the *adjective* case, to distinguish it from the Dative and the Ablative, which may be called *adverbial* cases. Its uses may be classified as follows :—

I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS:
1. Of Possession (§ 214).
2. Of Source developed into Material (§ 214. *e*).
3. Of Quality (§ 215).
4. Of the **Whole**, after words designating a Part (Partitive, § 216).
5. With Nouns of Action and Feeling (§ 217).

II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES: { 1. Relative adjective (or Verbal) (§ 218. *a*, *b*). 2. Of Specification (later use) (§ 218. *c*).

III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS: { 1. Of Memory, Feeling, etc. (§§ 219, 221–23). 2. Of Accusing, etc. (Charge or Penalty) (§ 220).

I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

213. (RULE 14.) A noun used to limit or define another, and *not* meaning the same person or thing, is put in the Genitive.

This relation is most frequently expressed in English by the preposition OF: as,—

librī Cicerōnis, *the books of Cicero, Cicero's books.*
talentum aurī, *a talent of gold.*
vir summae virtūtis, *a man of the greatest courage.*
pars mīlitum, *a part of the soldiers.*
cultus deōrum, *worship of the gods.*
vacātiō labōris, *a respite from toil.*
victor omnium gentium, *conqueror of all nations.*

In most constructions the genitive is either Subjective or Objective.

1. The Subjective genitive denotes that to which the noun limited belongs, or from which it is derived (§ 214).

2. The Objective genitive denotes that towards which an action or feeling is directed (§ 217 ff.).

This distinction is illustrated by the following example. The phrase **amor patris**, *love of a father*, may mean love *felt by a father*, *a father's love* (subjective genitive), or love *towards a father* (objective genitive).

214. (RULE 15.) The Subjective Genitive is used with a noun to denote (1) the Author or Owner, (2) the Source or the Material, (3) the Quality.

1. Possessive Genitive.

a. 1. The Possessive Genitive denotes the author or owner: as,—

librī Cicerōnis, *the books of* (written by) *Cicero.*
Alexandrī ecus, *Alexander's horse.*

2. For the genitive of possession a possessive or derivative adjective is often used,—regularly for the possessive genitive of the personal pronouns (§§ 190, 197. *a*): as,—

liber meus, *my book*. [Not **liber meī**.]
aliēna perīcula, *other men's dangers*. [But also **aliōrum**.]
Sullāna tempora, *the times of Sulla*. [Oftener **Sullae**.]

b. The noun limited is understood in a few expressions: as,—

ad Castoris [aedēs], *to the* [temple] *of Castor* (cf. English, St. Peter's).
Hectoris Andromachē (Æn. iii. 319), *Hector's* [wife] *Andromache*.
Flaccus Claudī, *Flaccus* [slave] *of Claudius*.

c. The possessive genitive is often in the predicate, connected with its noun by a verb: as,—

haec domus est **patris meī**, *this house is my father's*.
tūtēlae nostrae [eōs] dūximus (Liv.), *we held them* [to be] *in our protection*.
compendī facere, *to save* (make of saving).
lucrī facere, *to get the benefit of* (make of profit).
iam mē **Pompēī** tōtum esse scīs (Fam. ii. 13), *you know I am now all for Pompey* (all Pompey's).

REMARK.—These genitives bear the same relation to the examples in § 213 that a predicate noun bears to an appositive (§§ 184, 185).

d. An infinitive or a clause, when used as a noun, is often limited by a genitive in the predicate: as,—

neque suī iūdicī [erat] dēcernere (B. C. i. 35), *nor was it for his judgment to decide* (nor did it belong to his judgment).
cūiusvīs hominis est errāre (Cic.), *it is any man's* [liability] *to err*.
timidī est optāre necem (Ov. M. iv. 115), *it is for the coward to wish for death*.
sapientis (not **sapiēns**) est pauca loquī, *it is wise* (the part of a wise man) *to say little*.

REMARK.—This construction is regular with adjectives of the third declension instead of the neuter nominative (see the last example).

NOTE.—A derivative or possessive adjective may be used for the genitive in this construction, and *must* be used for the genitive of a personal pronoun: as,—

mentīrī nōn est **meum** (not **meī**), *it is not for me to lie*.
hūmānum (for **hominis**) est errāre, *it is man's nature to err* (to err is human).

2. Genitive of Material.

e. The genitive may denote the Substance or Material of which a thing consists (compare §§ 216, 244): as,—

talentum aurī, *a talent of gold.*
flūmina lactis, *rivers of milk.*

f. A limiting genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition (§ 183): as,—

nōmen **īnsāniae** (*for* nōmen **īnsānia**), *the word madness.*
oppidum **Antiochīae** (*for* oppidum **Antiochīa**, the regular form), *the city of Antioch.* [A very loose use of this genitive, cf. *e*.]

3. Genitive of Quality.

215. The genitive is used to denote Quality, but only when the quality is modified by an adjective: as,—

vir summae virtūtis, *a man of the highest courage.* [But not **vir virtūtis.**]
māgnae est dēlīberātiōnis, *it is an affair of great deliberation.*
ille autem suī iūdicī (Nep. Att. 9), *but he* [a man] *of independent* (his own) *judgment.*

a. The genitive of quality is found in the adjective phrases **ēius modī**, **cūius modī** (equivalent to **tālis**, *such;* **quālis**, *of what sort*).

b. The genitive of quality, with numerals, is used to define measures of *length*, *depth*, etc. (*Genitive of measure*): as,—

fōssa trium pedum, *a trench of three feet* [in depth].
mūrus sēdecim pedum, *a wall of sixteen feet* [high].

c. For Genitives of Quality used to express *indefinite value*, see § 252. *a*.

4. Partitive Genitive.

216. (RULE 16.) Words denoting a Part are followed by the genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs.

a. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are—

1. Nouns or pronouns: as,—

pars mīlitum, *part of the soldiers.*
quis nostrūm, *which of us* (cf. *e*, below)?
nihil erat reliquī, *there was nothing left.*

2. Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like **alius**, etc.: as, —

alter cōnsulum, *one of the* [two] *consuls.*
ūnus tribūnōrum, *one of the tribunes* (cf. *c*, below).
plūrimum tōtīus Galliae equitātū valet (B. G. v, 3), *is strongest in cavalry of all Gaul.*
māior frātrum, *the elder of the brothers.*

3. Neuter adjectives and pronouns, used as nouns : as, —

tantum spatī, *so much* [of] *space.*
aliquid nummōrum, *a few pence* (something of coins).
id locī (*or* locōrum), *that spot of ground.* Also *at that time.*
id temporis, *at that time* (§ 240. *b*).
plāna urbis, *the level parts of the town.*
quid novī, *what news* (what of new) ?

REMARK. — The genitive of adjectives of the *third declension* is rarely used partitively. Thus, —

nihil **novī** (gen.), *nothing new ;* but
nihil **memorābile** (nom.), *nothing worth mention.* [Not **nihil memorābilis.**]

4. Adverbs, especially of Quantity and Place : as, —

satis pecūniae, *money enough* (enough of money).
parum ōtī, *not much ease* (too little of ease).
tum temporis, *at that point of time* (then of time).
ubinam gentium sumus, *where in the world are we* (where of nations) ?

b. The poets and later writers often use the partitive genitive after adjectives, instead of a noun in its proper case : as, —

sequimur tē sancte deōrum (Æn. iv. 576), *we follow thee, O holy deity.* [For **sancte deus.**]

c. Cardinal numerals regularly take the Ablative with **ē** (**ex**) or **dē** instead of the Partitive Genitive. So also **quīdam** commonly, and other words occasionally : as, —

ūnus ex tribūnīs, *one of the tribunes.* [But also, **ūnus tribūnōrum.**]
minumus ex illīs (Jug. 11), *the youngest of them.*
quīdam ex mīlitibus, *certain of the soldiers.*

d. **Uterque**, *both* (properly *each*), and **quisque**, *each*, with Nouns are used as adjectives in agreement, but with Pronouns always take a partitive genitive : as, —

uterque **cōnsul**, *both the consuls ;* but, uterque **nostrūm**, *both of us.*
ūnus quisque **vostrūm**, *each one of you.*

e. Numbers and words of quantity including the *whole* of any thing, take a case in agreement, and not the partitive genitive. So also words denoting a part if *only that part* is thought of: as,—

nōs omnēs, *all of us* (we all). [Not **omnēs nostrūm**] but **nostrūm omnium.**
quot sunt hostēs, *how many of the enemy are there?*
multī mīlitēs, *many of the soldiers.*

5. Objective Genitive.

The Objective Genitive is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

217. (RULE 17.) Nouns of *action, agency,* and *feeling* govern the genitive of the object: as,—

dēsīderium ōtī, *longing for rest.*
grātia beneficī, *gratitude for kindness.*
fuga malōrum, *refuge from disaster.*
precātiō deōrum, *prayer to the gods.*

NOTE.—This usage is an extension of the idea of *belonging to* (Possessive Genitive).

a. The objective genitive is sometimes replaced by a possessive or other derivative adjective (see § 197. *a.* 2): as,—

mea invidia, *my unpopularity* (the dislike of which I am the object).
metus hostīlis (Jug. 41), *fear of the enemy* (hostile fear).

b. Rarely the objective genitive is used with a noun already limited by another genitive: as,—

animī multārum **rērum** percursiō (Tusc. iv. 31), *the mind's traversing of many things.*

c. A noun with a preposition is often used instead of the objective genitive: as,—

odium in Caesarem, *hate of Cæsar.* [Cf. **odium Caesaris,** note above.]
merita ergā mē (Cic.), *services to me.*
excēssus ē vītā (id.), *departure from life.* [Also, **excēssus vītae,** Cic.]

II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

218. Adjectives requiring an object of reference govern the objective genitive.

These are called Relative Adjectives (*adiectīva relātīva*) or Transitive Adjectives, and include the following:—

a. (RULE 18.) Adjectives denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *memory*, *fulness*, *power*, *sharing*, *guilt*, and their opposites: as, —

avidus laudis, *greedy of praise.*
fastīdiōsus litterārum, *disdaining letters.*
iūris perītus, *skilled in law.* [So, also, the ablative, **iūre**, cf. § 253.]
reī mīlitāris imperītus, *unskilled in military science.*
ratiōnis et ōrātiōnis expertēs, *devoid of sense and speech.*
vostrī memor, *mindful of you.*
plēnus fideī, *full of good faith.*
impotēns īrae, *ungovernable in anger.*
particeps coniūrātiōnis, *sharing in the conspiracy.*
īnsōns culpae, *innocent of guilt.*

b. (RULE 18.) Verbals in **-āx** (§ 164. *l*); also participles in **-ns** when used as adjectives, (*i.e.* to denote a *disposition* and not a *particular act*): as, —

tenācem **prōpositī** virum (Hor. Od. iii, 3), *a man steadfast to his purpose.*
circus capāx **populī** (Ov.), *a circus big enough to hold the people.*
sī quem **tuī** amantiōrem cōgnōvistī (Q. Fr. i. 1. 15), *if you have become acquainted with any one more fond of you.*
multitūdō īnsolēns **bellī** (B. C. ii. 36), *a crowd unused to war.*

NOTE. 1. — Participles in **-ns**, when used *as participles*, take the case regularly governed by the verb to which they belong: as, —

Tiberius sitiēns **sanguinem** (Tac.), *Tiberius* [then] *thirsting for blood.*

NOTE 2. — Occasionally participial forms in **-ns** are treated as participles (see note 1), even when they express a *disposition* or *character*: as, —

virtūs quam aliī ipsam temperantiam dīcunt esse, aliī obtemperantem temperantiae praeceptīs et **eam** subsequentem (Tusc. iv. 30), *observant of the teachings of temperance and obedient to her.*

c. The poets and later writers use the genitive with almost any adjective, to denote that *with reference to which* the quality exists (*Genitive of Specification*): as, —

callidus reī mīlitāris (Tac. H. ii. 31), *skilled in soldiership.*
pauper aquae (Hor. Od. iii. 30. 11), *scant of water.*
fessī rērum (Æn. i. 178), *weary of toil.*

REMARK. — Adjectives of *feeling* are followed by the apparent genitive **animī** (really locative, cf. § 223. *c*): as, —

aeger animī, *sick at heart.*
cōnfūsus animī, *disturbed in spirit.*

III. Genitive with Verbs.

The Objective Genitive is used with some verbs.

1. Remembering and Forgetting.

219. (Rule 19.) Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting take the Genitive of the object when they are used of a *continued state of mind*, but the Accusative when used of *a single act*: as, —

1. Genitive: —

recordāns superiōris **trānsmissiōnis** (Att. iv. 19), *remembering your former crossing.*

animus meminit **praeteritōrum** (Div. i. 63), *the soul remembers the past.*

venit mihi in mentem **illīus diēī**, *I bethink me of that day* (it comes into my mind of that day).

oblīviscere **caedis** atque **incendiōrum** (Cat. i. 6), *turn your mind from slaughter and conflagrations.*

2. Accusative: —

tōtam **causam** oblītus est (Brut, 217), *he forgot the whole case.*

pueritiae **memoriam** recordārī (Arch. 1), *to recall the memory of childhood.*

a. The Accusative is almost always used of a person or thing remembered by an eye-witness: as, —

memineram Paullum (Læl. 9), *I remembered Paulus.*

b. **Recordor**, *recollect*, *recall*, denotes a *single act* and is therefore almost always followed by the Accusative: as, —

recordāminī omnīs cīvīlīs **dissēnsiōnēs** (Cat. iii. 24), *recall all the civil wars.*

c. Verbs of *reminding* take with the accusative of the person a genitive of the thing; except in the case of a neuter pronoun, which is put in the accusative (cf. § 238. *b*).

Catilīna admonēbat **alium egestātis, alium cupiditātis** suae (Sall. Cat. 21), *Catiline reminded one of his poverty, another of his cupidity.*

ūnum illud monēre **tē** possum, *I can remind you of this one thing.*

So **admoneō, commoneō, commonefaciō, commonefīō**. But **moneō** with the genitive is found only in late writers (cf. § 238. *b.* note).

NOTE. — All these verbs often take **dē** with the ablative, and the accusative of nouns as well as of pronouns is sometimes used with them: as, —

saepius tē admoneō **dē syngraphā** Sittiānā (Fam. viii. 4, 5), *I remind you again and again of the bond of Sittius.*

officium vestrum ut vōs malō cōgātis commonērier (Plaut. Ps. 150), *to be reminded of your duty.*

2. Charge and Penalty.

220. (RULE 20.) Verbs of Accusing, Condemning, and acquitting take the genitive of the *charge* or *penalty*: as, —

arguit mē **furtī**, *he accuses me of theft.*

videō nōn tē absolūtum esse **improbitātis**, sed illōs damnātōs esse **caedis** (Verr. II. i, 72), *I see, not that you were acquitted of outrage, but that they were condemned for homicide.*

a. Peculiar genitives, under this construction, are —

capitis, as in damnāre capitis, *to sentence to death.*

māiestātis [laesae], *treason* (crime against the dignity of the State).

repetundārum [rērum], *extortion* (lit. of an action for *claiming back* money wrongfully taken).

vōtī, in damnātus *or* reus vōtī, *bound* [to the payment] *of one's vow; i.e. successful* in one's effort.

pecūniae (damnāre, iūdicāre, see note under 3, below).

dūplī, etc., as in dūplī condemnāre, *condemn to pay twofold.*

b. Other constructions for the charge or penalty are —

1. The ablative of price: regularly of a *definite amount* of fine, and often of indefinite penalties (cf. § 252. note): as, —

Frusinātēs **tertiā parte** agrī damnātī (Liv. x. 1), *the people of Frusino condemned* [to forfeit] *a third part of their land.*

vitia autem hominum atque fraudēs **damnīs īgnōminiīs vinculīs verberibus exsiliīs morte** damnantur (De Or. i. 194), *but the vices and crimes of men are punished with fines, dishonor, chains, scourging, exile, death.*

2. The ablative with **dē**, or the accusative with **inter**, in idiomatic expressions: as, —

dē aleā, *for gambling.*

dē ambitū, *for bribery.*

inter sīcāriōs, *as an assassin* (among the assassins).

dē vī et māiestātis damnātī (Phil. 1, 21), *convicted of assault and treason.*

3. Verbs of Feeling.

221. Many verbs of Feeling take the genitive of the object which excites the feeling. Thus, —

a. Verbs of pity, as **misereor** and **miserēscō**, are followed by the genitive: as, —

miserēscite **rēgis** (Æn. viii. 573), *pity the king.*
miserēre **animī** nōn digna ferentis (id. ii. 144), *pity a soul,* etc.

But **miseror, commiseror,** *bewail,* take the accusative: as, —

commūnem condiciōnem miserārī (Mur. 55), *bewail the common lot.*

b. The impersonals **miseret, paenitet, piget,** pudet, **taedet** (or **pertaesum est**) take the Genitive of the *cause of the feeling* and the Accusative of the *person affected:* as, —

hōs **hominēs** **īnfāmiae** suae neque pudet neque taedet (Verr. i. 35), *these men are neither ashamed nor weary of their dishonor.* [Cf. *it repenteth him of the evil.*]

mē quidem miseret **parietum** ipsōrum (Phil. ii. 69), *for my part I pity the very walls.*

c. An infinitive, a clause, or the accusative (possibly nominative) of a neuter pronoun may be used with these impersonal verbs (except **miseret**) instead of the genitive of a noun: as, —

mē paenitet haec **fēcisse,** *I repent of having done this.*
nihil quod paenitēre possit (Cic.), *nothing that may cause repentance.*

4. *Interest* and *Rēfert.*

222. The impersonals **interest** and **rēfert** take the genitive of the person (rarely of the thing) affected: as, —

Clōdī intererat Milōnem perīre (Mil. 56), *it was the interest of Clodius that Milo should die.*

videō enim quid meā intersit, quid utrīusque nostrūm (Fam. vii. 23), *for I see what is for my good and for the good of us both.*

The subject of the verb is a neuter pronoun or a substantive clause.

a. Instead of the Genitive of a Personal Pronoun the corresponding Possessive is used in the ablative singular feminine with **interest** or **rēfert**: as, —

quid **tuā** id rēfert? māgnī (Ter. Ph. 723), *how does that concern you? much.* [See also the last example above.]

b. The accusative with **ad** is used with **interest** and **rēfert** to express the thing *with reference to which* one is interested: as, —

māgnī ad honōrem nostrum interest (Fam. xvi. 1), *it is of great consequence to our honor.*

rēfert **ad frūctūs** (Varr. R. R. i. 16), *it makes a difference as to the crop.*

5. **Verbs of Plenty and Want.**

223. Some verbs of Plenty and Want govern the genitive: as, —

quid est quod **dēfēnsiōnis** indigeat? (Rosc. Am. 34), *what is there that needs defence?*

satagit **rērum** suārum, *he has his hands full with his own affairs.*

NOTE. — But verbs of plenty and want more commonly take the ablative (see §§ 243. *a*, 248. *c*), except **egeō, indigeō, satagō.**

6. **Other Verbs.**

a. The genitive sometimes follows **potior**, *get possession of;* as always in the phrase **potīrī rērum**, *to be master of affairs.* Thus, —

illīus **rēgnī** potīrī (Fam. i. 7, 5), *to become master of that kingdom.*

Cleanthēs sōlem dominārī et **rērum** potīrī putat (Ac. ii. 126), *Cleanthes thinks the sun holds sway and is lord of the universe.*

But **potior** usually takes the ablative (see § 249).

b. Some other verbs rarely take the Genitive —

1. By analogy with those mentioned in § 221: as, —

neque hūius sīs veritus **fēminae** prīmāriae (Ter. Ph. 971), *and you had no respect for this high-born lady.*

2. As akin to adjectives which take the genitive: as, —

fastīdit **meī** (Plaut. Aul. 243), *he disdains me.* [Cf. **fastīdiōsus.**]

studet **tuī** (quoted N. D. iii. 72), *he is zealous for you.* [Cf. **studiōsus.**]

c. The apparent genitive **animī** (really Locative) is used with a few verbs of feeling and the like (cf. § 218. *c.* Rem.): as, —

Antiphō mē excruciat **animī** (Ter. Ph. 187), *Antipho tortures my mind* (me in my mind).

IV. Peculiar Genitives.

d. A genitive occurs rarely in Exclamations, in imitation of the Greek (*Genitive of Exclamation*): as, —

dī immortālēs, mercimōnī lepidī (Plaut. Most. 912), *good heavens! what a charming bargain!*

e. The genitive is often used with the ablatives **causā**, **grātiā**, *for the sake of;* **ergō**, *because of;* and the indeclinable **īnstar**, *like;* also with **prīdiē**, *the day before;* **postrīdiē**, *the day after;* **tenus**, *as far as:* as,—

honōris causā, *with due respect* (for the sake of honor).
verbī grātiā, *for example.*
ēius lēgis ergō, *on account of this law.*
ecus īnstar montis (Æn. ii. 15), *a horse like* (the image of) *a mountain.*
laterum tenus (Æn. x. 210), *as far as the sides.*

II. DATIVE.

NOTE.—The Dative seems to be closely akin to the Locative (cf. οἴκοι, *at home*, with οἴκῳ, *to a house*), and must have had the primary meaning of *to* or *towards*. But this local meaning appears in Latin only in the poets (§ 225. *b.* 3) and in some adverbial forms (as **eō**, **illō**, *thither*).

The uses of the Dative, arranged practically, are the following:—

1. AS INDIRECT OBJECT (general use):	1. With Transitives (§ 225). 2. With Intransitives (§§ 226–28, 230).
2. Special or Idiomatic Uses:	1. Of Possession (with **esse**) (§ 231). 2. Of Agency (with Gerundive) (§ 232). 3. Of Purpose or End (predicate use) (§ 233). 4. Of Fitness, etc. (with Adjectives) (§ 234). 5. Of Reference (*datīvus commodī*) (§§ 235, 236).

224. (RULE 21.) The Dative is used of the object *indirectly affected* by an action.

This is called the Indirect Object (§ 177). It is usually denoted in English by the Objective with *to* or *for*. Thus,—

dat librum puerō, *he gives a book to the boy.*
cēdite temporī, *yield to the occasion.*
prōvincia Cicerōnī obtigit, *the province fell by lot to Cicero.*

1. Indirect Object with Transitives.

225. The Dative of the Indirect Object with the Accusative of the Direct may be used with any transitive verb whose meaning allows (see § 177): as,—

dō tibi librum, *I give you a book.*
illud tibi affīrmō (Fam. i. 7, 5), *this I assure you.*

a. Many verbs have both a transitive and an intransitive use (§ 177. note). These take either the Accusative with the Dative, or the Dative alone : as,—

hanc pecūniam tibi crēdō, *I trust this money to you.* [Transitive.]
in hāc rē tibi crēdō, *I trust you in this.* [Intransitive.]

b. Certain verbs implying motion vary in their construction between the Dative of the Indirect Object and the Accusative of the End of Motion (§ 258. *b*). Thus, —

1. Some verbs take the Accusative (with or without a preposition), instead of the Indirect Object, when the idea of motion prevails (§ 258) : as, —

litterās quās **ad Pompēium** scrīpsī (Att. iii. 9), *the letter which I have written* [and sent] *to Pompey.* [Cf. nōn quō habērem quod **tibi** scrīberem (Att. iv. 4), *not that I had anything to write to you.*]
litterae extemplō **Rōmām** scrīptae (Liv. xli. 16), *a letter was immediately written* [and sent] *to Rome.*
hostēs **in fugam** dat (B. G. v. 51), *he puts the enemy to flight.* [Cf. ut **mē** dem **fugae** (Att. vii. 23), *to take to flight.*]

2. On the other hand, many verbs usually followed by the Accusative with **ad** or **in**, take the Dative when the idea of motion is merged in some other idea : as, —

nec quicquam quod nōn **mihi** Caesar dētulerit (Fam. iv. 13), *and nothing which Cæsar did not communicate to me.*
eum librum **tibi** mīsī (id. vii. 19), *I sent you that book.*
cūrēs ut **mihi** vehantur (id. viii. 4), *take care that they be conveyed to me.*
cum alius **aliī** subsidium ferrent (B. G. ii. 26), *while one lent aid to another.*

3. In poetry the End of Motion is often expressed by the dative (see § 258. note 1).

c. For the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing after verbs of *threatening* and the like, see § 227. *f.*

d. Certain verbs may take either the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (in a different sense) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing : as, —

dōnat **corōnās suīs**, *he presents wreaths to his men ;* or,
dōnat **suōs corōnīs**, *he presents his men with wreaths.*
āram sanguine adspergere (N. D. iii. 88), *to sprinkle the altar with blood.*
ārae sanguinem adspergere, *to sprinkle blood upon the altar.*

Such are **dōnō, impertiō, induō, exuō, adspergō, inspergō, circumdō, circumfundō, prohibeō, interclūdō**, and in poetry **accingō, implicō**, and similar verbs.

NOTE 1. — **Interdīcō**, *forbid*, takes either (1) the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, or (2) the dative of the person and the ablative of the thing: as, —

interdīxit **histriōnibus scaenam** (Suet. Dom. 7), *he forbade the actors* [to appear on] *the stage* (he prohibited the stage to the actors). [Cf. interdictum est mare **Antiātī populō** (Liv. viii. 14), *the sea was forbidden to the people of Antium.*]

aquā et **ignī alicui** interdīcere, *to forbid the use of fire and water.*

NOTE 2. — The Dative with the Accusative is used in poetry with many verbs of *preventing, protecting*, and the like, which usually take the Accusative and Ablative. **Interclūdō** and **arceō** sometimes take the Dative and Accusative, even in prose: as, —

hīsce omnīs **aditūs** ad Sullam interclūdere (Rosc. Am. 110), *to shut these men off from all access to Sulla* (close to them every approach). [Cf. uti **frūmentō commeātūque Caesarem** interclūderet (B. G. i. 48), *to shut Cæsar off from grain and supplies.*]

hunc (oestrum) arcēbis **pecorī** (Georg. iii. 154), *you shall keep this away from the flock.* [Cf. illum **arcuit Galliā** (Phil. v. 37), *he excluded him from Gaul.*]

sōlstitium pecorī dēfendite (Ecl. vii. 47), *keep the summer heat from the flock.*

e. Verbs which in the active voice take the accusative and dative retain the dative when used in the passive: as, —

haec **nōbīs** nūntiantur, *these things are told us.* [Active: **haec** [**quīdam**] **nōbīs nūntiat.**]

Crassō dīvitiae nōn invidentur, *Crassus is not envied for his wealth.* [Active: **Crassō dīvitiās nōn invident.**]

decem talenta **oppidānīs** imperantur, *ten talents are exacted of the townspeople.* [Active: **imperat oppidānīs decem talenta.**]

2. Indirect Object with Intransitives.

226. The Dative of the Indirect Object may be used with any Intransitive verb whose meaning allows: as, —

cēdant arma togae (Phil. ii. 20), *let arms give place to the gown.*
Caesarī respondet, *he replies to Cæsar.*
Caesarī respondētur, *Cæsar is replied to* (see § 230).

crēdimus nūntiō, *we believe the messenger.*
nūntiō crēditur, *the messenger is believed.*
respondī māximīs crīminibus (Phil. ii. 36), *I have answered the heaviest charges.*

NOTE 1.—Intransitive verbs have no Direct Object. The Indirect Object, therefore, in these cases stands alone (but cf. § 225. *a*).

NOTE 2.—**Cēdō**, *yield*, sometimes takes the Ablative of the thing along with the Dative of the person: as,—

cēdere alicui possēssiōne hortōrum (Mil. 75), *to give up to one the possession of a garden.*

a. Many phrases consisting of a noun with the copula **sum** or a copulative verb are equivalent to an intransitive verb and take a kind of indirect object (cf. § 235): as,—

auctor esse **alicui**, *to advise* or *instigate one* (cf. **persuādeō**).
quis **huic reī** testis est (Quinc. 37), *who testifies* (is witness) *to this fact?*
is fīnis **populātiōnibus** fuit (Liv. ii. 30), *this put an end to the raids.*

b. The dative is sometimes used without a copulative verb in a sense approaching that of the genitive (cf. §§ 227. *d*, 235. *a*): as,—

lēgātus Caesarī, *a lieutenant to Cæsar* (*i.e.* a man assigned to Cæsar).
hērēs frātrī suō, *his brother's heir* (heir to his brother).
ministrī sceleribus, *agents of crime.*

NOTE.—The cases in *a* and *b* differ from the constructions of § 227, note 2, and § 235 in that the dative is more closely connected in idea with some single word to which it serves as an indirect object.

3. Dative with Special Verbs.

Many verbs of apparently transitive meaning in English correspond to verbs intransitive in Latin. Thus,—

227. (RULE 22.) Most verbs signifying to *favor, help, please, trust,* and their contraries; also to *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon,* and *spare*, take the dative: as,—

cūr **mihi** invidēs, *why do you envy me?*
mihi parcit atque īgnōscit, *he spares and pardons me.*
īgnōsce patriō **dolōrī** (Liv. iii. 48), *excuse a father's grief.*
nōn parcam **operae** (Fam. xiii. 27), *I will spare no pains.*
sīc **mihi** persuāsī (Cat. M. 78), *so I have persuaded myself.*

NOTE. 1. — In these verbs the Latin retains an original intransitive meaning. Thus: **invidēre**, *to envy*, was originally *to look askance at one.*

NOTE 2. — Some common phrases regularly take the dative precisely like verbs of similar meaning. Such are —

praestō esse, *be on hand* (cf. **adesse**).
mōrem gerere, *humor* (cf. **mōrigerārī**).
grātum facere, *do a favor* (cf. **grātificārī**).
dictō audiēns esse, *be obedient* (cf. **oboedīre**).
cui fidem habēbat (B. G. i. 19), *in whom he had confidence* (cf. cōnfīdēbat).

So, also, many phrases where no corresponding verb exists. Such are —

bene (male, pulchrē, aegrē, etc.) esse, *to be well* (*ill*, etc.) *off.*
iniūriam facere, *do injustice to.*
diem dīcere, *bring to trial* (name a day for, etc.).
agere grātiās, *to express one's thanks.*
habēre grātiam, *to feel thankful.*
referre grātiam, *to repay a favor.*
opus esse, *be necessary.*
damnum dare, *inflict an injury.*
acceptum (expēnsum) ferre (esse), *to credit* (charge).
honōrem habēre, *to pay honor to.*

a. Some verbs apparently of the same meanings take the Accusative.

Such are **iuvō**, **adiuvō**, *help;* **laedō**, *injure;* **iubeō**, *order;* **dēficiō**, *fail;* **dēlectō**, *please.* Thus, —

hīc pulvis **oculum** meum **laedit**, *this dust hurts my eye.* [Cf. multa **oculīs nocent**, *many things are injurious to the eyes.*]

b. Some verbs are used *transitively* with the Accusative or *intransitively* with the Dative without perceptible difference of meaning.

Such are **adūlor** (generally accusative), **aemulor** (rarely dative), **comitor**, **dēspērō**, **praestōlor**, **medeor**, **medicor**. Thus, —

adūlātus est **Antōniō** (Nep. Att. 8), *he flattered Antony.*
adūlārī **Nerōnem** (Tac. Ann. xvi. 19), *to flatter Nero.*

c. Some verbs are used *transitively* with the Accusative or *intransitively* with the Dative with a difference of meaning.

partī cīvium cōnsulunt (Off. i. 85), *they consult for a part of the citizens.*
cum **tē** cōnsuluissem (Fam. xi. 29), *when I had consulted you.*
metuēns **pueris** (Plaut. Am. 1113), *anxious for the children.*
nec metuunt **deōs** (Ter. Hec. 772), *they fear not even the gods.*
prospicite **patriae** (Cat. iv. 3), *have regard for the State.*
prospicere **sēdem** senectūtī (Liv. iv. 49), *to provide a habitation for old age.*

NOTE. — **Fīdō** and **cōnfīdō**, *trust*, take the Dative or the Ablative: as, —

legiōnis decimae **cui** quam māximē cōnfīdēbat (B. G. i. 42), *of the tenth legion, in which he had the utmost confidence.*

multum **nātūrā** locī cōnfīdēbant (B. G. iii. 9), *they had great confidence in the strength of their position* (the nature of the place).

d. Some verbal nouns — as **insidiae**, *ambush;* **invidia**, *envy* — take the dative like the verbs from which they are derived: as, —

invidia cōnsulī (Sall.), *ill-will against the consul* (cf. **invideō**).

obtemperātiō lēgibus (Leg. i. 42), *obedience to the laws* (cf. **obtemperō**).

sibi ipsī respōnsiō (De Or. iii. 207), *an answer to himself* (cf. **respondeō**).

NOTE. — In these cases the dative depends immediately upon the verbal force of the noun and not on any complex idea (cf. § 226. *a* and *b*).

e. The Dative is also used —

1. With the impersonals **libet (lubet)**, *it pleases;* **licet**, *it is allowed:* as, —

quod **mihi** māximē lubet (Fam. i. 8), *what most pleases me.*

quasi **tibi** nōn licēret (Fam. vi. 8), *as if you were not permitted.*

2. With verbs compounded with **satis**, **bene**, and **male**: as, —

mihi ipse numquam satisfaciō (Fam. i. 1), *I never satisfy myself.*

optimō virō maledīcere (Deiot. 28), *to speak ill of a most excellent man.*

pulchrum est benefacere **reīpūblicae** (Sall. Cat. 3), *it is a glorious thing to benefit the State.*

NOTE. — These are not real compounds, but phrases, and were apparently felt as such by the Romans. Thus, —

satis officiō meō, **satis** illōrum voluntātī quī ā mē hōc petīvērunt **factum** esse arbitrābor (Verr. v. 130), *that enough has been done for*, etc.

3. With the following: **grātificor**, **grātulor**, **haereō** (rarely), **nūbō**, **permittō**, **plaudō**, **probō**, **studeō**, **supplicō**, **excellō**: as, —

haerentem **capitī** corōnam (Hor. S. i. 10, 49), *a wreath clinging to the head.*

Pompēiō sē grātificārī putant (Fam. i. 1), *they suppose they are doing Pompey a service.*

NOTE. — **Misceō** and **iungō** sometimes take the dative (see § 248. *a*. Rem.). **Haereō** usually takes the ablative, with or without **in**.

f. Many verbs ordinarily intransitive often have an Accusative of the direct object with the Dative of the indirect (cf. § 225. *a*): as, —

cui cum rēx **crucem** minitārētur (Tusc. i. 102), *when the king threatened him with the cross.*

imperat **oppidānīs** decem **talenta**, *he exacts of the townspeople ten talents.*

4. Dative with Compounds.

228. (Rule 23.) Most verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**, and some with **circum**, take the dative of the indirect object: as, —

> neque enim adsentior **eīs** (Lael. 13), *for I do not agree with them.*
>
> **tempestātī** obsequī artis est (Fam. i. 9, 21), *it is a point of skill to yield to the weather.*
>
> omnibus **negōtiīs** nōn interfuit sōlum sed praefuit (id. i. 6), *he not only had a hand in all matters, but took the lead in them.*
>
> quantum nātūra hominis **pecudibus** antecēdit (Off. i. 105), *so far as man's nature is superior to brutes.*

Note 1. — In these cases the dative depends not on the preposition, but on the compound verb in its acquired meaning. Hence, if the acquired meaning is not suited to an indirect object, the original construction of the simple verb remains or some different construction arises. Thus, in **convocat suōs**, *he calls his men together*, the idea of *calling* is not so modified as to make an indirect object appropriate. So, **hominem interficere**, *to make way with a man* (kill him). But in **praeficere imperātōrem bellō**, *to put a man as commander-in-chief in charge of a war*, the meaning is suited to an indirect object (see *a* and *c*, and § 237. *d*).

Note 2. — Some of these verbs being originally transitive take also a direct object: as, **nē offerāmus nōs perīculīs** (Off. i. 83), *that we may not expose ourselves to perils.*

a. Some compounds of **ad**, **ante**, **ob**, with a few others, have acquired a transitive meaning, and take the accusative: as, —

> **nōs** oppūgnat (Fam. i. 1), *he opposes us.*
>
> **mūnus** obīre (Lael. 7), *to attend to a duty.*

b. The adjective **obvius** and the adverb **obviam** with a verb take the dative: as, —

> sī ille obvius **eī** futūrus nōn erat (Mil. 47), *if he was not intending to get in his way.*
>
> **mihi** obviam vēnistī (Fam. ii. 16, 3), *you came to meet me.*

c. When *place* or *motion* is distinctly thought of, the verbs of § 228 regularly take a noun with a preposition, not the dative: as, —

> **in vīsceribus** inhaerēre (Tusc. iv. 24), *it remains fixed in the vitals.*
>
> hominī coniūnctō **mēcum** (Tull. 4), *to a man united to me.*
>
> cum **hōc** concurrit ipse Eumenēs (Nep. Eum. 4, 1), *with him Eumenes himself engages in combat* (runs together).

quae ā cēterārum gentium mōre dissentiunt (Font. 30), *which differ from the custom of all other nations.*

obicitur contrā istōrum impetūs Macedonia (Font. 44), *Macedonia is set to withstand their attacks.* [Cf. sī quis vōbīs error obiectus (Cæc. 5), *if any mistake has been caused you.*]

in segetem flamma incidit (Æn. ii. 304), *the fire falls upon the standing corn.*

NOTE. — As usage varies, the dictionary must be consulted for each verb.

229. (RULE 24.) Many verbs of *taking away* and the like take the Dative (especially of a *person*) instead of the Ablative of Separation (§ 243): as, —

mulierī ānulum dētrāxit, *he took a ring from the woman.*

bona mihi abstulistī, *you have robbed me of my gains.*

a. The distinct idea of *motion*, — and, in general, names of *things*, — require the ablative with a preposition (§ 258. *a*): as, —

illum ex perīculō ēripuit (B. G. iv. 12), *he dragged him out of danger.*

b. Sometimes the dative of the person and the ablative of the thing with a preposition are both used with the same verb: as, —

victōriam ēripī sibi ē manibus, *that victory should be wrested from his hands* (cf. § 243. *b*).

c. The dative is often used by the poets in constructions which would in prose require a noun with a preposition. So, especially, with verbs of *contending* (§ 248. *b*): as, —

placitōne etiam pūgnābis amōrī (Æn. iv. 38), *will you struggle even against a love that pleases you?*

tibi certat (Ecl. v. 8), *vies with you.* [tēcum.]

sōlstitium pecorī dēfendite (Ecl. vii. 47), *keep the summer heat from the flock.* [ā pecore.]

laterī abdidit ēnsem (Æn. ii. 553), *buried the sword in his side.* [in latere, § 260. *a*.]

[For the Dative instead of ad with the Accusative, see § 225. *b*. 3.]

230. (RULE 25.) The passive of intransitive verbs that govern the dative can be used only *impersonally* (§ 146. *d*). The dative is retained (cf. § 225. *e*).

cui parcī potuit (Liv. xxi. 14), *who could be spared?*

nōn modo nōn invidētur illī aetātī vērum etiam favētur (Off. ii. 45), *that age* (youth) *is not only not envied, but is even favored.*

5. Dative of Possession.

231. (RULE 26.) The Dative is used with **esse** and similar words to denote Possession: as, —

hominī cum deō similitūdō est, *man has a likeness to God* (there is, etc.).
est **mihi** domī pater (Ecl. iii. 33), *I have a father at home.*

REMARK. — The Genitive or a Possessive with **esse** emphasizes the *possessor;* the Dative, the fact of *possession:* as, **liber est meus,** *the book is mine* (and no one's else); **est mihi liber,** *I have a book* (among other things). The latter is the usual form to denote simple *possession,* since **habeō,** *have,* generally signifies *hold,* often with some secondary meaning: as, —

legiōnem quam sēcum habēbat (B. G. i. 8), *the legion which he kept with him.*
domitās habēre libīdinēs, *to keep the passions under control.*

a. Compounds of **esse** take the dative (except **abesse** and **posse**): as, —

deest **mihi** pecūnia, *I lack money.*
quid **mihi** prōderit? *in what will it help me* (what will it profit me)?

b. After **nōmen est,** and similar expressions, the name is usually in the dative by a kind of apposition with the *person:* as, —

cui **Āfricānō** fuit cōgnōmen (Liv. xxv. 2), *whose* (to whom) *surname was Africanus.*

c. The name may also be in apposition with **nōmen**; or in later Latin in the genitive (cf. § 214. *f*): as, —

cui nōmen **Arethūsa** (Verr. iv. 118), [a fount] *called Arethusa* (to which is the name Arethusa).
puerō nōmen est **Mārcus** (**Mārcī**), *the boy's name is Marcus* (to the boy, etc.).

6. Dative of the Agent.

232. (RULE 27.) The Dative of the Agent is used with the gerundive, to denote the person on whom the necessity rests: as, —

haec **vōbīs** prōvincia est dēfendenda (Man. 14), *this province is for you to defend* (to be defended by you).
mihi est pūgnandum, *I have to fight* (*i.e.* the need of fighting is to me; compare **mihi est liber,** *I have a book,* § 231. Rem.).

NOTE. — This is the regular way of expressing the *agent* with the Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (§ 113. *d.* 1). But when a dative is expressed governed by the verb itself, and rarely at other times, the agent is denoted by the Ablative with **ab** (§ 246) to avoid ambiguity: as, —

quibus est **ā vōbīs** cōnsulendum (Manil. 6), *for whom you must consult* (for whom it must be consulted by you).

(Cf. istī prīncipēs et **sibi** et **cēterīs** populī Rōmānī ūniversī auctōritātī pārendum esse fateantur (id. 64), *let these leading men admit that both by them and by everybody else the authority of the Roman people as a whole must be obeyed.* [Here there could be no ambiguity.])

a. The dative of the agent is common after *perfect participles* (especially when used in an adjective sense), but rare after other parts of the verb: as, —

mihi dēlīberātum et cōnstitūtum est (Rull. i. 25), *I have deliberated and resolved* (it has been deliberated by me).

mihi rēs tōta prōvīsa est (Verr. iv. 91), *the matter has been fully provided for by me.*

b. The dative of the agent is used by the poets and later writers with almost any passive verb: as, —

neque cernitur **ūllī** (Æn. i. 440), *nor is seen by any.*

fēlīx est dicta **sorōrī** (Ov. Fast. iii. 597), *she was called happy by her sister.*

c. The dative of the person who *sees* or *thinks* is regularly used with **videor**, *seem*: as, —

vidētur **mihi**, *it seems* (or *seems good*) *to me.*

dīs aliter vīsum [est] (Æn. ii. 428), *it seemed otherwise to the gods.*

NOTE. — The verb **probāre**, *approve* (originally a mercantile word), takes a Dative of Reference (§ 235), which has become so firmly attached that it is retained with the passive, seemingly as Dative of Agent: as, —

haec sententia et **illī** et **nōbīs** probābātur (Fam. i. 7, 5), *this view met both his approval and mine* (was made acceptable to, etc.).

mihi ēgregiē probāta est ōrātiō tua (Tusc. iv. 8), *your discourse was very satisfactory to me.*

7. Dative of the Purpose or End.

233. (RULE 28.) The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End.

This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions. Thus, —

a. The dative of an abstract noun is used to show that *for which a thing serves* or *which it accomplishes* (Dative of Service), often with another dative of the person or thing affected: as, —

māgnō **ūsuī** nostrīs fuit (B. G. iv. 25), *it was of great service to our men* (for great use).

tertiam aciem nostrīs **subsidiō** mīsit (id. i. 52), *he sent the third line as a relief to our men.*

omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī (id. iv. 29), *all things were wanting which were of use for repairing the ships.*

NOTE. — The word **frūgī** used as an adjective is a dative of this kind: as, —

cōgis mē dīcere inimīcum **frūgī**, *you compel me to call my enemy honest.* (Cf. erō frūgī bonae (Plaut. Pseud. 468), *I will be good for something.*)

b. The Dative of concrete nouns is used to express purpose in prose in a few military expressions, and freely in poetry: as, —

receptuī canere, *to sound a retreat.*

locum **castrīs** capere, *to select a site for a camp.*

optāvit locum **rēgnō** (Æn. iii. 109), *he chose a place for a kingdom.*

NOTE. — The construction of purpose or end is also found in the dative of the Gerundive (§ 299. *b*) and after Adjectives (§ 234).

8. Dative with Adjectives.

234. (RULE 29.) The dative is used with adjectives, to denote that *to which the given quality is directed*, *for which it exists*, or *towards which it tends.*

a. The dative is used with adjectives (and a few adverbs) of *fitness*, *nearness*, *likeness*, *service*, *inclination*, and their opposites: as,—

nihil est tam **nātūrae aptum** (Læl. 17), *nothing is so fitted to nature.*

nihil **difficile amantī** putō (Or. 33), *I think nothing hard to a lover.*

rēbus ipsīs pār et aequālis ōrātiō (id. 123), *a speech equal and level with the subject.*

castrīs idōneum locum dēligit (B. G. i. 49), *a suitable place for a camp.*

congruenter **nātūrae** (Fin. iii. 26), *in harmony with nature.*

b. Adjectives of *fitness* or *use* take oftener the Accusative with **ad** to denote the purpose or end; but regularly the Dative of *persons*: as, —

aptus ad rem mīlitārem, *fit for a soldier's duty.*

locus ad īnsidiās aptior (Mil. 53), *a place fitter for lying in wait.*

nōbīs ūtile est ad hanc rem, *it is of use to us for this thing.*

c. Adjectives and nouns of *inclination* and the like may take the Accusative with **in** or **ergā**: as, —

cōmis in uxōrem (Hor. Ep. ii. 2, 133), *kind to his wife.*
dīvīna bonitās ergā hominēs (N. D. ii. 60), *the divine goodness towards men.*

d. Some adjectives of *likeness*, *nearness*, *belonging*, and a few others, ordinarily requiring the Dative, often take the Possessive Genitive. Thus, —

fuit hōc quondam **proprium populī Rōmānī** (Manil. 32), *this was once the peculiar characteristic of the Roman people.*

1. The Genitive is especially used with these adjectives when they are used wholly or approximately as nouns. Thus, —

amīcus **Cicerōnī**, *friendly to Cicero.* But, **Cicerōnis** amīcus, *a friend of Cicero;* and even **Cicerōnis** amīcissimus, *a very great friend of Cicero.*
hī erant affīnēs **istīus** (Verr. ii. 36), *these were this man's fellows.*

2. After **similis**, *like*, the genitive is more common in early writers. Cicero uses the genitive of *living objects*, and either the genitive or dative of *things*: as, —

dominī similis es (Ter.) *you're like your master* (your master's like).
sīmia quam **similis** turpissima bestia **nōbīs** (N. D. i. 97, quoted from Enn.), *how like us is that wretched beast the ape!*
sī enim hōc **illī simile** sit, est illud **huic** (N. D. i. 90), *for if this is like that, that is like this.*

e. The adjectives **propior**, **proximus** sometimes, and the adverbs **propius**, **proximē** more commonly, take the accusative, as if prepositions, like **prope** (see § 261. *a*).

propius perīculum (Liv. xxi. 1), *nearer to danger.*
proximē deōs accēssit Clōdius (Mil. 59), *Clodius has come very near the gods.*
proximus mare ōceanum (B. G. iii. 7), *nearest the ocean.*

g. Dative of Reference.

235. (Rule 30.) The Dative is often required not by any *particular word*, but by the *general meaning* of the sentence (*dative of reference*): as, —

laudāvit **mihi** frātrem, *he praised my brother* (out of regard for me; **laudāvit frātrem meum** would imply no such motive).
meritōs māctāvit honōrēs, taurum **Neptūnō**, taurum **tibi**, pulcher Apollō (Æn. iii. 118), *he offered the sacrifices due, a bull to Neptune, a bull to thee, beautiful Apollo.*

NOTE. — The dative in this construction is often called the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage (*datīvus commodī aut incommodī*), as denoting the person or thing for whose benefit or to whose prejudice the action is performed.

a. The dative of reference is often used to qualify a whole idea, instead of the Possessive Genitive modifying a single word: as, —

iter **Poenīs** vel corporibus suīs obstruere (Cat. Maj. 75), *to block the march of the Carthaginians even with their own bodies* (to block, etc., for the disadvantage of, etc.).

b. The dative is used of the person from whose point of view a situation or direction is defined.

This construction answers to the English *as you go in*, and the like. The person is commonly denoted indefinitely by a participle in the plural: as, —

oppidum prīmum Thessaliae **venientibus** ab Ēpīrō (B. C. iii. 80), *the first town of Thessaly as you come from Epirus* (to those coming, etc.).
est urbe **ēgressīs** tumulus (Æn. ii. 713), *there is, as you come out of the city, a mound* (to those having come out).

c. The dative is (by a Greek idiom) rarely modified by **nōlēns**, **volēns**, participles of **nōlō**, **volō**, or by some similar word: as, —

ut **quibusque** bellum **invītīs** aut **cupientibus** erat (Tac. Ann. i. 59), *as each might receive the war reluctantly or gladly.*

d. The dative is used idiomatically without any verb in colloquial questions and exclamations: as, —

quō **mihi** fortūnam (Hor. Ep. i. 5. 12), *of what use to me is fortune?*
unde **mihi** lapidem (Hor. Sat. ii. 7. 116), *where can I get a stone?*

e. The dative is sometimes used after Interjections: as, —

vae victīs, *woe to the conquered.*
em tibi, *there, take that* (there, for you)! [Cf. § 236.]
hei mihi, *ah, me!*

10. **Ethical Dative.**

236. The Dative of the Personal Pronouns is used to show a certain interest felt by the person indicated:[1] as, —

[1] Compare "I'll rhyme you so eight years together." — *As You Like It.*

quid **mihi** Celsus agit (Hor.), *what is my friend Celsus doing?*
suō **sibi** servit patrī (Plaut. Capt. Prol.), *he serves his own father.*

This construction is called the Ethical Dative (*datīvus ēthicus*). It is really only a special case of the dative of reference.

REMARK.—To express FOR, meaning *instead of, in defence of, in behalf of*, the ablative with prō must be used: as,—

prō patriā morī (Hor. Od. iii. 2), *to die for one's country.*

III. ACCUSATIVE.

The uses of the accusative may be classified as follows:

1. PRIMARY OBJECT:
   1. Directly affected by the Action (§ 237).
   2. Effect of the Action: Thing produced (§ 237). Cognate Accusative (§ 238).
2. TWO ACCUSATIVES:
   1. Predicate Accusative (of Naming, etc.) (§ 239. *a*).
   2. Of Asking or Teaching (§ 239. *c*).
   3. Of Concealing (§ 239. *d*).
3. IDIOMATIC USES:
   1. Adverbial (§ 240. *a, b*).
   2. Of Specification (Greek Accusative) (§ 240. *c*).
   3. Of Extent and Duration (§ 240. *e*).
   4. Of Exclamation (§ 240. *d*).
   5. Subject of Infinitive (§ 240. *f*).

1. Direct Object.

237. (RULE 31.) The Direct Object of a transitive verb is put in the Accusative (§ 177).

The accusative of the Direct Object denotes (*a*) that which is *directly affected*, or (*b*) that which is *caused* or *produced* by the action of the verb: as,—

(*a*) Brūtus **Caesarem** interfēcit, *Brutus killed Cæsar.*

(*b*) **aedem** facere, *to make a temple.* [Compare **proelium pūgnāre**, *to fight a battle*, § 238.]

NOTE.—There is no definite line by which transitive verbs can be distinguished from intransitive. Verbs which usually take a direct object (expressed or implied) are called transitive, but many of these are often used *intransitively* or *absolutely*. Thus **timeō**, *I fear*, is transitive in the sentence **inimīcum timeō**, *I fear my enemy*, but intransitive (*absolute*) in **nōlī timēre**, *don't be afraid.*

a. The object of a transitive verb in the active voice becomes its subject in the passive, and is put in the nominative (§ 177. *a*): as, —

Brūtus **Caesarem** interfēcit, *Brutus killed Cæsar.*

Caesar ā Brūtō interfectus est, *Cæsar was killed by Brutus.*

domum aedificat, *he builds a house.*

domus aedificātur, *the house is building* (being built).

b. Many verbs apparently intransitive, expressing *feeling*, take an accusative, and may be used in the passive: as, —

meum **cāsum lūctumque** doluērunt (Sest. 145), *they grieved* [at] *my calamity and sorrow.*

sī nōn **Acrisium** rīsissent Iūppiter et Venus (Hor. O. iii. 16. 5), *if Jupiter and Venus had not laughed* [at] *Acrisius.*

c. Verbs of *taste*, *smell*, and the like take an accusative of the quality: as, —

vīnum redolēns (Cic.), *smelling* [of] *wine.*

herbam mella sapiunt (Plin.), *the honey tastes* [of] *grass.*

NOTE. — These are properly Cognate Accusatives (§ 238).

d. Verbs of motion, compounds of **circum** and **trāns**, and a few others, often become transitive, and take the accusative (cf. § 228. *a*): as, —

cōnsulātum ineunt (Liv. ii. 28), *they enter upon the consulship.*

sī īnsulam adīsset (B. G. iv. 20), *if he should go to the island.*

trānsīre flūmen (id. ii. 23), *to cross the river* (cf. § 239. *b*).

cīvēs quī circumstant senātum (Cat. i. 21), *the citizens who stand about the senate.*

e. The accusative is used with the impersonals **decet, dēlectat, iuvat, oportet, fallit, fugit, praeterit**: as, —

tē nōn praeterit (Fam. i. 8), *it does not escape your notice.*

mē pedibus dēlectat claudere verba (Hor. Sat. ii. 1. 28), *my delight is* (it pleases me) *to arrange words in measure.*

nisi **mē** fallit, *unless I am mistaken* (unless it deceives me).

So after **latet** in poetry and post-classical prose: as, —

latet plērōsque (Plin. ii. 82), *it is unknown to most persons.*

NOTE 3. — Many verbs usually intransitive are sometimes used transitively from a similarity of meaning with other verbs that regularly take the accusative: as, —

multa gemēns īgnōminiam (Georg. iii. 226), *groaning much at the disgrace.* [Cf. **doleō**, § 237. *b.*]

festīnāre fugam (Æn. iv. 575), *to hasten their flight.* [Cf. **accelerō.**]

f. In early and popular usage some nouns and adjectives derived from transitive verbs retain verbal force sufficient to govern the accusative: as, —

quid tibi **hanc** tāctiō est (Plaut. Poen. 1308), *what business have you to touch her?* [Cf. **tangō.**]

mīrābundī **bestiam** (App. Met. iv. 16), *full of wonder at the creature.* [Cf. **mīror.**]

g. In early usage the impersonal gerundive with **esse** governs the accusative (§ 294. *c*): as, —

quam nōbīs ingrediendum sit (Cat. Maj. 6), *which* (road) *we must enter upon.* [Here Cicero purposely uses an archaic construction.]

h. Many verbs ordinarily transitive may be used *absolutely* (§ 237. note), having their natural object in the ablative with **dē**: as, —

priusquam Pompōnius **dē** ēius **adventū** cōgnōsceret (B. C. iii. 101), *before Pomponius could learn of his coming.* [Cf. **ēius adventū cōgnitō,** *his arrival being discovered.*]

i. For Accusative and Genitive after Impersonals, see § 221. *b.*

2. Cognate Accusative.

238. (RULE 32.) A neuter verb often takes the accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or in some other manner.

This construction is called the *Cognate Accusative* or *Accusative of Kindred Signification.* Thus, —

tertiam iam aetātem hominum vīvēbat (Cat. Maj. 31), *he was now living the third generation of men.*

coīre societātem, *to* [go together and] *form an alliance.*

a. The Cognate Accusative is often loosely used by the poets: as,—

saltāre Cyclōpa (Hor. Sat. i. 5. 63), *to dance the Cyclops* (represent in dancing).

Amaryllida resonāre (Ecl. i. 5), *to reëcho* [the name of] *Amaryllis.*

intonuit laevum (Æn. ii. 693), *it thundered on the left.*

b. A neuter pronoun or colorless noun or adjective is very common as cognate accusative (cf. §§ 148. *d* and 240. *a*). Thus, —

Empedoclēs **multa alia** peccat (N. D. i. 29), *Empedocles commits many other slips.*

quid mē ista laedunt (Agr. ii. 32), *what harm do those things do me?*
hōc tē moneō, *I give you this warning* (cf. note, below).
id laetor, *I rejoice at this* (cf. note, below).

So in many common phrases: as, —

sī quid ille sē velit (B. G. i. 34), *if he should want anything of him* (if he should want him in anything).
numquid mē vīs, *can I do anything more for you?* (there is nothing you want of me, is there?) [A common form of leave-taking.]
id valet, *it amounts to this.*

NOTE. — In these cases substantives *with a definite meaning* would be in some other construction: as, —

bonīs rēbus laetārī, *to rejoice at prosperity.* [Also: **in, dē,** or **ex.**]
dē testāmentō monēre, *to remind one of the will.* [Later: genitive, § 219. *c.*]

c. A few verbs in isolated expressions take the accusative from a forcing of their meaning. Such expressions are —

ferīre foedus, *to strike a treaty* (*i.e.* to sanction by striking down a victim).
vincere iūdicium (**spōnsiōnem, rem, hōc**), *to prevail on a trial,* etc. [As if the case were a difficulty to overcome; cf. **vincere iter,** Æn. vi. 688.]
terram nāvigāre (Fin. ii. 112), *to sail over the land.* [Perhaps quoted from a poet.]
aequor nāvigāre, *to sail the sea.* [As if it were **trānsīre,** § 237. *d.*]
maria aspera iūrō (Æn. vi. 351), *I swear by the rough seas.* [The accusative with verbs of *swearing* is chiefly poetic.]

3. Two Accusatives.

239. Some transitive verbs take a second accusative in addition to their Direct Object.

This second accusative is either (1) a Predicate Accusative or (2) a Secondary Object.

a. Predicate Accusative.

1. An accusative in the Predicate referring to the same person or thing as the Direct Object, but not in apposition with it, is called a Predicate Accusative (cf. § 185. head-note).

a. (RULE 33.) Verbs of ***naming***, ***choosing***, ***appointing***, ***making***, ***esteeming***, ***showing***, and the like, may take a Predicate Accusative: as, —

Cicerōnem **cōnsulem** creāre, *to elect Cicero consul.*

mē **augurem** nōmināvērunt (Phil. ii. 4), *they nominated me for augur.*

hominem prae sē nēminem putāvit (Cic.), *he thought nobody a man in comparison with himself.*

NOTE 1. — The predicate accusative may be an adjective: as, —

hominēs ex ferīs et immānibus **mītēs** reddidit et **mānsuētōs** (Inv. i. 2), *has made men from wild and barbarous* [creatures] *gentle and mild.*

NOTE 2. — In changing from the active voice to the passive, the predicate accusative becomes predicate nominative (§ 185): as, —

rēx ab suīs appellātur (B. G. vii. 4), *he is called king by his* [subjects].

b. Secondary Object.

2. (RULE 34.) The Accusative of the Secondary Object is used (along with the direct object) to denote something more remotely affected by the action of the verb.

b. Transitive verbs compounded with prepositions sometimes take a Secondary Object, originally governed by the preposition: as, —

Caesar Germānōs **flūmen** trāicit (B. C. i. 83), *Cæsar throws the Germans across the river.*

NOTE 1. — But with these verbs the preposition is more commonly repeated, or sometimes the ablative is used: as, —

dōnec rēs suās **trāns Halyn** flūmen trāicerent (Liv. xxxviii. 25), *till they should get their possessions across the river Halys.*

(exercitus) **Padō** trāiectus Cremōnam (Liv. xxi. 56), *the army was conveyed across the Po to Cremona* (by way of the Po, § 258. *g*).

NOTE 2. — The secondary object may be retained with a passive verb: as, —

Belgae **Rhēnum** trāductī sunt (B. G. ii. 4), *the Belgians were led over the Rhine.*

NOTE 3. — Sometimes the Secondary Object appears to become the subject of a passive verb; but this comes from a change of meaning, and the object is really Direct. See the Remark.

REMARK. — The double construction indicated in *b* is possible only when the force of the preposition and the force of the verb are each distinctly felt in the compound, the verb governing the Direct, and the preposition the Secondary object.

But often the two parts of the compound become closely united to form a transitive verb of simple meaning. So **trāiciō** comes to mean either (1) *to pierce* (anybody) [*by hurling*] or (2) *to cross* (a river, etc.): as, —

(1) gladiō hominem trāiēcit, *he pierced the man with a sword.* [Here **iaciō** has lost all transitive force, and serves simply to give the force of a verb to the meaning of **trāns**, and to tell the *manner* of the act.]
(2) Rhodanum trāiēcit, *he crossed the Rhone.* [Here **iaciō** has become simply a verb of motion, and **trāiciō** is hardly distinguishable from **trānseō**.]

In these examples **hominem** and **Rhodanum**, which would be secondary objects if **trāiēcit** were used in its primary signification, have become the direct objects. Hence in the passive construction they become the subjects and are put in the nominative. Thus, —

homō trāiectus est gladiō, *the man was pierced with a sword.*
Rhodanus trāiectus est, *the Rhone was crossed.*

The poetical **trāiectus lōra** (Æn. ii. 273), *pierced with thongs*, comes from a mixture of two constructions: —

(1) eum trāiēcit lōra, *he rove thongs through him*,[1] and
(2) eum trāiēcit lōrīs, *he pierced him with thongs.*

In putting the sentence into a passive form, the direct object of the former (**lōra**) is irregularly kept, and the direct object of the latter (**eum**) is made the subject.

c. (RULE 35.) Verbs of *asking* and *teaching* may take two accusatives, one of the Person (*direct object*), and the other of the Thing (*secondary object*): as, —

mē sententiam rogāvit, *he asked me my opinion.*
docēre puerōs elementa, *to teach children their A B C's.*

NOTE 1. — Some verbs of *asking* take the ablative of the person with a preposition instead of the accusative. So, always, **petō** (**ab**), **quaerō** (**ex**, **ab**, **dē**) often **postulō** (**ab**), and occasionally others: as, —

pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt (B. G. ii. 13), *they sought peace from the Romans.*

NOTE. 2. — With the passive of verbs of asking or teaching, the *person* or the *thing* may be used as subject: as, —

Caesar sententiam rogātus est, *Cæsar was asked his opinion.*

REMARK. — The accusative of the *thing* may be retained with the passive of rogō, and of verbs of teaching, and occasionally with a few other verbs: as, —

[1] Perhaps not found in the active, but cf. **trāiectō fūne** (Æn. v. 488).

fuerant **hoc** rogātī (Cæl. 64), *they had been asked this.*

Cicerō per lēgātōs **cūncta** ēdoctus (Sall. Cat. 45), *Cicero being informed of everything through the ambassadors.*

But with most verbs of asking in prose the accusative of the thing becomes the subject-nominative, and the person is expressed by the ablative with a preposition: as, —

nē postulantur quidem vīrēs **ā senectūte** (Cat. M. 34), *strength is not even expected of an old man* (asked from old age).

d. The verb **cēlō**, *conceal*, may take two accusatives, and the usually intransitive **lateō**, *lie hid*, an accusative of the person (cf. § 237. *e*): as, —

nōn tē cēlāvī **sermōnem** T. Ampī (Fam. ii. 16), *I did not conceal from you the talk of T. Ampius.*

nec latuēre dolī **frātrem** Iūnōnis (Æn. i. 130), *nor did the wiles of Juno escape the notice of her brother.*

4. Idiomatic Uses.

240. The Accusative has the following special uses: —

a. A neuter pronoun or adjective is used as cognate accusative with an adverbial force (*Adverbial Accusative*, cf. § 238. *b*): as, —

quid moror, *why do I delay?*

dulce loquentem (Hor. Od. i. 22. 24), *sweetly speaking.*

acerba tuēns (Æn. ix. 794), *looking cruelly.*

torvum clāmat (id. vii. 399), *he cries harshly.*

NOTE. — This use does not differ from the cognate accusative except that in some cases the connection of the accusative with the verb has faded out so that the words are real adverbs. But no fixed line can be drawn between these two constructions.

b. The accusative is found in a few adverbial phrases: as, —

id temporis, *at that time.*

id (istūc) aetātis, *at that age.*

id (quod) genus, *of that* (*what*) *sort* (perhaps originally nominative).

meam vicem, *on my part.*

māximam partem, *for the most part.*

virīle secus, *of the male sex* (probably originally in apposition).

cētera, *in other respects.*

quod sī, *but* (as to which) *if.*

quid est quod, *why is it that?*

c. The so-called *synecdochical* or Greek accusative is used by the poets to denote the part affected : as, —

caput nectentur (Æn. v. 309), *their head shall be bound* (they shall be bound about the head).
ārdentīs **oculōs** suffectī sanguine et īgnī (id. ii. 210), *their glaring eyes bloodshot and blazing with fire* (suffused as to their eyes, etc.).
nūda **genū** (id. i. 320), *bare to the knee.*

NOTE. — In many apparently similar expressions the accusative may be regarded as the direct object of a verb in the middle voice (§ 111. *a*) : as, —

inūtile **ferrum** cingitur (Æn. ii. 510), *he girds on the useless steel.*
nodō **sinūs** collēcta fluentīs (id. i. 320), *having her flowing folds gathered in a knot.*
umerōs īnsternor pelle leōnis (id. ii. 722), *I cover my shoulders with a lion's skin.*

d. The accusative is used in exclamations : as, —

Ō fortūnātam rempūblicam, *oh, fortunate republic!* [Cf. Ō fortūnāta mors (Phil. xiv. 31), *oh, happy death!* (§ 241. *c*).]
mē miserum, *ah, wretched me!*
ēn quātuor ārās (Ecl. v. 65), *lo, four altars!*
prō deūm fidem, *good heavens* (oh, protection of the gods)!
huncine hominem (Verr. v. 62), *this man, good heavens!*
Ō mē īnfēlīcem (Mil. 102), *oh, unhappy me!*

NOTE. — The omission of the verb has given rise to some other idiomatic accusatives. Such are —

salūtem (sc. dīcit) (in letters), *greeting.*
quō mihi fortūnam, *of what use is fortune?* [Here no verb is thought of.]

e. (RULE 37.) Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative (see §§ 256, 257).

f. (RULE 36.) The subject of the infinitive mood is in the accusative. This is especially frequent after words of knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving (*verba sentiendī et dēclārandī*, see § 272).

g. The accusative in later writers is sometimes used in apposition with a clause.

h. For the accusative of the End of Motion, see § 258 ; for that after **postrīdiē, propior**, etc., see § 261. *a.*

[For the Accusative with Prepositions, see § 152. *a, c.*]

IV. VOCATIVE.

241. The Vocative is the case of direct address: as, —

Tiberine pater, tē **sancte** precor (Liv. ii. 10), *O, father Tiber, thee, holy one, I pray.*

a. A noun in the nominative in apposition with the subject of the imperative mood is sometimes used instead of the vocative : as, —

audī **tū, populus Albānus** (Liv. i. 24), *hear, thou people of Alba.*

b. The vocative of an adjective is sometimes used instead of the nominative, where the verb is in the second person : as, —

cēnsōrem **trabeāte** salūtās (Pers. iii. 29), *robed you salute the censor.*

c. The nominative may be used in exclamations (cf. § 240. *d*): as, —

ēn dextra fidēsque (Æn. iv. 597), *lo, the faith and plighted word!*

d. The word **mācte** is used as a predicate in the phrase **mācte estō (virtūte)**, *success attend your* (valor). Thus, —

iubērem tē mācte virtūte esse (Liv. ii. 12), *I should bid you go on and prosper in your valor.*

Note. — As the quantity of the final **e** in **mācte** is not determinable, it may be that the word was an adverb, as in **bene est**, and the like. (See American Journal of Philology, Vol. I.)

V. ABLATIVE.

242. The Ablative is used to denote the relations expressed in English by the prepositions FROM, IN, AT, WITH, BY : as, —

līberāre metū, *to deliver from fear.*
caecus avāritiā, *blind with avarice.*
occīsus gladiō, *slain by the sword.*

The following are the uses of the Latin Ablative, classed according to the original cases which have been combined in it: —

1. Ablative (*from*):
   1. Of Separation, Privation, and Want (§ 243).
   2. Of Source (participles of origin, etc.) (§ 244).
   3. Of Cause (**gaudeō, dīgnus**, etc.) (§ 24).
   4. Of Agent (with **ab** after Passives) (§ 246).
   5. Of Comparison (THAN) (§ 247).

2. **Instrumental Ablative** (*with*):
- 1. Of Manner, Means, and Instrument (§ 248).
- 2. Of Accompaniment (with cum) (§ 248. *a*).
- 3. Of Object with the Deponents ūtor, etc. (§ 249).
- 4. Of Degree of Difference (§ 250).
- 5. Of Quality (with Adjectives) (§ 251).
- 6. Of Price and Exchange (§ 252).
- 7. Of Specification (§ 253).

3. **Locative Ablative** (*in, on, at*):
- 1. Of Place *where* (commonly with in) (§ 254).
- 2. Of Idiomatic Expressions (§ 254. *a*).
- 3. Of Time and Circumstance (§ 256).
- 4. Ablative Absolute (§ 255).

1. Ablative of Separation.

243. (Rule 38.) Words signifying Separation or Privation are followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition.

a. Verbs meaning to *remove*, *set free*, *be absent*, *deprive*, and *want*, require the ablative: as,—

oculīs se prīvāvit (Fin. v. 87), *he deprived himself of eyes.*
lēgibus solūtus, *relieved from the obligation of laws.*
omnī Galliā interdīcit Rōmānōs (B. G. i. 46), *he* (Ariovistus) *bars the Romans from the whole of Gaul.*
voluptātibus carēre (Cat. Maj. 7), *to lack enjoyments.*
nōn egeō medicīnā (Læl. 10), *I want no physic.*
māgnō mē metū līberābis (Cat. i. 10), *you will relieve me of great fear.*

b. Verbs compounded with **ā, ab, dē, ex,** take the simple ablative when used *figuratively*; but when used literally to denote *separation* or *motion*, they usually require a preposition (see § 258). Thus,—

cōnātū dēsistere (B. G. i. 8), *to desist from the attempt.*
abīre magistrātū, *to leave one's office.*
abstinēre iniūriā, *to refrain from wrong.*
But,—aberrāre ā prōpositō (Cic.), *to wander from the point.*
dē prōvinciā dēcēdere (Verr. ii. 49), *to withdraw from one's province.*
ex cīvitāte excēssēre (B. G. vi. 8), *they departed from the state.* [But cf. fīnibus suīs excēsserant (id. iv. 18), *they had left their own territory.*]
ā māgnō dēmīssum nōmen Iūlō (Æn. i. 288), *a name descended* (sent down) *from great Iulus.*

Note.—For the Dative used instead of the Ablative of Separation, see § 229.

c. For the ablative of the actual *place whence* in idiomatic expressions, see § 258. *a*, and note 2.

d. Adjectives denoting *freedom* and *want* take the ablative: as, —

urbs nūda praesidiō (Att. vii. 13), *the city naked of defence.*
immūnis mīlitiā (Liv. i. 43), *free of military service.*
plēbs orba tribūnīs (Leg. iii. 9), *the people deprived of tribunes.*

NOTE. — Some adjectives of want take the genitive (see § 218. *a*).

e. (RULE 39.) **Opus** and **ūsus**, signifying *need*, are followed by the ablative: as, —

magistrātibus opus est (Leg. iii. 5), *there is need of magistrates.*
nunc vīribus ūsus (Æn. viii. 441), *now there is need of strength.*

NOTE. — With these words the ablative of the *perfect participle*, with or without a noun, is often found (§ 292. *b*): as, —

opus est tuā exprōmptā memoriā atque astūtiā (Ter. And. 723), *I must have your good memory and cleverness set to work.*
properātō opus erat (Mil. 49), *there was need of haste.*
factō ūsus est, *it is desirable to do* (there is need of it's being done).

REMARK. — Frequently **opus** is in the predicate, with the *thing needed* in the nominative as subject: as, —

dūx nōbīs et **auctor** opus est (Fam. ii. 6, 4), *we need a chief and responsible adviser* (a chief, etc., is necessary for us).
sī **quid** ipsī opus esset (B. G. i. 34), *if he himself wanted anything* (if anything should be necessary for him).

f. **Egeō** and **indigeō** often take the genitive (§ 223): as, —

nē quis **auxilī** egeat (B. G. vi. 11), *lest any require aid.*
quae ad cōnsōlandum māiōris **ingenī** et ad ferendum singulāris **virtūtis** indigent (Fam. vi. 4, 2), [sorrows] *which for their comforting need more ability, and for endurance unusual courage.*

2. Ablative of Source and Material.

244. (RULE 40.) The ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to denote the Source from which anything is derived, or the Material of which it consists.

These ablatives commonly take a preposition: as, —

1. Source: —

Rhēnus oritur **ex Lēpontiīs** (B. G. iv. 10), *the Rhine rises in* (from) *the country of the Lepontii.*

2. Material: —

valvās māgnificentiōrēs, **ex aurō** atque **ebore** perfectiōrēs (Verr. iv. 124), *more splendid doors, more finely wrought of gold and ivory.*

templum dē **marmore** pōnam (Georg. iii. 13), *I 'll build a temple of marble.*

NOTE 1. — In poetry the preposition is often omitted.

NOTE 2. — The Ablative of Material is a development of the Ablative of Source (cf. § 214).

a. Participles denoting *birth* or *origin* are followed by the Ablative of Source, generally without a preposition:[1] as, —

Iove nātus et Māiā (N. D. iii. 56), *son of Jupiter and Maia.*

quō sanguine crētus (Æn. ii. 74), *born of what blood.*

REMARK. — A preposition (**ab, dē, ex**) is usually expressed with the name of the *mother*, and often with that of other ancestors: as, —

Trōs est generātus **ab illō** (Ov. Fast. iv. 33), *Tros was sprung from him.*

Bēlus et omnēs **ā Bēlō** (Æn. i. 730), *Belus and all his descendants.*

b. Rarely the place of birth is expressed by the ablative; as, —

dēsīderāvit C. Felgīnātem **Placentiā**, A. Grānium **Puteolīs** (B. C. iii. 71), *he lost C. Felginas of Placentia, A. Granius of Puteoli.*

NOTE. — The Roman tribe is regularly expressed by the ablative: as, —

Q. Verrem **Rōmiliā** (Verr. i. 23), *Quintus Verres of the Romilian tribe.*

c. Some verbs may take the Ablative of Material without a preposition. Such are **cōnstāre, cōnsistere**, and **continērī**. But with **cōnstāre, ex** is more common. Thus, —

domūs amoenitās nōn **aedificiō** sed **silvā** cōnstābat (Nep. Att. 13), *the charm of the house consisted not in the buildings but in the woods.*

ex animō cōnstāmus et **corpore** (Fin. iv. 19), *we consist of soul and body.*

vīta corpore et **spīritū** continētur (Marc. 28), *life consists of body and spirit.*

d. The Ablative of Material without a preposition is used with **facere, fierī**, and like words, in the sense of *do with, become of:* as, —

quid hōc **homine** faciātis (Verr. II. i, 42), *what are you going to do with this man?*

quid **Tulliolā** meā fīet (Fam. xiv. 4), *what will become of my dear Tullia?*

quid **tē** futūrum est (Verr. ii. 155), *what will become of you?*

e. The Ablative of Material with **ex**, and in poetry without a preposition, sometimes depends directly on a noun: as, —

nōn pauca pōcula **ex aurō** (Verr. iv. 62), *not a few cups of gold.*

scopulīs pendentibus antrum (Æn. i. 166), *a cave of hanging rocks.*

[1] Such are **nātus, satus, ēditus, genitus, ortus, prōgnātus, generātus, crētus, creātus, oriundus.**

3. Ablative of Cause.

245. (RULE 41.) The ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express *Cause*.

nimiō gaudiō paene dēsipiēbam (Fam. ii. 9), *I was almost wild from too great joy.*
neglegentiā plectimur (Læl. 85), *we are chastised for negligence.*
certīs **dē causīs**, *for certain reasons.*
mare **ā sōle** lūcet (Acad. ii. 105), *the sea gleams in the sun* (from the sun).

a. (RULE 42.) Certain verbs and adjectives regularly take the ablative of cause without a preposition. These are —

1. The adjectives **dīgnus, indīgnus**: as, —

vir **patre avō māiōribus suīs** dīgnissimus (Phil. iii. 25), *a man most worthy of his father, grandfather, and ancestors.*
tē **omnī honōre** indīgnissimum iūdicat (Vatin. 39), *he judges you entirely unworthy of every honor.*

2. The verbs **dīgnor, labōrō** (also with **ex**), **exsiliō, exsultō, triumphō, lacrimō, ārdeō**: as, —

haud equidem **tālī** mē dīgnor **honōre** (Æn. i. 335), *I do not deem myself worthy of such an honor.*
doleō tē **aliīs malīs** labōrāre (Fam. iv. 3), *I am sorry that you suffer with other ills.*
ex aere aliēnō labōrāre (B. C. iii. 22), *to labor under debt* (lit., from another's money).
exsiluī **gaudiō** (Fam. xvi. 16), *I jumped for joy.*
dēlictō dolēre (Læl. 90), *to grieve for the fault.*

NOTE 1. — For **gaudeō** and **glōrior**, see § 254. *b.*

NOTE 2. — **Dīgnus** and **indīgnus** sometimes take the genitive in colloquial usage and in poetry: as, —

dīgnus **salūtis** (Plaut. Trin. 1153), *worthy of safety.*
māgnōrum haud umquam indīgnus **avōrum** (Æn. xii. 649), *never unworthy my great ancestors.*

NOTE 3. — For the construction of **dīgnus** and **indīgnus** with verbs, see § 320. *f.*

b. The *motive* which influences the mind of the person acting is expressed by the ablative of cause; the *object* exciting the emotion often by **ob** or **propter** with the accusative: as, —

nōn **ob praedam** aut spoliandī **cupīdine** (Tac. H. i. 63), *not for booty or through lust of plunder.*

amīcitia **ex sē** et **propter sē** expetenda (Fin. ii. 83), *friendship must be sought of and for itself.*

NOTE. — But these constructions are often confused: as, —

pārēre lēgibus **propter metum** (Parad. 34), *to obey the laws on account of fear.* [Here **metum** is almost equal to "the terrors of the law," and **propter** is used where the ablative would be more natural.]

c. The ablatives **causā** and **grātiā**, *for the sake of*, are used with a genitive preceding, or with a pronoun in agreement: as, —

eā causā, *on account of this;* quā grātiā (Ter. Eun. 99), *for what purpose?*
meā causā, *for my sake;* meā grātiā (Plaut.), *for my sake.*
praedictiōnis causā (N. D. iii, 5), *by way of prophecy.*
exemplī grātiā (verbī grātiā), *for example.*

NOTE. — But **grātiā** with possessives in this use is rare.

4. Ablative of Agent.

246. (RULE 43.) The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**: as, —

laudātur **ab hīs**, culpātur **ab illīs** (Hor. Sat. i. 2. 11), *he is praised by these, blamed by those.*

nē virtūs **ab audāciā** vincerētur (Sest. 92), *that valor might not be overborne by audacity.*

REMARK. — The ablative of the *agent* (which requires **ā** or **ab**) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of *instrument*, which has no preposition (§ 248. *c.* 1). Thus, —

occīsus **gladiō**, *slain by a sword;* but, occīsus **ab hoste**, *slain by an enemy.*

a. The ablative of the agent with **ab** is sometimes used after neuter verbs that have a passive sense: as, —

perīre **ab hoste**, *to be slain by an enemy.*

b. The agent, if conceived as instrument or means, is expressed by **per** with the accusative, or by **operā** with a genitive or possessive: as, —

Caesar certior factus est **ā lēgātīs**, *Cæsar was informed by the ambassadors* (in person). But —

Caesar certior factus est **per lēgātōs**, *Cæsar was informed by ambassadors* (*i.e.* by means of ambassadors).

nōn **meā operā** ēvēnit (Ter. Hec. 228), *it has n't happened through me* (by my exertions).

NOTE 1. — An animal is usually regarded not as the *agent*, but as the *means* or *instrument*. Hence the simple ablative is used. But **ab** sometimes occurs. Thus, —

equō vehī, *to ride on horseback* (be conveyed by means of a horse). [Not **ab equō**.] But —

Lūcānō cum sīc lacerēris **ab ursō** (Mart. Ep. 8), *since you are thus mangled by a Lucanian bear.*

NOTE 2. — For the Dative of the Agent with the Gerundive, see § 232.

5. Ablative of Comparison.

247. (RULE 44.) The Comparative degree is followed by the ablative (signifying THAN) : as, —

Catō est **Cicerōne** ēloquentior, *Cato is more eloquent than Cicero.*

quid **nōbīs duōbus** labōriōsius est (Mil. 5), *what more burdened with toil than we two?*

vīlius argentum est **aurō**, **virtūtibus** aurum (Hor. Ep. i. 1. 52), *silver is less precious than gold, gold than virtue.*

a. (RULE 45.) The comparative may be followed by **quam**, *than*. When **quam** is used, the two things compared are put in the same case (cf. § 208. *a*).

The construction with **quam** is required when the first of the things compared is in any other case than the nominative or accusative. With those cases its use is optional. Thus, —

contiōnibus accommodātior est quam **iūdiciīs** (Clu. 2), *fitter for popular assemblies than for courts.*

misericordiā dīgnior quam **contumēliā** (Piso 32), *more worthy of pity than of disgrace.*

REMARK. — Relative pronouns having a definite antecedent never take **quam** in this construction, but always the ablative : as, —

rēx erat Aenēās nōbīs, quō iūstior alter, etc. (Æn. i. 544), *Æneas was our king, than whom no other was more righteous*, etc.

NOTE. — The poets sometimes use the ablative of comparison where the prose construction requires **quam**: as, —

pāne egeō iam **mellītīs** potiōre **placentīs** (Hor. Ep. i. 10. 11), *I want bread better than honey-cakes.*

b. The idiomatic ablatives **opīniōne, spē, solitō, dictō, aequō, crēdibilī,** and **iūstō** are used after comparatives instead of a clause : as, —

gravius aequō (Sall.), *more seriously than was right.*
celerius **opīniōne** (Fam. xiv. 23), *faster than one would think.*
amnis **solitō** citātior (Liv. xxiii. 19), *a stream swifter than its wont.*
sērius **spē omnium** (id. ii. 3), *later than all hoped* (than the hope of all).

c. After the comparatives **plūs, minus, amplius, longius** without **quam,** a word of *measure* or *number* is often used with no change in its case: as, —

plūs **septingentī** captī (Liv. xli. 12), *more than 700 were taken.*
plūs **tertiā parte** interfectā (Cæs.), *more than a third part being slain.*
spatium nōn amplius **sexcentōrum pedum** (id.), *a space of not more than 600 feet.*

d. **Alius** is sometimes used with the ablative in poetic and colloquial use; in formal prose it takes **āc (atque), nisi, quam.** Thus, —

alius Lȳsippō (Hor.), *another than Lysippus.*
aliō ingeniō **āc** tū (Plaut.), *of a different disposition from you.*
erat histōria nihil aliud **nisi** annālium cōnfectiō (De Or. ii. 52), *history was nothing else but a compiling of records.*

e. The comparative of an adverb is usually followed by **quam,** rarely by the ablative except in poetry. Thus, —

tempus tē citius **quam ōrātiō** dēficeret (Rosc. Am. 89), *time would fail you sooner than words.* But —
cūr Sybaris olīvum **sanguine vīperīnō** cautius vītat (Hor. Od. i. 8. 9), *why does Sybaris shun oil more carefully than viper's blood?*

6. Ablative of Manner.

248. (Rule 46.) The *manner* of an action is denoted by the ablative; usually with **cum,** unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. Thus, —

cum celeritāte vēnit, *he came with speed.* But —
summā celeritāte vēnit, *he came with the greatest speed.*
quid rēfert **quā** mē **ratiōne** cōgātis (Læl. 26), *what difference does it make in what way you compel me?*

Note. — But **cum** is often used even when the ablative has a limiting adjective: as, —

quantō cum perīculō id fēcerit (B. G. i. 17), *at what risk he did this.*

Remark. — In poetry the ablative of manner often omits **cum:** as, —

mōns aquae sequitur **cumulō** (Æn. i. 105), *a mountain of water follows in a mass.* [Cf. **murmure** (id. 124); **rīmīs** (id. 123).]

7. Ablative of Accompaniment.

a. (RULE 47.) *Accompaniment* is denoted by the ablative, regularly with **cum**: as, —

cum coniugibus āc **līberīs** vestrīs, *with your wives and children.*

cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī (B. G. ii. 19), *having crossed the river with the archers and slingers.*

NOTE. — The ablative is used without **cum** in military phrases, and here and there by early writers: as, —

subsequēbātur **omnibus cōpiīs** (B. G. ii. 19), *he followed close with all his forces.*

hōc praesidiō profectus est (Verr. II. i, 86), *with this force he set out.*

REMARK. — **Mīsceō** and **iungō**, with their compounds, and **cōnfundō** may take either (1) the Ablative of Accompaniment with or without **cum**, or (2) sometimes the Dative: as, —

mīxta **dolōre** voluptās (B. Al. 56), *pleasure mingled with pain.*

flētumque **cruōrī** mīscuit (Ov. Met. iv. 140), *and mingled tears with blood.*

Caesar eās cohortēs **cum suō exercitū** coniūnxit (B. C. i. 18), *Cæsar united those cohorts with his own army.*

b. Words of Contention and the like require **cum**: as, —

armīs **cum hoste** certāre, *to fight with the enemy in arms.*

libenter haec **cum Q. Catulō** disputārem (Manil. 66), *I should gladly discuss these matters with Quintus Catulus.*

NOTE. — But words of contention may take the Dative in poetry (see § 229. *c*).

8. Ablative of Means.

c. 1. (RULE 48.) The ablative is used to denote the *means or instrument* of an action: as, —

certantīs **pūgnīs, calcibus, unguibus, morsū** dēnique (Tusc. v. 77), *fighting with fists, heels, nails, and even teeth.*

cum **pūgnīs** et **calcibus** concīsus esset (Verr. iii. 56), *when he had been pummelled with their fists and heels.*

2. The Ablative of Means is used with verbs and adjectives of *filling, abounding*, and the like: as, —

aggere et **crātibus** fōssās explent (B. G. vii. 86), *they fill up the ditches with earth and fascines.*

tōtum montem **hominibus** complēvit (id. i. 24), *he filled the whole mountain with men.*

opīmus **praedā** (Verr. II. i, 132), *rich with spoils.*

REMARK. — In poetry the Genitive is often used with these words by a Greek idiom. But **compleō, impleō, plēnus,** and **refertus** often take the genitive in prose (cf. § 223). Thus, —

omnia plēna **lūctūs** et **maerōris** fuērunt (Sest. 128), *everything was full of grief and mourning.*

249. (RULE 49.) The deponents **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,** with several of their compounds, govern the ablative : as, —

ūtar vestrā **benignitāte** (Arch. 18), *I will avail myself of your kindness.*
ita mihi salvā **rēpūblicā** vōbīscum **perfruī** liceat (Cat. iv. 11), *so may I enjoy with you the state secure and prosperous.*
aurō hērōs **potitur** (Ov. Met. vii. 155), *the hero takes the gold.*
fungī inānī **mūnere** (Æn. vi. 885), *to perform an idle service.*

a. **Potior** sometimes takes the Genitive, as always in the phrase **potīrī rērum,** *to get control* or *be master of affairs* (§ 223. *a*) : as, —

tōtius Galliae sēsē **potīrī** posse spērant (B. G. i. 3), *they hope they can get possession of the whole of Gaul.*

9. Ablative of Degree of Difference.

250. (RULE 50.) With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference : as, —

quīnque mīlibus passuum distat, *it is five miles distant* (by five miles).
aliquot ante annīs (Tusc. i. 4), *several years before.*
multō mē vigilāre ācrius (Cat. i. 8), *that I watch much more sharply* (more sharply by much).

REMARK. — This use is especially frequent with the ablatives **quō . . . eō (hōc); quantō . . . tantō** (cf. § 106. *c*): as, —

quō minus cupiditātis, **eō** plūs auctōritātis (Liv. xxiv. 28), *the less greed, the more weight* (by what the less, by that the more).
quantō erat gravior oppūgnātiō, **tantō** crēbriōrēs litterae mīttēbantur (B. G. v. 45), *the severer the siege was, the oftener letters were sent.*

NOTE. — To this construction are doubtless to be referred all cases of quō and eō with a comparative, even when they have ceased to be felt as degree of difference and approach the Ablative of Cause : as, —

eōque mē **minus** paenitet (N. D. i. 8), *and for that reason I regret less,* etc. (by so much the less I regret).

a. The Ablative of Comparison (§ 247) and the Ablative of Degree of Difference may be used together with the same adjective: as,—

multō dīvitior Crassō, *much richer than Crassus.*

10. **Ablative of Quality.**

251. (RULE 51.) *Quality* is denoted by the Ablative with a Modifier (either an adjective or limiting genitive).

This is called the *Descriptive Ablative* or *Ablative of Quality.*

animō meliōre sunt gladiātōrēs (Cat. ii. 26), *the gladiators are of a better mind.*

quae cum esset cīvitās **aequissimō iūre** āc **foedere** (Arch. 6), *as this was a city with perfectly equal constitutional rights.*

mulierem **eximiā pulchritūdine** (Verr. II. i, 64), *a woman of extraordinary beauty.*

NOTE.—The Ablative of Quality (like the Genitive of Quality) modifies a substantive by *describing* it. It is therefore equivalent to an adjective, and may be either attributive or predicate. In this it differs from other ablatives, which are equivalent to adverbs. Compare—

mulier pulchra, *a beautiful woman.*
mulier māgnā pulchritūdine, *a woman of great beauty,* with—
mulier pulchritūdine Trōiam dēlēvit, *by her beauty a woman destroyed Troy.*
mulier excellēns pulchritūdine (§ 253), *a woman preëminent in beauty.*

a. In expressions of quality the Genitive or the Ablative may often be used indifferently; but *physical* qualities are oftener denoted by the Ablative: as,—

capillō sunt prōmīssō (B. G. v. 14), *they have long hair.*

11. **Ablative of Price.**

252. (RULE 52.) *Price* is expressed by the ablative: as,—

agrum vēndidit sēstertiūm **sex mīlibus**, *he sold the land for 6000 sesterces.*

Antōnius rēgna addīxit **pecūniā** (Phil. vii. 15), *Antony sold thrones for money.*

a. Certain adjectives of Quantity are used in the genitive to denote *indefinite value.* Such are **māgnī, parvī, tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris**: as,—

est mihi **tanti** (Cat. ii. 15), *it is worth the price* (it is of much).
meā **māgni** interest, *it is of great consequence to me.*
illud **parvī** rēfert (Manil. 18), *this is of small account.*

NOTE. — These are really genitives of quality (§ 215. *c*).

b. The genitive of certain colorless nouns is used in the same way. Such are **nihilī**, *nothing;* **assis**, *a farthing;* **floccī** (a lock of wool), *a straw.* Thus, —

nōn **floccī** faciō (Att. xiii. 50), *I care not a straw.*
utinam ego istūc abs tē factum **nihilī** penderem (Ter. Eun. 94), *oh! that I cared nothing for this being done by you!*

c. With verbs of *exchanging*, either the *thing taken* or the *thing given* in exchange may be in the Ablative of Price. Such are: **mūtāre, commūtāre, permūtāre, vertere.** Thus, —

fidem suam et religiōnem **pecūniā** commūtāre (Cluent. 129), *to barter his faith and conscience for money.*
vertere **fūneribus** triumphōs (Hor. Od. i. 35. 4), *to change the triumph to the funeral train* (exchange triumphs for funerals).
exsilium **patriā sēde** mūtāvit (Q. C. iii. 7), *he exchanged his native land for exile* (he took exile in exchange for his native land).

NOTE. — With verbs of exchanging **cum** is often used, perhaps with a different conception of the action: as, —

ariēs . . . **cum croceō** mūtābit vellera **lūtō** (Ecl. iv. 44), *the ram shall change his fleece for* [one dyed with] *the yellow saffron.*

d. With verbs of *buying* and *selling* the simple ablative of price must be used, except in the case of **tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris**: as, —

quantī eam ēmit? **vīlī** . . . quot **minīs**? quadrāgintā **minīs** (Pl. Epid. 51), *what did he buy her for? Cheap. For how many minæ? Forty.*

12. Ablative of Specification.

253. (RULE 53.) The Ablative of Specification denotes that *in respect to which* anything *is* or *is done:* as, —

virtūte praecēdunt (B. G. i. 1), *they excel in courage.*
claudus alterō **pede** (Nep. Ages 8), *lame of one foot.*
sunt enim hominēs nōn **rē** sed **nōmine** (Off. i. 105), *for they are men not in fact, but in name.*
māior **nātū**, *older;* minor **nātū**, *younger* (cf. § 91. *c*).

īnfirmus mollisque **nātūrā** (Læl. 75), *weak and yielding by nature.*

homō **meā sententiā** prūdentissimus (Cæcin. 22), *a man, in my opinion, very wise.*

equitātū pulsī erant (B. G. vii. 68), *they had been beaten in the cavalry fight.*

NOTE. — To this head are to be referred many expressions where the ablative denotes that *in accordance with* which anything is or is done. But as the Romans had no such categories as we make, it is impossible to classify all uses of the ablative. Hence the ablative of *specification* is closely akin to that of *manner*, and to many ablatives developed from other fundamental ideas. Thus, —

meō iūre, *with perfect right;* but, **meō modō**, *in my fashion.*

meā sententiā, *in my opinion;* but also more formally, **ex meā sententiā**. [Here the sense is the same, but the first ablative is *specification;* the second, *source.*]

quī vincit **vīribus** (Læl. 55), *who surpasses in strength.* [Here it is impossible to tell whether **vīribus** is the *means* of the superiority or that *in respect to which* one is superior.]

a. The Supine in **-ū**, used chiefly with adjectives, is equivalent to an ablative of specification (cf. §§ 114. *b*, 303): as, —

mīrābile dictū, *marvellous to tell.*

13. Ablative of Place.

254. (RULE 57.) The ablative is used to denote the *place where* (usually with the preposition **in**, § 258. *c*).

a. The ablative of the *place where* is retained in many idiomatic expressions (cf. § 259. *a*) which have lost the idea of place: as, —

pendēmus **animīs** (Tusc. i. 96), *we are in suspense of mind* (in our minds).

socius **perīculīs** vōbīscum aderō (Jug. 85, 47), *I will be present with you, a companion in dangers.*

premit altum **corde** dolōrem (Æn. i. 209), *he keeps down the pain deep in his heart.*

b. 1. Several verbs are regularly followed by the ablative, originally of place. These are: **acquiēscō, dēlector, laetor, gaudeō, glōrior, nītor, stō, maneō, fīdō (cōnfīdō), cōnsistō, contineor.**

nōminibus veterum glōriantur (Orat. 169), *they glory in the names of the ancients.* [Also, dē dīvitiīs, in virtūte, circā rem, aliquid, glōriārī.]

spē nītī (Att. iii. 9), *to rely on hope.*

prūdentiā fīdēns (Off. i. 8), *trusting in prudence.*

2. (Rule 42.) The verbals **frētus**, **contentus**, and **laetus** take the ablative either of *place* or *means* : as, —

frētus grātiā Brūtī (Att. v. 21, 12), *relying on the favor of Brutus.*
laetus praedā, *rejoicing in the booty.*
contentus sorte, *content with his lot.* [Possibly abl. of cause.]

Remark. — The ablative with the above verbs sometimes takes the preposition **in** (and the ablative with them is probably locative): as, —

in quibus causa nītitur (Cæl. 25), *on whom the case depends.*

With several of these verbs the neuter accusative of pronouns is often found.

14. Ablative Absolute.

255. (Rule 54.) A noun or pronoun, with a participle, may be put in the ablative to define the *time* or *circumstances* of an action : as, —

nōndum **hieme cōnfectā** (B. G. vi. 3), *the winter not yet over.*
nē vōbīs quidem omnibus **rē** etiam tum **probātā** (Cat. ii. 4), *since at that time the facts were not yet proved even to all of you.*

a. An adjective, or a second noun, may take the place of the participle in the Ablative Absolute construction : as, —

exiguā parte aestātis **reliquā** (B. G. iv. 20), *when but a small part of the summer was left* (a small part of the summer remaining).
M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōnsulibus (id. i. 2), *in the consulship of Messala and Piso* (Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso being consuls). [The regular way of expressing dates, see § 259. *e.*]

b. In later Latin a phrase or clause, used substantively, sometimes occurs as ablative absolute with a participle or an adjective : as, —

incertō quid peterent (Liv. xxviii. 36), *as it was uncertain what they should aim at* (it being uncertain, etc.).
compertō vānam esse formīdinem (Tac. Ann. i. 66), *when it was found that the alarm was groundless.*

c. A participle or an adjective is sometimes used adverbially in the ablative absolute without a substantive : as, —

cōnsultō et cōgitātō (Off. i. 27), *on purpose and with reflection* (the matter having been deliberated and thought on).
serēnō (Liv. xxxi. 12), *under a clear sky* (it [being] clear).

d. The Ablative Absolute in its developed form often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause, the noun being equivalent to a subject, and the other word to the predicate. So may be replaced —

1. Temporal clauses (§§ 322 ff.) : as, —

patre interfectō, [his] *father having been killed.* [This corresponds to **cum pater interfectus esset,** *when his father had been killed.*]

recentibus sceleris ēius vestīgiīs (Q. C. vii. 1, 1), *while the traces of the crime were fresh.* [Cf. **dum recentia sunt vestīgia.**]

2. Causal clauses (§ 321) : as, —

at eī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur **praeteritā diē** quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, **cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō,** conciliō coāctō cōnsultābant (B. G. vii. 77), *but those who were under siege at Alesia since the time,* etc., *had expired, and their grain had been exhausted, calling a council* (see 5 below), *consulted together.* [Cf. **cum diēs praeteriisset,** etc.]

Dārēus, **dēspērātā pāce,** ad reparandās vīrēs intendit animum (Q. C. iv. 6, 1), *Darius, since he despaired of peace, devoted his energies to recruiting his forces.* [Cf. **cum pācem dēspērāret.**]

3. Concessive clauses (§ 313) : as, —

at **eō repūgnante** fīēbat (cōnsul), immō vērō eō fīēbat magis (Milo 34), *but though he* (Clodius) *opposed, he* (Milo) *was likely to be elected consul; nay, rather,* etc.

4. Conditional clauses (§ 304) : as, —

occurrēbat eī, mancam et dēbilem praetūram futūram suam, **cōnsule Milōne** (Milo 25), *it occurred to him that his prætorship would be maimed and feeble if Milo were consul.* [**si Milō cōnsul esset.**]

quā (regiōne) **subāctā** licēbit dēcurrere in illud mare (Q. C. ix. 3, 13), *if this region is subdued, we shall be free to run down into that sea.*

quā quidem **dētrāctā** (Arch. 28), *if this be taken away.*

5. Clauses of accompanying circumstance : as, —

ego haec ā Chrȳsogonō meā sponte, **remōtō Sex. Rosciō,** quaerō (Rosc. Am. 130), *of my own accord, without reference to Sextus Roscius* (S. R. being put aside), *I ask these questions of Chrysogonus.*

nec imperante nec sciente nec praesente dominō (Milo 29), *without their master's giving orders, or knowing it or being present.*

NOTE. — As the English case absolute (the nominative) is far less common than the ablative absolute in Latin, a change of form is generally required in translation. Thus the present participle is oftenest to be ren-

dered by a relative clause with *when* or *while;* and the perfect passive participle by the perfect active participle in English. These changes may be seen in the following example: —

"At illī, *intermissō spatiō, imprūdentibus nostrīs*, atque *occupātīs* in mūnītiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt; *impetū*que in eōs *factō*, quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs collocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt; *duābusque missīs* subsidiō *cohortibus* ā Caesare, cum hae (*perexiguō intermissō* locī *spatiō* inter sē) cōnstitissent, novō genere pūgnae *perterritīs nostrīs*, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt, sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt." — CÆSAR, B. G. v. 15.

"But they, *having paused a space, while our men* were *unaware* and *busied* in fortifying the camp, suddenly threw themselves out of the woods, then *making an attack* upon those who were on guard in front of the camp, they fought fiercely, and *though two cohorts had been sent* by Cæsar as reinforcements, after these had taken their position (*leaving very little space* of ground between them) *as our men were alarmed* by the strange kind of fighting, they dashed most daringly through the midst of them, and got off safe."

VI. TIME AND PLACE.

1. Time.

256. (RULE 55.) Time *when*, or *within which*, is expressed by the Ablative; time *how long* by the Accusative: as, —

1. Ablative: —

cōnstitūtā diē, *on the appointed day;* prīmā lūce, *at daybreak.*
quotā hōrā, *at what o'clock?* tertiā vigiliā, *in the third watch.*
tribus proxumīs annīs (Jug. 11), *within the last three years.*

2. Accusative: —

diēs continuōs trīgintā, *for thirty days together.*
cum trīduum iter fēcisset (B. G. ii. 16), *when he had marched three days.*

a. The Ablative of time *within which* sometimes takes **in**, and the Accusative of time *how long*, **per** for greater precision: as, —

in diēbus proximīs decem (Sall.), *within the next ten days.*
in brevī spatiō (Ov. Met. i. 411), *within a brief space* (of time).
lūdī per decem diēs (Cat. iii. 20), *games for ten days.*

b. Duration of time is occasionally expressed by the Ablative: as, —

mīlitēs **quīnque hōrīs** proelium sustinuerant (B. C. i. 47), *the men had sustained the fight five hours.*

2. **Space.**

257. (RULE 37.) Extent of space is expressed by the Accusative : as, —

fōssās quīndecim pedēs lātās (B. G. vii. 72), *trenches fifteen feet broad.*

in omnī vītā suā quemque ā rēctā cōnscientiā **trānsversum unguem** nōn oportet discēdere (quoted in Att. xiii. 20), *in all one's life, one should not depart a nail's breadth from straightforward conscience.*

a. Measure is often expressed by the Genitive of Quality (§ 215. *b*) : as, —

vallō **pedum** duodecim (B. G. ii. 30), *in a rampart of twelve feet* (in height).

b. Distance when considered as *extent of space* is expressed by the Accusative ; when considered as *degree of difference*, by the Ablative (§ 250) : as, —

quīnque diērum **iter** abest (Liv. xxx. 29), *it is distant five days' march.*

trīgintā **mīlibus** passuum īnfrā eum locum (B. G. vi. 35), *thirty miles below that place* (below by thirty miles).

3. **Place from Which and End of Motion.**

258. (RULE 56.) The *place from which* is denoted by the Ablative with **ab, dē,** or **ex**; the *place to which* (the End of Motion) by the Accusative with **ad** or **in**: as, —

1. Place from which : —

ā septentriōne, *from the north.*

dē prōvinciā dēcēdere, *to come away from one's province.*

dē monte, *down from the mountain.*

negōtiātor ex Āfricā (Verr. II. i, 14), *a merchant from Africa.*

ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt (B. G. iv. 38), *they sent hostages from Britain.*

Mōsa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō (id. iv. 10), *the Meuse* (flows from) *rises in the Vosges mountains.*

2. Place to which : —

ad fīnēs Hyrcāniae penetrat (Q. C. vi. 4, 2), *he penetrates to the borders of Hyrcania.*

in Āfricam nāvigāvit, *he sailed to Africa.*

in Ītaliam profectus, *gone to Italy.*

lēgātum in Treverōs mīttit (B. G. iii. 11), *he sends his lieutenant into the* [country of the] *Treveri.*

NOTE 1. — In poetry the end of motion is often expressed by the Dative (§ 225. *b.* 3): as, —

it clāmor caelō (Æn. v. 451), *a shout goes up to the sky.*

a. (RULE 56.) The names of towns or small islands *from which*, as also **domus** and **rūs**, are put in the Ablative without a preposition: as, —

Rōmā profectus, *having set out from Rome.*
rūre reversus, *having returned from the country.*
Rōmā abesse, *to be absent from Rome.*
domō abīre, *to leave home.*

NOTE 1. — With names of towns, etc., **ab** is often used, commonly to denote *from the vicinity of*: as, —

erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra (B. G. vii. 45), *there was from about G. a view into the camp.*
profectī ā domō (Liv. xl. 33), *setting out from home.*

NOTE 2. — The ablative without a preposition is used to denote the *place from which* in certain idiomatic expressions: as, —

cēssisset patriā (Mil. 68), *he would have left his country.*
patriā pellere, *to drive out of the country.*
manū mittere, *to emancipate* (let go from the hand).

NOTE 3. — The poets often omit the preposition where it would be required in prose: as, —

mānīs Acheronte remīssōs (Æn. v. 99), *the spirits returned from Acheron.*

b. (RULE 56.) The names of towns or small islands *to which*, as also **domus** and **rūs**, are put in the Accusative without a preposition: as, —

Rōmam rediit, *he returned to Rome.*
Dēlō Rhodum nāvigāre, *to sail from Delos to Rhodes.*
rūs ībō, *I shall go into the country.*
domum iit, *he went home.* [So, suās domōs abīre, *to go to their homes.*]

NOTE 1. — In this use **domum** may be modified by a possessive pronoun or a genitive. When otherwise modified, **domum** requires the preposition **in**. Thus, —

domum rēgis (Deiot. 17), *to the king's house.* [But also in **M. Laecae domum** (Cat. i. 8), *to M. Laeca's house.*] But —
in domum māgnam venīre, *to come into a large house.*

NOTE 2. — With the names of towns, etc., **ad** may be used in the sense of *towards, to the neighborhood of*: as, —

ad Alesiam proficiscuntur (B. G. vii. 76), *they set out for Alesia.*
ad Alesiam perveniunt (id. vii. 79), *they arrive at Alesia* (come through to).
ad Athēnās nāvigāre, *to set sail for Athens* (landing in the harbor).

NOTE 3. — The general words, **urbs, oppidum, īnsula**, require a preposition in either construction (*to which* or *from which*): as, **ad urbem, ab urbe, ad urbem Rōmam, Rōmam ad urbem, ex urbe Rōmā.**

NOTE 4. — Two or more nouns are sometimes expressed after one verb as limits of motion (see § 259. *h*).

NOTE 5. — The poets often omit the preposition with any noun: as, —

Ītaliam Lāvīniaque vēnit lītora (Æn. i. 2), *he came to Italy and the Lavinian shores.*
fīnīs Italōs mīttēre (id. iii. 440), *you shall be allowed to reach the Italian boundaries.*

REMARK. — The preposition is omitted with the supine in **-um** (§ 302) and in the following old phrases: —

exsequiās īre, *to go to the funeral.* īnfitiās īre, *to resort to denial.*
pessum īre, *to go to ruin.* pessum dare, *to ruin* (cf. **perdō**).
vēnum dare, *to sell* (give to sale). [Hence **vēndere.**]
vēnum īre, *to be sold* (go to sale). [Hence **vēnīre.**]
forās (used as adverb), *out*: as, forās ēgredī, *to go out of doors.*

4. The Place Where.

c. (RULE 57.) 1. The *place where* is denoted by the Ablative with the preposition **in** (*Locative Ablative*): as, —

in hāc urbe vītam dēgit, *he passed his life in this city.*
sī in Galliā remanērent (B. G. iv. 8), *if they should stay in Gaul.*
oppidum in īnsulā positum (id. vii. 58), *a town situated on an island.*

2. (RULE 57.) But names of towns and small islands are put in the Locative Case. (See 36. *c*, 40. *a*, and 62.)

Rōmae, *at Rome* (Rōma). Athēnīs, *at Athens* (Athēnae).

REMARK. — Large islands, and all places when thought of as a *territory* and not as *a locality*, are treated like names of countries: as, —

in Siciliā, *in Sicily.*
in Ithacā leporēs illātī moriuntur (Plin. H. N.), *in Ithaca hares when carried there die.* [*Ulysses lived at Ithaca*, would require **Ithacae.**]

NOTE 1. — With all names of places AT, meaning *near* (not *in*), is expressed by **ad** or **apud** with the Accusative. *In the neighborhood of* may be expressed by **circā** with the Accusative; *among*, by **apud** with the Accusative. Thus, —

pūgna ad Cannās, *the fight at Cannæ.*
conchās ad Cāiētam legunt (De Or. ii. 22), *at Caieta* (along the shore).
ad (apud) īnferōs, *in the world below* (near *or* among those below).
apud Graecōs, *among the Greeks.* **apud mē**, *at my house.*

NOTE 2. — In citing an *author*, **apud** is regularly used; in citing a particular *work*, **in**. Thus, —

apud Xenophōntem, *in Xenophon.* But —
in Xenophōntis Oeconomicō, *in Xenophon's Œconomicus.*

d. (RULE 57.) The Locative Case is also preserved in the following common nouns: —

domī (rarely **domuī**), *at home.*
bellī, mīlitiae (in contrast to **domī**), *abroad, in military service.*
humī, *on the ground.* **rūrī**, *in the country.*
foris, *out-of-doors.* **terrā marīque**, *by land and sea.*

These are used like names of towns, without a preposition. So, also, —

herī(-e), *yesterday.* **vesperī (e)**, *in the evening.*
īnfēlīcī arborī (Liv. i. 26), *on the ill-omened tree.*

e. The locative **domī** may be modified by a possessive adjective or a limiting genitive; but when it would be otherwise modified some other construction is used instead of the Locative. Thus, —

domī Caesaris, *at Cæsar's house.*
domī suae vel aliēnae, *at his own or another's house.* But —
in Mārcī Crassī castissimā domō (Cæl. 9), *in the chaste home of Marcus Crassus.* [Cf. **ex** Anniānā Milōnis domō, § 184. *d.*]

f. The *place where* is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in several constructions: —

1. Regularly in many indefinite words, such as **locō, parte**: as, —

quibus **locō** positīs (De Or. iii. 153), *when these are set in position.*
quā parte victī erant (Cic.), *on the side where they were beaten.* But —
exercitum **castrīs** continuit (B. G. i. 48), *he kept his army in camp.* [Here the construction is influenced by *means.*]

2. Frequently with nouns which are qualified by adjectives (regularly when **tōtus** is used): as, —

mediā urbe (Liv. i. 33), *in the middle of the city.*
tōtā Siciliā (Verr. iv. 51), *throughout Sicily* (in the whole of Sicily). So —
tōtā Tarracīnā (De Or. ii. 240), *in all Tarracina* (cf. *c.* 2. Rem.).

3. Freely in poetry: as, —

lītore curvō (Æn. iii. 16), *on the winding shore.*
antrō sēclūsa relinquit (id. iii. 446), *she leaves them shut up in the cave.*
Ēpīrō, Hesperiā (id. iii. 503), *in Epirus, in Hesperia.*

g. The *way by which* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition: as, —

viā breviōre equitēs praemīsī (Fam. x. 9), *I sent forward the cavalry by a shorter road.*
Aegaeō marī trāiēcit (Liv. xxxvii. 14), *he crossed by way of the Ægean Sea.*
prōvehimur pelagō (Æn. iii. 506), *we sail forth over the sea.*

5. Special Uses of Time and Place.

259. The following special uses must be observed: —

a. Many expressions have in Latin the construction of *time when*, where in English the main idea is rather of *place:* as, —

pūgnā Cannēnsī (*or* apud Cannās), *in the fight at Cannæ.*
lūdīs Rōmānīs, *at the Roman games.*
omnibus Gallicīs bellīs, *in all the Gallic wars.*

b. In many idiomatic expressions of time, the accusative with **ad**, **in**, or **sub** is used. Such are the following: —

supplicātiō dēcrēta est in Kalendās Iānuāriās, *a thanksgiving was voted for the 1st of January.*
convēnērunt ad diem, *they assembled at the* [appointed] *day.*
ad vesperum, *till evening;* sub vesperum, *towards evening.*
sub idem tempus, *about the same time.*
sub noctem, *at night-fall.*

c. Time *during which* or *within which* may be expressed by the ablative of a noun in the singular, with an ordinal numeral: as, —

quīntō diē, *within* [just] *four days* (lit., on the fifth day). [The Romans counted both ends, see § 376. *d.*]
rēgnat iam sextum annum, *he has reigned going on six years* (he is reigning now the sixth year).
But also, — rēgnāvit iam sex annōs, *he has already reigned for six years.*

d. Difference of time *before* or *after* anything is variously expressed: as, —

post (ante) trēs annōs, post tertium annum, trēs post annōs, tertium post annum, tribus post annīs, tertiō post annō (§ 250), *three years after.*
tribus annīs (tertiō annō) post exsilium (postquam ēiectus est,) *three years after his exile.*

hīs tribus proximīs annīs, *within the last three years.*
paucīs annīs, *a few years hence.*
abhinc annōs trēs (tribus annīs), ante hōs trēs annōs, *three years ago.*
triennium est cum (trēs annī sunt cum), *it is three years since.*
octāvō mēnse quam (see § 262. note 2), *the eighth month after.*

e. In Dates the phrase **ante diem (a. d.)** with an ordinal, or the ordinal alone, is followed by an accusative, like a preposition; and the phrase itself may also be governed by a preposition.

The year is expressed by the names of the consuls in the ablative absolute, often without a conjunction (§ 255. *a*): as,—

is diēs erat a. d. quīntum Kalendās Aprīlīs L. Pisōne A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus (B. G. i. 6), *that day was the 5th before the calends of April* (March 28), *in the consulship of Piso and Gabinius.*
in a. d. v. Kal. Nov. (Cat. i. 7), *to the 5th day before the calends of November* (Oct. 28).
xv. Kal. Sextīlīs, *the 15th day before the calends of August* (July 18). [Full form: **quīntō decimō diē ante Kalendās.**]

f. For AT, meaning *near* (not *in*), see § 258. *c.* note 1.

g. When *motion to* a place is implied in English, though not expressed, the accusative with or without a preposition must be used in Latin: as,—

coniūrātī **in cūriam** convēnērunt, *the conspirators met in the Senate-house* (came together into the Senate-house).
concilium **domum** suam convocāvit, *he called a council at his own house.*

h. When two or more names of place follow a verb of motion, each must be under its own construction. Thus,—

quadriduō quō haec gesta sunt rēs **ad Chrȳsogonum in castra** L. Sullae **Volāterrās** dēfertur (Rosc. Am. 20), *within four days after this was done, the matter was reported* TO *Chrysogonus* IN *Sulla's camp* AT *Volaterræ.*

VII. USE OF PREPOSITIONS.

260. Some Prepositions are used with the Accusative, some with the Ablative, and a few with both.

a. Verbs of *placing*, though implying motion, take the construction of the place *in which.*

Such are: **pōnō** and its compounds (except **impōnō**), **locō**, **collocō**, **statuō**, **cōnstituō**, etc.

statuitur eques Rōmānus **in** Aprōnī **convīviō** (Verr. iii. 62), *a Roman knight is brought into a banquet of Apronius.*

sī **in** **ūnō Pompēiō** omnia pōnerētis (Man. 59), *if you made everything depend on Pompey alone.*

b. Position is frequently expressed by the Ablative with **ab** (rarely **ex**), properly meaning *from:* as, —

ā tergō, *in the rear.*

ā sinistrā, *on the left hand.* [Cf. hinc, *on this side.*]

māgnā ex parte, *in a great degree* (*from, i.e. in*, a great part).

c. **Super** in the sense of *concerning* takes the Ablative; in all other senses it takes the Accusative: as, —

hāc super rē (Cic.), *concerning this thing.*

sed hāc rē super nimis (Att. x. 8, 10), *but more than enough on that point.*

super culmina tēctī (Æn. ii. 695), *above the house-top.*

super laterēs coria indūcuntur (B. C. ii. 10), *hides are drawn over the bricks.*

super Numidiam (Jug. 19), *beyond Numidia.*

super terrae tumulum (Legg. ii. 66), *on the mound of earth.*

Note. — The ablative is used in poetry with **super** in other senses: as, —

līgna super focō largē repōnēns (Hor. Od. i. 9. 5), *piling logs generously on the fire.*

nocte super mediā (Æn. ix. 61), *after midnight.*

d. **Subter** takes the Accusative, except sometimes in poetry. Thus, —

subter togam (Liv.), *under his mantle.* But —

subter lītore (Catull.), *below the shore.*

e. **Tenus** (which follows its noun) regularly takes the Ablative, but sometimes the Genitive (§ 223. *e*). Thus, —

Taurō tenus (Deiot. 36), *as far as Taurus.*

capulō tenus (Æn. ii. 553), *up to the hilt.*

Corcӯrae tenus (Liv. xxvi. 24), *as far as Corcyra.*

261. Many words may be construed either as Prepositions or as Adverbs: thus, —

a. The adverbs **prīdiē, postrīdiē, propius, proximē,**[1] **usque** — also (less frequently) the adjectives **propior** and **proximus** — may be followed by the Accusative (cf. §§ 207. *b*, 234. *e*): as, —

[1] Cf. **prope,** § 152. *a.*

pridiē Nōnās Iūniās (Cic.), *the day before the Nones of June* (June 4).
ipse propior montem suōs collocat (Jug. 49), *he stations his men nearer the hill.*
proximē Pompēium sedēbam (Att. I. 14), *I sat next to Pompey.* [Cf. **proximus Pompēium sedēbam.**]
pars īnsulae quae est propius sōlis occāsum (B. G. iv. 28), *the part of the island which is nearer the west* (sunset).
terminōs usque Libyae (Just.), *to the bounds of Libya.*

NOTE. — **Pridiē** and **postrīdiē** take also the Genitive (§ 223. *e.* note 2). **Propior, propius, proximus,** and **proximē** take also the Dative, or the Ablative with **ab.** **Usque** is commonly followed by **ad.** Thus, —

propius Tiberī (Nep.), *nearer the Tiber.*
propius ab urbe (Plin.), *nearer the city.*
usque ad mare, *to the sea.*

b. The adverbs **palam, procul, simul,** may be used as prepositions and take the Ablative (so, perhaps, **intus**): as, —

rem crēditōrī palam **populō** solvit (Liv. vi. 14), *he paid the debt in the presence of the people.*
haud procul castrīs in modum mūnicipiī exstrūcta (Tac. H. iv. 22), *not far from the camp, built up like a town.*
simul **nōbīs** habitat barbarus (Ov. Tr. v. 10. 29), *close among us dwells the barbarian.*

NOTE. — But **simul** regularly takes **cum**; **procul** is usually followed by **ab** in classic use; and **palam** as a preposition is comparatively late. Thus, —

procul ā marī, *far from the sea.*
nōbīscum simul, *at the same time with ourselves.*

c. The adverb **clam** is found with the Accusative or Ablative, rarely with the Genitive or Dative: as, —

clam mātrem suam (Plaut.), *unknown to his mother.*
clam mihi (id.), *in secret from me.*
clam patris (id.), *without his father's knowledge.*
clam vōbīs (B. C. ii. 32), *without your knowledge.*

d. Prepositions often retain their original meaning as adverbs. So, especially, —

1. **Ante** and **post** in relations of time: as, —

quae paulō ante praecepta dedimus (Cic.), *a little while ago,* etc.
post tribus diēbus, *three days after* (cf. § 259. *d*).

2. **Adversus, contrā, circiter, prope**: as, —

adversus resistere, *to hold out in opposition.*
Aeolus haec **contrā**, *thus Æolus in reply.*

3. In general those ending in **-ā**: as, —

forte fuit **iūxtā** tumulus, *there happened to be a mound close by.*

262. Some prepositions or adverbs which imply Comparison are followed, like comparatives, by **quam**, either attached to them or separated by several words, or even clauses.

neque **ante** dīmīsit eum **quam** fidem dedit (Liv. xxxix. 10), *nor did he let him go until he gave a pledge.*
post diem tertium **quam** dīxerat (Mil. 44), *the third day after he said it.*

NOTE 1. — Such words are **ante, prius, post, prīdiē, postrīdiē**; also **magis** and prae in compounds: as, —

Catō ipse iam servīre **quam** pūgnāre **māvult** (Att. vii. 15), *Cato himself by this time would rather be a slave than fight.*

NOTE 2. — The ablative of time (§ 256) is sometimes followed by **quam** in the same way: as, —

octāvō mēnse quam (Liv. xxi. 15), *within eight months after*, etc.

263. For **ā** or **ab** with the Ablative of Agent, see § 246.

NOTE. — The following prepositions sometimes follow their nouns: **ad, citrā, circā, contrā, dē, ē (ex), inter, iūxtā, penes, propter, ūltrā, tenus** (regularly), and occasionally others: as, —

[ūsus] **quem penes** arbitrium est et iūs et nōrma loquendī (Hor. A. P. 72), *custom, under whose control is the choice, right, and rule of speech.*
cūius ā mē corpus est cremātum, **quod contrā** decuit ab illō meum (C. M. 84), *whose body I burned* [on the funeral pile], *while on the contrary* (lit. *contrary to which*) *mine should have been burned by him.*

3. SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

I. MOODS AND TENSES.

The proper verbal constructions may be thus classified: —

1. INDICATIVE: Direct Assertion or Question (§ 264).
2. SUBJUNCTIVE:
   - *a.* Independent: Wish, Exhortation, Command, Question (§ 265. *a*).
   - *b.* Dependent:
     1. Purpose (with **ut, nē**) (§ 317).
     2. Result (with **ut, ut nōn**) (§ 319).
     3. Characteristic (Relative Clause) (§ 320).
     4. Time (with **cum**) (§ 325).
     5. Conditions:
        - Future (less vivid) (§ 307. *b, c*).
        - Contrary to Fact (§ 308).
     6. Intermediate (Indirect Discourse) (§ 341).
     7. Indirect Questions or Commands (§§ 334, 339).
3. IMPERATIVE:
   1. Direct Commands (often subjunctive) (§ 269).
   2. Statutes, Laws, and Wills (§ 269. *d*).
   3. Prohibitions (early or poetic use) (§ 269. note).
4. INFINITIVE:
   - *a.* Subject of **esse** and Impersonal verbs (§ 270).
   - *b.* Objective Constructions:
     1. Complementary Infinitive (§ 271).
     2. Indirect Discourse (with subject-accusative) (§ 272).
   - *c.* Idiomatic Uses:
     1. Purpose (poetic or Greek use) (§ 273).
     2. Exclamation (with subject-accusative) (§ 274).
     3. Historical Infinitive (§ 275).

MOODS.

I. THE INDICATIVE.

264. The Indicative is the mood of direct assertions or questions when there is no modification of the verbal idea except that of time.

a. The Tenses of the Indicative generally denote time, as ***present***, ***past***, or ***future***, with reference to the speaker (§§ 276 ff.).

b. The Indicative is sometimes used where the English idiom would suggest the Subjunctive: as, —

longum est, *it would be tedious* [if, etc.].
satius erat, *it would have been better* [if, etc.].
persequī possum, *I might follow up* [in detail].

c. The Future is sometimes used for the Imperative (§ 269. *f*).

d. The Indicative is used in some kinds of conditions (§§ 306, 308).

II. The Subjunctive.

265. The Subjunctive in general expresses the verbal idea with some modification[1] such as is expressed in English by auxiliaries, by the infinitive, or by the rare subjunctive (§ 112. *b*).

The uses of the subjunctive are *independent* or *dependent*.

a. The Subjunctive is used *independently* to express—

(1) An Exhortation, Concession, or Command (*Hortatory*, § 266).
(2) A Wish (*Optative*, § 267).
(3) A Question of Doubt or Deliberation (*Deliberative*, § 268).

b. The Subjunctive is used in *dependent* clauses to express—

(1) Purpose (*Final*, § 317).
(2) Result (*Consecutive*, § 319).
(3) Characteristic (§ 320).
(4) Time (*Temporal*, § 325).
(5) Indirect Question (§ 334).
(6) Condition: future or contrary to fact (§§ 307. *b*, *c*, 308).

c. The subjunctive is also used with Particles of Comparison (§ 312), and in subordinate clauses in the Indirect Discourse (§ 336).

[1] These modifications are of various kinds, each of which had its own special development. The subjunctive in Latin has also many idiomatic uses (see clauses of Result and Time), where the English does not modify the verbal idea at all, but expresses it directly; but in these cases the Latin merely takes a different view of the action, and has developed its construction differently from the English.

1. Hortatory Subjunctive.

266. (RULE 68.) The Hortatory Subjunctive is used to express an *exhortation*, a *command*, a *concession*, or a *condition*.

hōs lātrōnēs **interficiāmus** (B. G. vii. 38), *let us kill these robbers.*
caveant intemperantiam, **meminerint** verēcundiae (Off. i. 122), *let them shun excess and cherish modesty.*

NOTE 1. — The simple subjunctive of exhortation and command takes the present tense, less commonly the perfect. The Perfect represents an action as completed in future time, but in most cases is equivalent to the Present. Other tenses are used in some varieties of this construction (see *c*, note, and *e*).

REMARK. — The negative particle with the hortatory subjunctive is **nē**.

a. The Second Person is used only of an *indefinite subject*, except in prohibition, in early Latin, and in poetry (cf. § 269. *b*). Thus, —

iniūriās fortūnae, quās ferre nequeās, dēfugiendō **relinquās** (Tusc. v. 118), *the wrongs of fortune, which you cannot bear, leave behind by flight.*
exoriāre aliquis ultor (Æn. iv. 625), *rise, some avenger.*
nē **cōnferās** culpam in mē (Ter. Eun. 388), *don't lay the blame on me.*

b. In Prohibitions addressed to a definite person, the perfect is more common than the present (cf. § 269. *a*) : as, —

hōc facitō : hōc nē **fēceris** (Div. ii. 127), *thou shalt do this; thou shalt not do that.*
tū nē **quaesieris** (Hor.), *do not inquire.*
nec mihi illud **dīxeris** (Fin. i. 25), *and do not say that to me.*

c. The hortatory subjunctive may express a CONCESSION, sometimes with **ut, nē, quamvīs, quamlibet**, or similar words (cf. § 313. *a*) : as, —

fuerit aliīs : tibi quandō esse coepit (Verr. II. i, 37), *suppose he was* [so] *to others, when did he begin to be to you?*
ut ratiōnem Platō nūllam **afferret** (Tusc. i. 49), *though Plato adduced no reasons.*
nēmō is unquam fuit : **nē fuerit** (Or. 101), *there never was such a one* [you will say] : *granted* (let there not have been).
quamvīs scelerātī illī **fuissent** (De Or. i. 230), *however guilty they might have been.*

NOTE. — In this use the Present refers to *future* or *indefinite* time, the Imperfect to *present* or *past* time (the concession being impliedly untrue), the Perfect to *past* or *completed future* time, the Pluperfect to *completed action in past time* (the concession being usually untrue).

d. The hortatory subjunctive may denote a PROVISO or CONDITION (see §§ 310. *b*, 314).

e. The Imperfect and Pluperfect of the hortatory subjunctive denote an UNFULFILLED OBLIGATION in past time: as, —

morerētur, inquiēs (Rab. Post. 28), *he should have died, you will say.*
potius **dīceret** (Off. iii. 88). *he should rather have said.*
nē **poposcissēs** (Att. ii. 1, 3), *you should not have asked.*

2. Optative Subjunctive.

267. (RULE 69.) The Subjunctive is used to express a Wish. The present tense denotes the wish as *possible*, the imperfect as *unaccomplished* in present time, the pluperfect as *unaccomplished* in past time. Thus, —

ita **vīvam** (Att. v. 15), *so may I live* (as true as I live).
nē **vīvam** sī sciō (id. iv. 16, 8), *I wish I may not live if I know.*
dī tē **perduint** (Deiot. 21), *the gods confound thee!*
valeant, valeant, cīvēs meī; **valeant, sint** incolumēs (Mil. 93), *farewell* [he says], *my fellow-citizens; may they be secure from harm.*
dī **facerent** sine patre forem (Ov. Met. viii. 72), *would that the gods allowed me to be without a father* (but they do not)!

REMARK. — The negative particle with the optative subjunctive is **nē**.

a. The Perfect in this use is antiquated: as, —

male dī tibi **faxint** (Plaut. Curc. 131), *may the gods do thee a mischief.*
quod ōmen dī **āverterint** (Phil. xii. 14, in a religious formula), *and may the gods avert this omen.*

b. The Optative Subjunctive is often preceded by the particles **uti** (ut), **utinam, ō sī**: as, —

ut pereat positum rōbīgine tēlum (Hor. Sat. ii. 1, 43), *may the weapon unused perish with rust.*
falsus **utinam** vātēs **sim** (Liv. xxi. 10), *I wish I may be a false prophet.*
utinam P. Clōdius **vīveret** (Mil. 103), *would that Clodius were now alive.*
ō sī angulus ille **accēdat** (Hor. Sat. ii. 6. 8), *oh! if that corner might only be added.*

NOTE 1. — The subjunctive with **uti**, etc., was originally *deliberative*, meaning *how may I*, etc. (§ 268). The subjunctive with **ō sī** (*poetical*) is a protasis (§ 312. note); **sī** alone is sometimes used to express a wish in the same way: as, —

sī nunc sē nōbīs ille aureus rāmus ostendat (Æn. vi. 187), *if now that golden branch would only show itself to us!*

c. **Velim** and **vellem**, and their compounds, with a subjunctive or infinitive, are often equivalent to an optative subjunctive: as, —

dē Menedēmō **vellem** vērum **fuisset**, dē rēgīnā **velim** vērum **sit** (Att. xv. 4, 4), *about Menedemus I wish it had been true; about the queen I hope it may be.*

nōllem accidisset tempus (Fam. iii. 10, 2), *I wish the time never had come.*

a. Deliberative Subjunctive.

268. (RULE 70.) The Subjunctive is used in questions implying (1) *doubt, indignation*, or (2) an *impossibility* of the thing being done: as, —

quid hōc homine **faciās**? quod supplicium dīgnum libīdinī ēius **inveniās** (Verr. ii. 40), *what are you to do with this man? what fit penalty can you devise for his wantonness?*

an ego nōn **venīrem** (Phil. ii. 3), *what, should I not have come?*

mihi umquam bonōrum praesidium dēfutūrum **putārem** (Mil. 94), *could I think that the defence of good men would ever fail me?*

quis enim **cēlāverit** īgnem (Ov. Her. xv. 7), *who could conceal the flame?*

REMARK. — This use is apparently derived from the Hortatory Subjunctive: **quid faciāmus? = faciāmus [aliquid], quid?** *let us do — what?* Once established, it was readily transferred to the past: **quid faciam?** *what* AM *I to do?* **quid facerem?** *what* WAS *I to do?* Questions implying impossibility, however, cannot be distinguished from Apodosis.

NOTE. — The Deliberative Subjunctive is sometimes called *Dubitative.*

III. THE IMPERATIVE.

269. The Imperative is used in Commands and Entreaties: as, —

cōnsulite vōbīs, **prospicite** patriae, **cōnservāte** vōs (Cat. iv. 3), *have a care for yourselves, guard the country, preserve yourselves.*

dīc Mārce Tullī sententiam, *Marcus Tullius, state your opinion.*

NOTE. — In Negative Commands (*prohibitions*) the Present Imperative with **nē** is used by early writers and the poets : as, —

nē timē (Plaut. Curc. 520), *don't be afraid.*
nimium nē crēde colōrī (Ecl. ii. 17), *trust not too much to complexion.*
equō nē crēdite (Æn. ii. 48), *trust not the horse.*

a. (RULE 71.) Prohibition is regularly expressed in classic prose : —

1. By **nē** with the second person of the Perfect Subjunctive ; as, —

nē territus fuerīs (Tac. H. i. 16), *don't be alarmed.*

2. By **nōlī** with the infinitive : as, —

nōlī putāre (Fam. xiv. 2), *do not suppose* (be unwilling to suppose).

NOTE. — The poets frequently use instead of **nōlī** other words of similar meaning (cf. § 273. *c*) : as, —

parce piās scelerāre manūs (Æn. iii. 42), *forbear to defile your pious hands.*

3. By **cave** with or without **nē** (colloquially **fac nē**) with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive[1] (§ 266. *b*) : as, —

cave putēs (Att. vii. 20), *don't think.*
cave dīxeris, *don't say so.*
fac nē quid aliud cūrēs (Fam. xvi. 11), *see that you attend to nothing else.*

NOTE. — Other negatives sometimes take the place of **nē** : as, —

nōn dubitāveris (Sen. Q. N. i. 3, 3), *you must not doubt.*
nihil īgnōveris (Mur. 65), *grant no pardon* (pardon nothing).

b. General Prohibitions addressed to no definite person are regularly expressed by the Present Subjunctive with **nē** (cf. *c*, below) : as, —

dēnique istō bonō ūtāre dum adsit : cum absit **nē requīrās** (C. M. 33), *in short, use this good while present ; when wanting, do not regret it.*

NOTE. — The poets and early writers sometimes use the Present Subjunctive with **nē** in prohibitions not general : as, —

molestus nē sīs (Plaut. Most. 771), *don't be troublesome.*
nē sīs patruus mihi (Hor. Sat. ii. 3. 88), *don't be a* [harsh] *uncle to me.*

c. The *third person* of the Imperative is antiquated or poetic : —

iūsta imperia **suntō**, eīsque cīvēs modestē **pārentō** (Leg. iii. 6), *let there be lawful authorities, and let the citizens strictly obey them.*

[1] In prohibitions the Subjunctive with **nē** is hortatory ; that with **cave** is an object clause (originally hortatory, cf. § 331. *f.* Rem.).

NOTE. — In prose the Hortatory Subjunctive is commonly used instead (§ 266): as, —

haec igitur lēx in amīcitiā **sanciātur** (Læl. 40), *let this law be laid down in case of friendship.*

d. The Future Imperative is used in commands, etc., where there is a distinct reference to *future time:* viz., —

1. In connection with a condition precedent (as a *future*, a *future perfect*, or an *imperative*). Thus, —

Phyllida mītte mihī, meus est nātālis, Iollā; cum faciam vitulā prō frūgibus ipse **venītō** (Ecl. iii. 76), *send Phyllis to me, it is my birthday, Iollas; when I sacrifice a heifer for the harvest, come yourself.*

dīc quibus in terrīs, etc., et Phyllida sōlus habētō (id. iii. 107), *tell in what lands*, etc., *and have Phyllis for yourself.*

2. With adverbs or other expressions of Time: as, —

crās **petitō**, dabitur (Pl. Merc. 770), *ask to-morrow* [and] *it shall be given.*

3. In *general directions*, as Precepts, Statutes, and Wills: as, —

cum valētūdinī cōnsulueris, tum **cōnsulitō** nāvigātiōnī (Fam xvi. 4), *when you have attended to your health, then look to your sailing.*

Boreā flante, nē **arātō**, sēmen nē **iacitō** (Plin. H. N. xviii. 77), *when the north wind blows, plough not, nor sow your seed.*

e. The verbs **sciō**, **meminī**, and **habeō** (in the sense of *consider*), regularly use the Future Imperative instead of the Present: as, —

fīliolō mē auctum **scītō** (Att. i. 2), *learn that I am blessed with a little boy.*

sīc **habētō**, mī Tirō (Fam. xvi. 4), *so understand it, my good Tiro.*

dē pallā **mementō**, amābō (Pl. Asin. 939), *remember, dear, about the gown.*

f. The Future Indicative is sometimes used for the Imperative; and **quin** (*why not?*) with the Present Indicative may have the force of a command: as, —

sī quid acciderit novī, faciēs ut sciam (Fam. xiv. 8), *you will let me know if anything new happens.*

quīn accipis (Ter. Heaut. 832)? *here, take it* (why not take it?).

g. Instead of the simple Imperative, **cūrā**, **fac**, or **velim**, followed by the Subjunctive with or without **ut** is often used, especially in colloquial language: as, —

cūrā ut Rōmae sīs (Att. i. 2), *take care to be at Rome.*

fac ut valētūdinem cūrēs (Fam. xiv. 17), *see that you take care of your health.* [Cf. rūs eō. **fac**, amābō (Ter. Eun. 533), *I'm going into the country. Do, please.*]

domī adsītis **facite** (id. 506), *be at home, do.*

IV. The Infinitive.

1. Infinitive as Subject, etc.

270. (Rule 58.) The Infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, may be used with **est** and similar verbs (1) as the Subject, (2) in Apposition with the subject, or (3) as a Predicate Nominative. Thus, —

1. Subject: as, —

dolēre malum est (Fin. v. 84), *to suffer pain is an evil.*

pulchrum est **benefacere** reī pūblicae (Sall. Cat. 3), *it is a noble thing to benefit the state.*

mōtōs praestat **compōnere** flūctūs (Æn. i. 135), *it is better to calm the troubled waves.*

2. In Apposition with the Subject: as, —

proinde quasi iniūriam **facere** id dēmum esset imperiō ūtī (Sall. Cat. 12), *just as if this,—to commit injustice,—were to use power.* [Here **facere** is in apposition with **id.**]

3. Predicate Nominative: as, —

id est convenienter nātūrae **vīvere** (Fin. iv. 41), *that is to live in conformity with nature.* [Cf. **ūtī** in the last example.]

Note 1. — An infinitive may also be used as Direct Object in connection with a Predicate Accusative, or as Appositive with such Direct Object: as, —

istūc ipsum **nōn esse** cum fueris miserrimum **putō** (Tusc. i. 12), *for I think this very thing most wretched, not to be when one has been.*

Note 2. — An Appositive or Predicate noun used with an infinitive in any of these constructions is put in the Accusative, whether the infinitive has a subject expressed or not. Thus, —

nōn esse **cupidum** pecūnia (Parad. 51), *to be free from desires* (not to be desirous) *is money in hand.*

a. The infinitive as subject is not common except with **est** and similar verbs, but is occasionally used with verbs apparently more active in meaning: as, —

quōs omnīs eadem **cupere**, eadem **ōdisse**, eadem **metuere** in ūnum coēgit (Jug. 31, 10), *all of whom the fact of desiring, hating, and fearing the same things has united into one.*

ingenuās **didicisse** fidēliter artēs ēmollit mōrēs (Ov. ex P. ii. 9. 48), *faithfully to have learned liberal arts softens the manners.*

posse loquī ēripitur (Ov. M. ii. 483), *the power of speech is taken away.*

b. The infinitive is used with many impersonal verbs and expressions, partly as subject and partly as complementary infinitive (§ 271).

Such are **libet, licet, oportet, decet, placet, vīsum est, pudet, piget, necesse est, opus est,** etc.

id prīmum in poētīs **cernī** licet (De Or. iii. 27), *this may be seen first in poets.*

reperiēbat quid **dīcī** opus esset (Brut. 215), *he found what needed to be said.*

neque mē **vīxisse** paenitet (C. M. 84), *I do not feel sorry to have lived.*

NOTE 1. — These are generally not real cases of the infinitive used as subject, but they approach that construction.

c. Rarely the infinitive is used exactly like the accusative of a noun : as, —

beātē **vīvere** aliī in aliō, vōs in voluptāte pōnitis (Fin. ii. 86), *a happy life different* [philosophers] *base on different things, you on pleasure.*

2. Complementary Infinitive.

271. (RULE 59.) Verbs which imply *another action of the same subject* to complete their meaning take the infinitive without a subject-accusative : as, —

hōc queō dīcere (Cat. Maj. 32), *this I can say.*

mīttō quaerere (Rosc. Am. 53), *I omit to ask.*

vereor laudāre praesentem (N. D. i. 58), *I fear to praise a man to his face* (one who is present).

Such are verbs denoting *to be able, dare, undertake, remember, forget, be accustomed, begin, continue, cease, hesitate, learn, know how, fear,* and the like.

NOTE. — The mark of this construction is that no Subject of these infinitives is in general admissible or conceivable.

a. Many verbs take either a subjunctive clause or a complementary infinitive, without difference of meaning. Such are verbs signifying *willingness, necessity, propriety, resolve, command, prohibition, effort,* and the like (cf. § 331) : as, —

student **excellere** (Off. i. 116), *they aim to excel.*

cum statuissem **scrībere** ad tē aliquid (Off. i. 4), *when I had resolved to address something to you.*

istum **exhērēdāre** in animō habēbat (Rosc. Am. 52), *he had it in mind to deprive him of the inheritance.*

NOTE 1. — With some of these verbs an infinitive with subject-accusative may be used as *object*, taking the place of a *complementary* infinitive. In this use the subject of the infinitive and that of the main verb are of course the same. Thus, —

cupiō **mē esse** clēmentem (Cat. i. 4) = cupiō esse clēmens, *I desire to be merciful* (cf. § 331. *b.* note).

NOTE 2. — Some verbs of these classes never take the subjunctive, but are identical in meaning with others which do: as, —

quōs **tuērī** dēbent dēserunt (Off. i. 28), *they forsake those whom they should protect.*

nōn lubet fugere aveō **pūgnāre** (Att. ii. 18, 3), *I have no desire to run away, I'm anxious to fight.*

b. Some verbs of these classes — **iubeō** and **vetō** regularly — may take (as object) the infinitive with a subject different from that of the main verb (see § 331. *a*): as, —

signa īnferrī iubet (Liv. xlii. 59), *he orders the standards to be advanced.*

Pompēius . . . **rem** ad arma **dēdūcī** studēbat (B. C. i. 4), *Pompey was anxious to have matters come to open war.*

c. A Predicate Noun or Adjective after a complementary infinitive takes the case of the subject of the main verb: as, —

fierīque studēbam ēius prūdentiā **doctior** (Læl. 1), *I was eager to become more wise through his wisdom.*

sciō quam soleās esse **occupātus** (Fam. xvi. 21, 7), *I know how busy you usually are* (are wont to be).

NOTE. — If the construction of the main verb is impersonal, a predicate noun or adjective is in the accusative (but for **licet**, etc., see § 272. *a.* 2). Thus, —

peregrīnī officium est minimē in aliēnā esse rē pūblicā **cūriōsum** (Off. i. 125), *it is a stranger's duty to be by no means curious in a foreign state.*

3. Infinitive with Subject-Accusative.

272. (RULE 60.) The Infinitive, with Subject-Accusative, is used with verbs and other expressions of *knowing, thinking, telling,* and *perceiving* (*Indirect Discourse,* § 336): as, —

dīcit **montem** ab hostibus **tenērī** (B. G. i. 22), *he says that the hill is held by the enemy.* [Direct: **mōns** ab hostibus **tenētur.**]

REMARK. — The Infinitive Clause may be — 1. the Direct Object of the verb: as, **Caesarem adesse nūntiāvit,** *he reported that Cæsar was present;* 2. the Subject of the same verb in the passive: as, **Caesarem adesse nūntiātum est,** *it was reported that Cæsar was present;* 3. the Predicate Nominative after some such phrase as **rūmor est**: as, **rūmor erat Caesarem adesse,** *there was a report that Cæsar was present.*

a. 1. With certain impersonal verbs and expressions that take the infinitive as an apparent subject (§ 270. *b*), the personal subject of the action may be expressed —

(1) By a dative, depending on the verb or verbal phrase: or

(2) By an accusative expressed as the subject of the infinitive. Thus, —

rogant ut id **sibi** facere liceat (B. G. i. 7), *they ask that it be allowed them to do this.*

exstinguī **hominī** suō tempore optābile est (Cat. Maj. 85), *it is desirable for a man to die at the appointed time.*

2. With **licet** regularly, and other verbs occasionally, a predicate noun or adjective following the infinitive may be in the dative: as, —

licuit esse **ōtiōsō** Themistoclī (Tusc. i. 33), *Themistocles might have been inactive* (it was allowed to T. to be inactive).

cūr hīs esse **līberōs** nōn licet (Flacc. 71), *why is it not allowed these men to be free?*

nōn est **stantibus** omnibus necesse dīcere (Marc. 33), *it is not necessary for all to speak standing.*

NOTE. — When the subject is not expressed, as being indefinite (*one, anybody*), a predicate noun or adjective must be in the accusative (cf. § 271. *c.* note): as, —

vel pāce vel bellō **clārum** fierī licet (Sall. Cat. 3), *one can become illustrious either in peace or in war.*

b. In poetry, by a Greek idiom, a Predicate Noun or Adjective in the indirect discourse sometimes agrees with the subject of the main verb: as, —

sēnsit mediōs **dēlāpsus** in hostēs (Æn. ii. 377), *he found himself fallen among the foe.* [In prose: **sē esse dēlāpsum.**]

4. Infinitive of Purpose.

273. In a few cases the Infinitive retains its original meaning of Purpose.

a. The infinitive is used after **habeō, dō, ministrō,** in isolated passages instead of a subjunctive clause: as, —

tantum habeō **pollicērī** (Fam. i. 5), *so much I have to promise.* [Here the more formal construction would be **quod pollicear.**]

merīdiē **bibere** datō (Cato R. R. 89), *give* (to) *drink at noonday.*

b. **Parātus, suētus** and their compounds (used as adjectives) take the infinitive, like the verbs from which they come: as,—

currū **succēdere** suētī (Æn. iii. 541), *accustomed to being harnessed to the chariot.*

adsuēfactī **superārī** (B. G. vi. 24), *used to being conquered.*

NOTE.—These words more commonly in prose take the gerund or gerundive construction (§§ 296 ff.) either in the Dative, the Genitive, or the Accusative with **ad.** Thus,—

alendīs līberīs suētī (Tac. Ann. xiv. 27), *accustomed to supporting children.*

īnsuētus nāvigandī (B. G. v. 6), *unused to making voyages.*

corpora īnsuēta ad onera portanda (B. C. i. 78), *bodies unaccustomed to carry burdens.*

c. In poetry and later writers almost any verb may have the infinitive, after the analogy of verbs of more literal meaning that take it in prose: as,—

parce scelerāre (Æn. iii. 42), *forbear to pollute.*

d. Many adjectives take the infinitive in poetry following a Greek idiom: as,—

cantārī dīgnus (Ecl. v. 54), *worthy to be sung.* [In prose: **quī cantētur.**]

cantāre perītī (Ecl. x. 32), *skilled in song.*

nescia vincī pectora (Æn. xii. 527), *hearts not knowing how to yield.*

e. The poets and early writers often use the infinitive to express purpose when there is no analogy with any prose construction: as,—

lōrīcam dōnat **habēre** virō (Æn. v. 262), *he gives the hero a breastplate to wear.* [In prose: **habendam.**]

nōn ferrō Libycōs **populāre** Penātēs vēnimus (Æn. i. 527), *we have not come to lay waste with the sword the Libyan homes.*

NOTE.—So rarely in prose writers of the classic period.

f. For the infinitive used instead of a substantive clause of purpose, see § 331. *a–g.*

NOTE.—For **tempus est abīre,** see § 298. note.

g. Rarely in poetry the infinitive is used to express *result:* as,—

fingit ecum tenerā docilem cervīce magister **īre** viam, etc. (Hor. Ep. i. 2. 64), *makes the horse gentle so as to go,* etc.

hīc **levāre** . . . pauperem labōribus vocātus audit (Hor. Od. ii. 18. 38), *he when called, hears, so as to relieve,* etc.

5. Exclamatory Infinitive.

274. The Infinitive, with subject-accusative, may be used in Exclamations (cf. § 240. *d*) : as, —

tē in tantās aerumnās propter mē **incidisse** (Fam. xiv. 1), *alas! that you should have fallen into such grief for me.*

mēne inceptō **dēsistere** victam (Æn. i. 37), *what! I beaten desist from my purpose?*

NOTE. — The Present and the Perfect Infinitive are used in this construction with their ordinary distinction of time.

6. Historical Infinitive.

275. (RULE 61.) The Infinitive is often used for the Imperfect Indicative in narration, and takes a subject in the nominative : as, —

tum Catilīna **pollicērī** novās tabulās (Sall. Cat. 21), *then Catiline promised abolition of debts* (clean ledgers).

ego **īnstāre** ut mihi responderet (Verr. ii. 188), *I kept urging him to answer me.*

pars **cēdere**, aliī **īnsequī**; neque sīgna neque ōrdinēs **servāre**; ubi quemque perīculum cēperat, ibi **resistere** āc **prōpulsāre**, arma, tēla, equī, virī, hostēs atque cīvēs permīxtī, nihil cōnsiliō neque imperiō **agī**; fors omnia **regere** (Jug. 51), *a part give way, others press on; they hold neither to standards nor ranks; where danger overtook, there each would stand and fight; arms, weapons, horses, men, foe and friend, mingled in confusion; nothing went by counsel or command; chance ruled all.*

NOTE. — This construction is not strictly *historical*, but rather *descriptive*, and is never used to state a mere historical fact.

TENSES.

I. TENSES OF INCOMPLETE ACTION.

1. Present (General Use).

276. The Present Tense denotes an action or state (1) as *now taking place* or *existing;* and so (2) as *incomplete* in present time, or (3) as *indefinite*, referring to no particular time, but denoting a *general truth.* Thus, —

senātus haec **intellegit**, cōnsul **videt**, hīc tamen **vīvit** (Cat. i. 2), *the Senate knows this, the consul sees it, yet this man lives.*

tibi **concēdō** meās sēdēs (Div. i. 104), *I give you my seat* (an offer which may or may not be accepted).

obsequium amīcōs, vēritās odium **parit** (Ter. And. 68), *flattery gains friends, truth hatred.* [General truth.]

a. The Present, with expressions of *duration of time*, especially **iam diū, iam dūdum**, denotes an action continuing in the present, but begun in the past (cf. § 277. *b*) : as, —

tē iam dūdum **hortor** (Cat. i. 12), *I have long urged you.*

patimur iam multōs annōs (Verr. v. 126), *we suffer now these many years.* [The perfect would imply, *we no longer suffer.*]

NOTE 1. — In this use the present is commonly to be rendered by the perfect in English.

NOTE 2. — Similarly the Present Imperative with **iam dūdum** indicates that the action commanded *ought to have been done* or *was wished for* long ago (cf. the Perfect Imperative in Greek) : as, —

iam dūdum **sūmite** poenās (Æn. ii. 103), *exact the penalty long delayed.*

b. The Present sometimes denotes an action *attempted* or *begun* in present time, but never completed (*Conative Present*, cf. § 277. *c*) : as, —

iam iamque manū **tenet** (Æn. ii. 530), *and now, even now, he attempts to grasp him.*

dēnsōs **fertur** in hostīs (id. 511), *he starts to rush into the thickest of the foe.*

dēcernō quīnquāgintā diērum supplicātiōnēs (Phil. xiv. 29), *I move for fifty days' thanksgiving.* [Cf. **senātus dēcrēvit**, *the senate ordained.*]

c. The Present, especially in colloquial language and poetry, is often used for the Future : as, —

īmusne sēssum (De Or. iii. 17), *shall we take a seat* (are we going to sit)?

haud **mūtō** factum (Ter. And. 40), *I do not wish to change it* (I am not trying to change).

hodiē uxōrem **dūcis** (id. 321), *are you to be married to-day?*

sī **pereō** hominum manibus periisse iuvābit (Æn. iii. 606), *if I perish, it will be pleasant to perish at the hands of men* (cf. § 307. *a.* note).

2. Historical Present.

d. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect (*Historical Present*) : as, —

affertur nūntius Syrācūsās; **curritur** ad praetōrium; Cleomenēs, quamquam nox erat, tamen in pūblicō esse nōn **audet**; **inclūdit** sē domī (Verr. v. 92), *the news is brought to Syracuse; they run to headquarters; Cleomenes, though it was night, does not venture to be abroad; he shuts himself up at home.*

NOTE. — This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (*repraesentātiō*).

3. Present with *dum*.

e. **Dum**, *while*, regularly takes the Present Indicative in reference to past events.

In translating, the English Imperfect must generally be used. Thus, —

hōc **dum nārrat**, forte audīvī (Ter. Heaut. 272), *I happened to hear this while she was telling it.*

NOTE. — A past tense with **dum** (usually *so long as*) makes the time emphatic by contrast. But a few irregular cases of **dum** with a past tense occur where no contrast is intended. Thus, —

nec enim **dum eram** vōbīscum animum meum vidēbātis (Cat. Maj. 79), *while I was with you, you could n't see my soul.* [Here the time when he was alive is contrasted with that after his death.]

coorta est pūgna, pār **dum cōnstābant** ōrdinēs (Liv. xxii. 47), *a conflict began, well matched as long as the ranks stood firm.*

But — **dum** ūnum adscendere gradum **cōnātus est**, vēnit in perīculum (Mur. 55), *while he attempted to climb one step* [in rank] *he fell into danger.*

f. The present is regularly used in quoting writers whose works are extant: as, —

Epicūrus vērō ea **dīcit** (Tusc. ii. 17), *but Epicurus says such things.*

4. Imperfect.

277. The Imperfect denotes an action or a state as *continued* or *repeated* in past time: as, —

Sōcratēs ita **cēnsēbat** itaque disseruit (Tusc. i. 72), *Socrates thought so* (habitually), *and so he spoke* (then).

iamque **rubēscēbat** Aurōra (Æn. iii. 521), *and now the dawn was blushing.*

NOTE. — The Imperfect is a *descriptive* tense and denotes an action conceived as *in progress* or a state of things as *actually observed.* Hence in many verbs it does not differ in meaning from the Perfect. Thus **rēx erat**

and **rēx fuit** may often be used indifferently; but the former *describes* the condition while the latter only *states* it. The English is less exact in distinguishing these two modes of statement. Hence the Latin Imperfect is often translated by the English Preterite. Thus, —

Aeduī graviter **ferēbant,** neque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīttere **audēbant** (B. G. v. 6), *the Ædui were displeased and did not dare,* etc. [Here the Imperfects describe the state of things.] But —

id tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus (id. v. 4), *Indutiomarus was displeased,* etc. [Here the Perfect merely states the fact.]

aedificia vīcōsque **habēbant** (id. iv. 4), *they had buildings and villages.*

REMARK. — The Imperfect represents a present tense transferred to past time. Hence all the meanings which the present has derived from the continuance of the action belong also to the imperfect in reference to past time (see details below).

a. The Imperfect is used in *descriptions:* as, —

erant omnīnō itinera duo . . . mōns altissimus **impendēbat** (B. G. i. 6), *there were in all two ways . . . a very high mountain overhung.*

b. With **iam diū, iam dūdum,** and other expressions of duration of time, the Imperfect denotes an action continuing in the past but begun at some previous time (cf. § 115. *a.* 2): as, —

iam dūdum **flēbam** (Ov. M. iii. 656), *I had been weeping for a long time.*

cōpiās quās **diū comparābant** (Fam. xi. 13. 5), *the forces which they had long been getting ready.*

NOTE. — In this construction the Imperfect is rendered by the English Pluperfect. Compare the Present in similar phrases (§ 276. *a*).

c. The Imperfect sometimes denotes an action as begun (*Inceptive Imperfect*), or as attempted or only intended (*Conative Imperfect*) (cf. § 276. *b*): as, —

in exsilium **ēiciēbam** quem iam ingressum esse in bellum vidēbam (Cat. ii. 14), *was I sending* (*i.e.* trying to send) *into exile one who I saw had already gone into war?*

hunc igitur diem sibi prōpōnēns Milō, cruentīs manibus ad illa augusta centuriārum auspicia **veniēbat** (Mil. 43), *was Milo coming* (*i.e.* was it likely that he would come), etc.?

iamque arva **tenēbant** ūltima (Æn. vi. 477), *and now they were just getting to the farthest fields.*

d. The Imperfect is sometimes used to express a surprise at the *present* discovery of a fact already existing: as, —

Ō tū quoque **aderās** (Ter. Ph. 858), *oh! you are here too.*

e. The Imperfect is often used in dialogue where we should expect the Perfect: as, —

ad amīcum Calliclem quoi rem aībat mandāsse hīc suam (Plaut. Trin. 956), *to his friend Callicles, to whom, he said, he had intrusted his property.*

NOTE. — So also, in conversation, the imperfect of verbs of saying (cf. *as I was a-saying*): as, —

at medicī quoque, ita enim dīcēbās, saepe falluntur (N. D. iii. 15), *for that was what you were saying just now.*

f. For the Imperfect in apodosis *contrary to fact*, see § 308. *b*.

g. The Imperfect with negative words often has the force of the English auxiliary *could* or *would:* as, —

itaque (Dāmoclēs) nec pulchrōs illōs ministrātōrēs adspiciēbat (Tusc. v. 62), *therefore he could not look upon those beautiful slaves.* [In this case *did not* would not express the idea of *continued prevention* of enjoyment by the overhanging sword.]

nec enim dum eram vōbīscum animum meum vidēbātis (Cat. Maj. 79) *for, you know, while I was with you, you could not see my soul.* [Here the Perfect would refer only to *one moment.*]

5. Future.

278. The Future denotes an action or state that will occur hereafter.

a. The Future sometimes has the force of an Imperative (see § 269. *f*).

b. The Future is often required in a subordinate clause in Latin where in English futurity is sufficiently shown by the main clause: as, —

cum aderit vidēbit, *when he is there he will see* (cf. § 325. *c*).
sānābimur sī volēmus (Tusc. iii. 13), *we shall be healed if we wish.*

II. THE TENSES OF COMPLETED ACTION.

1. Perfect.

279. The Perfect denotes an action either as *now completed* (*Perfect Definite*), or as *having taken place* at some undefined point of past time (*Historical* or *Aoristic Perfect*). Thus, —

(1) **ut ego fēcī, quī Graecās litterās senex didicī** (Cat. Maj. 26), *as I have done, who have learned Greek in my old age.*

(2) tantum bellum extrēmā hieme **apparāvit**, ineunte vēre **suscēpit**, mediā aestāte **cōnfēcit** (Man. 35), *so great a war he made ready for at the end of winter, undertook in early spring, and finished by midsummer.*

NOTE. — The distinction between these two uses of the perfect, though almost if not wholly lost to the minds of the Romans, must be noticed, on account of the marked distinction in English (see also § 115. *c*).

a. The perfect is sometimes used emphatically to denote that a thing or condition of things that once existed no longer exists: as, —

fuit ista quondam in hāc rē pūblicā virtūs (Cat. i. 3), *there was once such virtue in this commonwealth.*

habuit, nōn habet (Tusc. i. 87), *he had, he has no longer.*

fuimus Trōes, **fuit** Īlium (Æn. ii. 325), *we have ceased to be Trojans, Troy is no more.*

b. The Indefinite Present, denoting a *customary action* or *a general truth* (§ 276), often has the Perfect in a subordinate clause referring to time antecedent to that of the main clause: as, —

quī in compedibus corporis semper **fuērunt**, etiam cum **solūtī sunt** tardius **ingrediuntur** (Tusc. i. 75), *they who have always been in the fetters of the body, even when released move more slowly.*

c. The perfect is sometimes used of a *general truth*, especially with negatives (*Gnomic Perfect*): as, —

nōn aeris acervus et aurī **dēdūxit** corpore febrēs (Hor. Ep. i. 2. 47), *the pile of brass and gold removes not fever from the frame.*

NOTE. — The gnomic perfect strictly refers to past time; but its use implies that something which never *did* happen in any known case, never *does* happen, and never will (cf. the English "*Faint heart never won fair lady*"); or without a negative that what *has once* happened will *always* happen under similar circumstances.

d. The Perfect is often used in expressions containing or implying a *negation*, where in affirmation the Imperfect would be preferred: as, —

dīcēbat melius quam **scrīpsit** Hortēnsius (Or. 132), *Hortensius spoke better than he wrote.* [Here the negative is implied in the comparison.]

e. The completed tenses of some verbs are equivalent to the incomplete tenses of verbs of kindred meaning.

Such are the preteritive verbs **ōdī**, *I hate;* **meminī**, *I remember;* **nōvī** *I know;* **cōnsuēvī**, *I am accustomed*,[1] with others sometimes used preteritively, as **vēnerat** (= **aderat**, *he was at hand*, etc.) (see § 143. note). Thus, —

quī diēs aestūs māximōs efficere **cōnsuēvit** (B. G. iv. 29), *which day generally makes the highest tides* (is accustomed to make).

cūius splendor **obsolēvit** (Quinc. 68), *whose splendor is now all faded* (has become old).

REMARK. — Many other verbs are occasionally so used: as, —

dum oculōs certāmen **āverterat** (Liv. xxxii. 24), *while the contest had turned their eyes* (kept them turned). [Here **āverterat** = **tenēbat**.]

2. Pluperfect.

280. The Pluperfect is used (1) to denote an action or state *completed* in past time; or (2) sometimes to denote an action in indefinite time, but prior to some past time referred to: as, —

(1) locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs **dēlēgerant** (B. G. ii. 18), *this was the nature of the ground our men had chosen for a camp.*

Viridovix summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum quae **dēfēcerant** (id. iii. 17), *Viridovix held the chief command of all those tribes which had revolted.*

(2) neque vērō cum aliquid **mandāverat** cōnfectum putābat (Cat. iii. 16), *but when he had given a thing in charge he did not look on it as done.*

quae sī quandō adepta est id quod eī **fuerat concupītum**, tum fert alacritātem (Tusc. iv. 35), *if it* (desire) *ever has gained what it had* [previously] *desired, then it produces joy.*

3. Future Perfect.

281. The Future Perfect denotes an action as completed in the future: as, —

ut sēmentem **fēceris**, ita metēs (De Or. ii. 261), *as you sow* (shall have sown), *so shall you reap.*

carmina tum melius cum **vēnerit** ipse canēmus (Ecl. ix. 67), *then shall we sing our songs better, when he himself has come.*

ego certē meum officium **praestiterō** (B. G. iv. 25), *I at least shall have done my duty* (*i.e.* when the time comes to reckon up the matter, I shall be found to have done it, whatever the event).

[1] Cf. **dētestor, reminiscor, sciō, soleō.**

REMARK. — The Future Perfect is used with much greater exactness in Latin than in English, and may even be used instead of the Future, from the fondness of the Latins for representing an action as completed: as, —

quid inventum sit paulō post **vīderō** (Acad. ii. 76), *what has been found out I will see presently.*

III. Epistolary Tenses.

282. In Letters, the Perfect Historical or the Imperfect may be used for the present, and the Pluperfect for any past tense, as if the letter were *dated* at the time it is supposed to be *received:* as, —

neque tamen, cum haec **scrībēbam, eram** nescius quantīs oneribus premerēre (Fam. v. 12, 2), *nor while I write this am I ignorant under what burdens you are weighed down.*

IV. Tenses of the Subjunctive.

283. The tenses of the Subjunctive in Independent Clauses denote time in relation to the time of the speaker. The Present always refers to *future* (or *indefinite*) *time,* the Imperfect to either *past* or *present,* the Perfect to either *future* or *past,* the Pluperfect always to *past.*

284. In Dependent Clauses the tenses of the Subjunctive were habitually used in certain fixed connections determined by the time of the main verb and the time of the dependent verb together.

Sequence of Tenses.

285. The tenses of the Subjunctive in Dependent clauses follow special rules for the SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

With reference to these rules all tenses when used in *Independent* clauses are divided into two classes, —*primary* and *secondary.*

1. PRIMARY. The *primary tenses* include all forms that express *present* or *future* time. These are the Present, Future, and Future Perfect Indicative, the Present and Perfect Subjunctive, and the Present and Future Imperative.

NOTE.—The Perfect Definite is sometimes treated as primary, but see § 287. *a.*

2. SECONDARY. The *secondary tenses* include all forms that refer to *past* time. These are the Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect Indicative, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, and the Historical Infinitive.

NOTE.—To these may be added certain forms less commonly used in Independent Clauses. Such are (1) Primary: Present Infinitive in Exclamations; (2) Secondary: Perfect Infinitive in Exclamations (see § 287. *a.* note).

286. (RULE 62.) In complex sentences a Primary tense in the main clause is followed by the Present or Perfect in the dependent clause, and a Secondary tense by the Imperfect or Pluperfect: as,—

scrībit ut nōs moneat, *he writes to warn us.*
scrībet ut nōs moneat, *he will write to warn us.*
scrībe (scrībitō) ut nōs moneās, *write that you may warn us.*
scrīpsit ut nōs monēret, *he wrote to warn us.*
scrībit quasi oblītus sit, *he writes as if he had forgotten.*
scrīpsit quasi oblītus esset, *he wrote as if he had forgotten.*
rogō quid factūrus sīs *I ask what you are going to do.*

NOTE.—This rule affects only the tenses of the Subjunctive in dependent clauses. The tenses of the other moods and those of the Subjunctive in independent constructions (as in apodosis contrary to fact, § 308) are not affected by the sequence of tenses. (But cf. §§ 338. note 2, 339. note 2.)

REMARK.—In applying the rule for the sequence of tenses, observe (1) whether the main verb is (*a*) primary or (*b*) secondary, (2) whether the dependent verb is to denote completed action (*i.e.* past with reference to the main verb), or incomplete (*i.e.* present or future with reference to the main verb). Then—

(*a*) If the leading verb is *primary*, the dependent verb must be in the *Present* if it denotes *incomplete action*, in the *Perfect* if it denotes *completed action.*

(*b*) If the leading verb is *secondary*, the dependent verb must be in the *Imperfect* if it denotes *incomplete action*, in the *Pluperfect* if it denotes *completed action*. Thus, —

he writes (primary) *to warn* (incomplete) *us*, scrībit ut nōs moneat.

I ask (primary) *what you were doing* (now past), rogō quid fēceris.

Notice that the *Future Perfect* denotes action completed (at the time referred to), and hence is represented in the Subjunctive by the Perfect or Pluperfect. Thus, —

I ask what you will have accomplished, rogō quid perfēceris.

he asked what he would have accomplished, rogāvit quid perfēcisset.

287. In the Sequence of Tenses some special points are to be noted : —

a. The Perfect Indicative is ordinarily a secondary tense, but allows the primary sequence when the present time is clearly in the writer's mind. Thus, —

ut satis **esset** praesidī **prōvīsum est** (Cat. ii. 26), *provision has been made that there should be ample guard.* [Secondary sequence.]

addūxī hominem in quō satisfacere exterīs nātiōnibus **possētis** (Verr. i. 2), *I have brought a man in whose person you can make satisfaction to foreign nations.* [Secondary sequence.]

ea **adhibita** doctrīna **est** quae vel vitiōsissimam nātūram excolere **possit** (Q. Fr. i. 1, 7), *such instruction has been given as can train even the faultiest nature.* [Primary sequence.]

NOTE. — The Perfect Infinitive in Exclamations follows the same rule: as, —

adeōn rem **redīsse** patrem ut **extimēscam** (Ter. Ph. 153), *to think that things have come to such a pass that I should dread my father.*

b. After a primary tense the Perfect Subjunctive is regularly used to denote *any past action*, and may represent —

1. A Perfect Definite : as, —

nōn dubitō quīn omnēs tuī **scrīpserint** (Fam. v. 8), *I do not doubt that all your friends have written.* [Direct statement : **scrīpsērunt**.]

quārē nōn īgnōrō quid accidat in ūltimīs terrīs, cum **audierim** in Ītaliā querēlās cīvium (Q. Fr. i. 1, 33), *therefore I know well what happens at the ends of the earth, when I have heard in Italy the complaints of citizens.* [In a direct statement, **audīvī**.]

2. A Perfect Historical : as, —

mē autem hīc laudat quod **retulerim**, nōn quod **patefēcerim** (Att. xii. 21), *me he praises because I brought the matter* [before the senate], *not because I brought it to light.* [Direct statement : **retulit**.]

3. An Imperfect: as, —

sī forte ceciderint tum intellegitur quam fuerint inopēs amīcōrum (Læl. 53), *if by chance they fall* (have fallen), *then one can see how poor they were in friends.* [Direct question: **quam inopēs erant?**]

quī status rērum fuerit cum hās litterās dedī scīre poteris ex C. Tidiō Strabōne (Fam. xii. 6), *what the state of affairs was when I wrote this letter, you can learn from Strabo.* [Direct question: **quī erat?**]

NOTE. — Thus the Perfect Subjunctive may represent, not only a Perfect Definite or a Perfect Historical of a direct statement or question, but an Imperfect as well. This comes from the want of any special tense of the subjunctive to express continued action after a primary tense. Thus, **mīror quid fēcerit** may mean (1) *I wonder what he has done,* (2) *I wonder what he did* (hist. perf.), or (3) *I wonder what he was doing.*

c. In clauses of Result, the Perfect Subjunctive is very often (the Present rarely) used after secondary tenses: as, —

Hortēnsius ārdēbat dīcendī cupiditāte sīc ut nūllō unquam flagrantius studium viderim (Brut. 302), *Hortensius was so hot with desire of speaking that I have never seen a more burning ardor in any man.*

Siciliam Verrēs per triennium ita vēxāvit āc perdidit, ut ea restituī in antīcum statum nūllō modō possit (Verr. i. 12), *for three years Verres so racked and ruined Sicily, that she can in no way be restored to her former state.* [Here the Present describes a state of things actually existing.]

REMARK. — This construction emphasizes the result; the regular construction subordinates it.

NOTE. — There is a special fondness for the Perfect Subjunctive to represent a Perfect Indicative. Thus, —

Thorius erat ita nōn superstitiōsus ut illa plūrima in suā patriā et sacrificia et fāna contemneret; ita nōn timidus ad mortem ut in aciē sit ob rem pūblicam interfectus (Fin. ii. 63), *Thorius was so little superstitious that he despised* [contemnēbat] *the many sacrifices and shrines in his country; so little timorous about death that he was killed* [interfectus est] *in battle, in defence of the State.*

Zēnō nūllō modō is erat qui nervōs virtūtis incīderet (cf. § 279. *d*); **sed contrā quī omnia in ūnā virtūte pōneret** (Acad. i. 35), *Zeno was by no means one to cut the sinews of virtue; but one, on the contrary, who made everything depend on virtue alone.* [**incīdit . . . pōnēbat.**]

d. A *general truth* after a past tense follows the sequence of tenses: as, —

ex hīs quae tribuisset sibi quam mūtābilis **esset** reputābat (Q. C. iii. 8, 20), *from what she* (Fortune) *had bestowed on him, he reflected how inconstant she is.* [Direct: **mūtābilis est.**]

ibi quantam vim ad stimulandōs animōs īra **habēret** appāruit (Liv. xxxiii. 37), *here it appeared what power anger has to goad the mind.* [**Direct: habet.**]

NOTE. — In English the original tense is more commonly kept.

e. The Historical Present (§ 276. *d*) is sometimes felt as a *primary*, sometimes as a *secondary* tense. Accordingly it is followed by either the primary or the secondary sequence, more commonly by the secondary. Thus, —

rogat ut **cūret** quod dīxisset (Quinct. 18), *he asks him to attend to the thing he had spoken of.*

castella commūnit quō facilius prohibēre **posset** (B. G. i. 8), *he strengthens the forts that he might more easily keep them off.*

NOTE. — After the historical present, **cum** temporal with the subjunctive must follow the secondary sequence.

f. The Imperfect and Pluperfect in conditions contrary to fact (§ 308) are not affected by the sequence of tenses: as, —

quia tāle sit, ut vel sī **ignōrārent** hominēs, etc. (Fin. ii. 49), *because it is such that even if men* WERE *ignorant*, etc.

g. The Imperfect Subjunctive in present conditions contrary to fact (§ 308) is regularly followed by the secondary sequence: as, —

sī aliī cōnsulēs essent, ad tē potissimum, Paulle, **mitterem**, ut eōs mihi quam amīcissimōs **redderēs** (Fam. xv. 13), *if there were other consuls, I should send to you, Paulus, in preference to all, that you might make them as friendly to me as possible.*

sī eōs **dīcerēs** miserōs quibus moriendum **esset**, nēminem exciperēs (Tusc. i. 9), *if you called those wretched who must die, you would except no one.*

h. The Present is sometimes followed by a secondary sequence, seemingly because the writer is thinking of past time (*Synesis*): as, —

sed tamen ut **scīrēs** haec tibi **scrībō** (Fam. xiii. 47), *but yet that you may know, I write thus.* [As if he had used the common epistolary imperfect **scrībēbam** (§ 282).]

cūius praeceptī tanta vīs **est** ut ea nōn hominī cuipiam sed Delphicō deō **tribuerētur** (Leg. i. 58), *such is the force of this precept, that it was ascribed not to any man, but to the Delphic god.* [The precept was an old one.]

Note. — **The rules for the sequence of tenses must not be regarded as inflexible. They were often disregarded by the Romans themselves, either from carelessness or purposely for one reason or another.**

i. When a clause depends upon one already dependent, the sequence becomes secondary as soon as the time is thrown back into the past by any form that represents past time: as, —

tantum **prōfēcisse** vidēmur ut ā Graecīs nē verbōrum quidem cōpiā **vincerēmur** (N. D. i. 8), *we seem to have advanced so far that even in fulness of words we* ARE *not surpassed by the Greeks.*

But — beātē **vīxisse** videor quia cum Scīpiōne **vīxerim** (Læl. 15), *I seem to have lived happily in that I have lived with Scipio* (who had just died).

Note. — For the application of this rule to Indirect Discourse, see § 336. B. note.

V. Tenses of the Infinitive.

288. (Rule 63.) The Tenses of the Infinitive denote *present*, *past*, or *future* time, relatively to the time of the verb on which they depend: as, —

nostrōs nōn **esse** īnferiōrēs intellēxit (B. G. ii. 8), *he ascertained that our men were not inferior.* [Direct: **sunt.**]

quam Iūnō fertur terrīs magis omnibus **coluisse** (Æn. i. 15), *which Juno is said to have cherished above all lands.* [Direct: **colēbat.**]

spērant sē māximum frūctum **esse captūrōs** (Læl. 79), *they hope they shall receive the greatest advantage.* [Direct: **capiēmus.**]

a. With past tenses of verbs of *necessity*, *propriety*, and *possibility* (as **potuī**, **dēbuī**, and **oportuit**) the Present infinitive must be rendered by the Perfect infinitive in English: as, —

scīre potuit (Milo, 46), *he might have known.*

quī vidēbātur omnīnō **morī** nōn dēbuisse (Arch. 17), *who seemed* [one that] *ought not to have died at all.*

b. For the tenses of the infinitive in Indirect Discourse, see § 336. A.

c. Except in indirect discourse, the Present is the only tense of the infinitive in common use. It has no distinct reference to time. Thus,—

est adulēscentis māiōrēs nātū **verērī** (Off. i. 122), *it is* [the duty] *of a youth to reverence his elders.*

d. With verbs of *wishing*, *necessity*, and the like,[1] the Perfect Passive infinitive is often used instead of the Present: as, —

quod iam prīdem **factum esse** oportuit (Cat. i. 5), *which ought to have been done long ago* (cf. *a*, above).

REMARK. — In early and late Latin, and in poetry, rarely in good prose, the Perfect Active infinitive is also used instead of the Present, and even with other verbs than those of *wishing* and the like: as, —

commīsisse cavet (Hor. A. P. 168), *he is cautious of doing.*

e. With verbs of *feeling* the Perfect infinitive is used, especially by the poets, to denote a completed action.

So also with **satis est, satis habeō, melius est, contentus sum,** and in a few other cases where the distinction of time is important. Thus, —

pudet mē **nōn praestitisse** (Fam. xiv. 3), *I am ashamed not to have shown.*
sunt quōs curriculō pulverem Olympicum **collēgisse** iuvat (Hor. Od. i. 1. 3), *there are those who delight*, etc.
quiēsse erit melius (Liv. iii. 48), *it will be better to have kept quiet.*

f. The Future infinitive is often expressed by **fore** (or **futūrum esse**) **ut** with the subjunctive; so necessarily in verbs which have no supine stem (cf. §§ 302. Rem., 332. *e*). Thus, —

spērō **fore ut** contingat id nōbīs (Tusc. i. 82), *I hope that will be our happy lot.*

II. NOUN AND ADJECTIVE FORMS.

The several Noun and Adjective forms associated with the verb are employed as follows: —

1. PARTICIPLES:
   - *a.* Present and Perfect:
     1. Attributive (§ 291 and *a*).
     2. Simple Predicate (§ 291. *b*).
     3. Periphrastic Perfect (pass.) (§ 291.R).
     4. Predicate of Circumstance (§ 292).
     5. Descriptive (Ind. Discourse) (§ 292. *e*).
   - *b.* Future:
     1. Periphrastic with **esse** (§ 293. *a*).
     2. Periphrastic with **fuī** (= Pluperfect Subjunctive) (§ 293. *c*).
   - *c.* Gerundive:
     1. As Descriptive Adjective (§ 294. *a*).
     2. Periphrastic with **esse** (§ 294. *b*).
     3. Of Purpose with verbs (§ 294. *d*).

[1] Chiefly **volō, nōlō, mālō, oportet, decet.**

2. GERUND or GERUNDIVE:
- 1. Genitive as Objective Genitive (§ 298).
- 2. Dative, with Adjectives, Nouns, Verbs (§ 299).
- 3. Accusative, with certain Prepositions (§ 300).
- 4. Ablative, of Means, Comparison, or with Prepositions (§ 301.)

3. SUPINE:
- 1. Former Supine (in -um), with Verbs of Motion (§ 302).
- 2. Latter Supine (in -ū), chiefly with Adjectives (§ 303).

PARTICIPLES.

289. The Participle expresses the action of the verb in the form of an Adjective ; but has a partial distinction of tense, and may govern a case.

NOTE. — Thus the participle combines all the functions of an adjective with some of the functions of a verb. As an adjective, it limits substantives, and agrees with them in gender, number, and case (§ 186). As a verb, it has distinctions of time (§ 290), and often takes an object.

1. Distinctions of Tense.

290. (RULE 64.) Participles denote time as *present*, *past*, or *future* with respect to the time of the verb in their clause.

Thus the Present Participle represents the action as *in progress* at the time indicated by the tense of the verb, the Perfect as *completed*, and the Future as *still to take place*.

a. The Present Participle has several of the special uses of the Present Indicative. Thus it may denote —

1. An action continued in the present but begun in the past (§ 276. *a*) : as, —

quaerentī mihi iamdiū certa rēs nūlla veniēbat in mentem (Fam. iv. 13), *though I had long sought, no certain thing came to my mind.*

2. Attempted action (§ 276. *b*) : as, —

C. Flāminiō restitit agrum Picentem **dīvidentī** (Cat. Maj. 11), *he resisted Flaminius when attempting to divide the Picene territory.*

3. Futurity (§ 276. *c*) : as, —

iēns in Pompeiānum bene māne haec scrīpsī (Att. iv. 9), *I write this when about going very early to my place at Pompeii.*

b. The Perfect Participle of a few deponent verbs is used nearly in the sense of a Present.

So, regularly, **ratus**, **solitus**, **veritus**; commonly, **fisus**, **ausus**, **secūtus**, and occasionally others, especially in later writers. Thus, —

cohortātus mīlitēs docuit (B. C. iii. 80), *encouraging the men, he showed.*
īrātus dīxistī (Mur. 62), *you spoke in a passion.*
oblītus auspiciōrum (Phil. i. 31), *forgetting the auspices.*
īnsidiās **veritus** (B. G. ii. 11), *fearing ambuscade.*

c. The Latin has no Present Participle in the passive. The place of such a form is supplied usually by a clause with **dum** or **cum**, rarely by the participle in **-dus**: as, —

nūllīs ēvidentibus causīs obiēre **dum calceantur** mātūtīnō duo Caesarēs (Plin. N. H. vii. 181), *from no obvious cause two Cæsars died while having their shoes put on in the morning.*

mēque ista dēlectant cum Latīnē dīcuntur (Acad. i. 13), *those things please me when they are spoken in Latin.*

crucibus adfīxī **aut flammandī** (Tac. Ann. xv. 44), *crucified or set on fire* (in flames).

NOTE. — The constructions with **dum** and **cum** are often used when a participle might be employed: as, —

dīc, hospes, Spartae, nōs tē hīc **vidisse** iacentēs, **dum** sanctīs patriae lēgibus **obsequimur**, *tell it, stranger, at Sparta, that you saw us lying here obedient to our country's sacred laws.* [Here **dum obsequimur** is a translation of the Greek present participle πειθόμενοι.]

d. The Latin has no Perfect Participle in the active voice. The deficiency is supplied —

1. In deponents by the perfect passive form with its regular active meaning: as, —

nam sīngulās [nāvēs] nostrī **cōnsectātī** expūgnāvērunt (B. G. iii. 15), *for our men having overtaken them one by one, captured them by boarding.*

2. In other verbs, by the ablative absolute with a change of voice (§ 255. *d.* note) or by a clause (especially with **cum** or **dum**): as, —

itaque **convocātīs centuriōnibus** mīlitēs certiōrēs facit (B. G. iii. 5), *and so, having called the centurions together, he informs the soldiers* (the centurions having been called together).

cum vēnisset animadvertit collem (id. vii. 44), *having come* (when he had come), *he noticed a hill.*

NOTE. — The perfect participle of several deponent verbs may be either active or passive in meaning (§ 135. *b*).

2. Adjective Use.

291. The Present and Perfect participles are used sometimes as attributive, nearly like adjectives: as, —

> cum antīquissimam sententiam tum **comprobātam** (Div. i. 11), *a view at once most ancient and well approved.*
> sīgna nunquam ferē **ēmentientia** (id. 15), *signs hardly ever deceitful.*
> auspiciīs ūtuntur **coāctīs** (id. 27), *they use forced auspices.*

a. Participles often become complete adjectives, and may be compared or used as nouns. Thus, —

> quō mulierī esset rēs **cautior** (Cæcin. 11), *that the matter might be more secure for the woman.*
> in illīs artibus **praestantissimus** (De Or. i. 217), *preëminent in those arts.*
> sibi **indulgentēs** et corporī **dēservientēs** (Leg. i. 39), *the self-indulgent, and slaves to the body* (indulging themselves and serving the body).
> male **parta** male dīlābuntur (Phil. ii. 65), *ill-got, ill-spent* (things ill-acquired, etc.).
> cōnsuētūdō **valentis** (De Or. ii. 186), *the habit of a man in health.*

b. Participles are often used as Predicate Adjectives. As such they may be joined to the subject by **esse** or a copulative verb (see §§ 186. *b*, 176. *a*): as, —

> Gallia est **dīvīsa** (B. G. i. 1), *Gaul is divided.*
> locus quī nunc **saeptus** est (Liv. i. 8), *the place which is now enclosed.*

REMARK. — From this predicate use arise the compound tenses of the passive, — the participle of *completed action* with the incomplete tenses of **esse** developing the idea of past time: as **interfectus est**, *he was* (or has been) *killed*, lit. *he is having-been-killed* (*i.e.* already slain).

In the best writers (as Cicero), the perfect participle, when used with **fuī**, etc., retains its proper force; but in later writers the two sets of tenses (as **amātus sum** or **fuī**), are often used indiscriminately to form the tenses of the perfect system in the passive: as, —

> arma quae **fīxa** in parietibus **fuerant**, humī inventa sunt (Div. i. 74), *the arms which had been fastened on the walls were found upon the ground.* [Cf. **occupātī sunt et fuērunt** (Off. i. 57), *are and have been engaged.* The difference between this and **arma quae**, etc., is, that **occupātus** in this sense is used only as an adjective.]

3 Predicate Use.

292. The Present and Perfect participles are often used as a predicate, where in English a phrase or clause would be usual.

In this use the participles express *time*, *cause*, *occasion*, *condition*, *concession*, *characteristic* (or *description*), *manner*, *means*, *attendant circumstances*. Thus, —

volventēs hostīlia cadāvera amīcum reperiēbant (Sall. Cat. 61), *while rolling over the corpses of the enemy they found a friend.* [Time.]

paululum **commorātus**, sīgna canere iubet (Sall. Cat. 59, 1), *after delaying a little while, he orders to give the signal.* [Time.]

longius prōsequī **veritus**, ad Cicerōnem pervēnit (B. G. v. 52), *because he feared to follow further, he came to Cicero.* [Cause.]

quī scīret laxās dare **iūssus** habēnās (Æn. i. 63), *who might know how to give them loose rein when bidden.* [Occasion.]

damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat (B. G. i. 4), *if condemned, punishment must overtake him.* [Condition.]

salūtem **īnspērantibus** reddidistī (Marc. 21), *you have restored a safety which we did not hope.* [Concession.]

Dardanius caput ecce puer **dētēctus** (Æn. x. 133), *the Trojan boy with his head uncovered.* [Description.]

nec trepidēs in ūsum **poscentis** aevī pauca (Hor. Od. ii. 11. 5), *be not anxious for the needs of age that demands little.* [Characteristic.]

incitātī fugā montēs altissimōs petēbant (B. C. iii. 93), *in headlong flight they made for the highest mountains.* [Manner.]

mīlitēs **sublevātī** aliī ab aliīs māgnam partem itineris cōnficerent (B. C. i. 68), *the soldiers helped up by each other*, etc. [Means.]

hōc **laudāns**, Pompēius idem iūrāvit (B. C. iii. 87), *approving this, Pompey took the same oath.* [Attendant circumstance.]

aut **sedēns** aut **ambulāns** disputābam (Tusc. i. 7), *I conducted the discussion either sitting or walking.* [Circumstance.]

REMARK. — These uses are especially frequent in the ablative absolute (§ 255. *d*). A co-ordinate clause is sometimes compressed into a perfect participle : as, —

īnstrūctōs ōrdinēs in locum aecum dēdūcit (Sall. Cat. 59), *he draws up the lines, and leads them to level ground.*

ut hōs **trānsdūctōs** necāret (B. G. v. 6), *that he might carry them over and put them to death.*

NOTE 1. — A participle with a negative often expresses the same idea which in English is given by *without* and a verbal noun: as, —

miserum est nihil prōficientem angī (N. D. iii. 14), *it is wretched to vex oneself without effecting anything.*

NOTE 2. — **Acceptum** and **expēnsum** as predicates with **ferre** and **referre** are book-keeping terms: as, —

quās pecūniās **ferēbat eīs expēnsās** (Verr. ii. 170), *what sums he charged to them.*

a. A noun and a passive participle are often so united that the participle and not the noun contains the main idea:[1] as, —

ante **conditam condendamve** urbem (Liv. Pref.), *before the city was built or building.*

illī lībertātem cīvium Rōmānōrum **imminūtam** nōn tulērunt; vōs **vītam ēreptam** neglegētis (Manil. 11), *they did not endure the infringement of the citizens' liberty; will you disregard the destruction of their life?*

post hominēs nātōs (Brut. 224), *since the creation of man.*

iam ā conditā urbe (Phil. iii. 9), *even from the founding of the city.*

b. The perfect participle with a noun in agreement, or in the neuter as an abstract noun, is used in the ablative with **opus**, *need* (cf. § 243. *e*): as, —

opus **factō** est **viāticō** (Pl. Trin. 887), *there is need of laying in provision.*

mātūrātō opus est (Liv. viii. 13), *there is need of haste.*

c. The perfect participle with **habeō** (rarely with other verbs) has almost the same meaning as a perfect active, but denotes the *continued effect* of the action of the verb:[2] as, —

fidem quam **habent spectātam** iam et diū **cōgnitam** (Div. C. 11), *my fidelity, which they have proved and long known.*

cohortēs in aciē lxxx. **cōnstitūtās habēbat** (B. C. iii. 89), *he had eighty cohorts stationed in line of battle.*

nefāriōs ducēs **captōs** iam et **comprehēnsōs tenētis** (Cat. iii. 16), *you have captured and hold in custody the infamous leaders,* etc.

d. A verb of *effecting* or the like may be used in combination with the perfect participle of a transitive verb to express the action of that verb more forcibly: as, —

[1] Compare the participle in indirect discourse in Greek (Goodwin's Greek Grammar, § 1588); and the English, "'T was at the Royal feast *for Persia won*" (Dryden), *i.e. for the conquest of Persia.*

[2] The perfect with *have*, in modern languages of Latin stock, has grown out of this use of **habeō**.

praefectōs suōs multī **missōs fēcērunt** (Verr. iii. 134), *many discharged their officers* (made dismissed).

hīc **trānsāctum reddet** omne (Plaut. Capt. 345), *he will get it all done* (restore it finished).

NOTE. — Similarly volō (with its compounds) and **cupiō**, with a perfect participle without **esse** (cf. § 288. *d.* note): as, —

mē **excūsātum** volō (Verr. II. i. 103), *I wish to be excused* (I want myself excused, cf. *I pray thee have me excused*).

e. With verbs denoting an *action of the senses* the present participle in agreement with the object is nearly equivalent to the infinitive of indirect discourse (§ 336), but expresses the action more vividly: as, —

ut eum nēmō unquam in equō **sedentem** viderit (Verr. v. 27), *so that no one ever saw him sitting on a horse.*

4. Future Participle.

293. The Future Participle (except **futūrus** and **ventūrus**) is rarely used in simple agreement with a noun, except by later writers.

a. The future participle is chiefly used with the verb **esse** (which is often omitted) in the active periphrastic conjugation (§ 129): as, —

morere, Diagorā, nōn enim in caelum **adscēnsūrus** es (Tusc. i. 111), *die, for you are not likely to rise to heaven.*

spērat adolēscēns **diū sē victūrum** (Cat. Maj. 68), *the young man hopes to live long* (that he shall live long).

b. By later writers and the poets the future participle is also used in simple agreement with a substantive to express: —

1. Likelihood or certainty: as, —

ausus est rem plūs fāmae **habitūram** (Liv. ii. 10), *he dared a thing which would have more repute.*

2. Purpose, intention, or readiness: as, —

cum leō rēgem **invāsūrus** incurreret (Q. C. viii. 1, 14), *when a lion rushed on to attack the king.*

sī peritūrus abīs (Æn. ii. 675), *if you are going away to perish.*

3. Apodosis: as, —

dedit mihi quantum māximum potuit, **datūrus** amplius sī potuisset (Plin. Ep. iii. 21), *he gave me as much as he could, ready to give me more if he had been able.*

c. With past tenses of **esse**, the future participle is often equivalent to the pluperfect subjunctive (see § 308. *d*).

5. **Gerundive (Future Passive Participle).**

NOTE.— The participle in **-dus**, commonly called the Gerundive, has two distinct uses: —

(1) Its predicate and attribute use as participle or adjective (§ 294).

(2) Its use with the meaning of the gerund (§ 296). This may be called its *gerundive* use.

294. The Gerundive when used as a Participle or an Adjective is always passive, denoting *necessity* or *propriety*.

In this use the following points are to be observed (*a–d*).

a. The gerundive is sometimes used, like the present and perfect participles, in simple agreement with a noun: as, —

fortem et **cōnservandum** virum (Mil. 104), *a brave man, and worthy to be preserved.*

b. The most frequent use of this form is with **esse** in the second (passive) periphrastic conjugation (see § 129): as, —

nōn **agitanda** rēs **erit** (Verr. v. 179), *will not the thing have to be agitated?*

c. The neuter of the gerundive is occasionally used impersonally with an object. The object is in the case regularly governed by the verb. Thus, —

via quam nōbīs **ingrediendum** sit (Cat. Maj. 6), *the way we have to enter.*

NOTE. — This use is regular with verbs which take their object in the dative or ablative: as, —

lēgibus **pārendum** est, *the laws must be obeyed.*

d. With verbs signifying *to give, deliver, agree for, have, receive, undertake, demand*, a gerundive in agreement with the object is used to express purpose: as, —

redemptor quī columnam illam condūxerat **faciendam** (Div. ii. 47), *the contractor who had undertaken to make that column.* [The regular construction with this class of verbs.]

aedem Castoris habuit **tuendam** (Verr. II. i, 132), *he had the temple of Castor to take care of.*

nāvēs atque onera dīligenter **adservanda** cūrābat (id. v. 146), *he took care that the ships and cargoes should be kept.*

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

295. The Gerund expresses an action of the verb in the form of a verbal noun. As a *noun* the gerund is itself governed by other words; as a *verb* it may take an object in the proper case. Thus, —

> ars bene **disserendī** et vēra āc falsa **diiūdicandī** (De Or. ii. 157), *the art of discoursing well, and distinguishing the true and false.*

REMARK. — A nominative of the gerund is supplied by the infinitive. Thus in the example above, the verbal nouns *discoursing* and *distinguishing* if used in the nominative, would be expressed by the infinitives **disserere** and **diiūdicāre**.

296. When the Gerund would have an object in the accusative, the Gerundive is generally used instead. The gerundive agrees with its noun, and takes the case which the gerund would have had: as, —

> parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula **subeunda** (B. G. i. 5), *readier to undergo all dangers.* [Here **subeunda** agrees with **perīcula**, which is itself governed by **ad**. The construction with the gerund would be, **ad subeundum perīcula**; **ad** governing the gerund, and the gerund governing the accusative **perīcula**.]
>
> **exercendae** memoriae grātiā (Cat. Maj. 38), *for the sake of training the memory.* [Here the gerund construction would be **memoriam exercendī grātiā**.]
>
> **plērīsque** in **rēbus gerendīs** tarditās odiōsa est (Phil. vi. 7), *in the conducting of most business, sloth is odious.*

The following examples illustrate the parallel constructions of gerund and gerundive: —

GEN. cōnsilium	urbem capiendī urbis capiendae	*a design of taking the city.*	
DAT. dat operam	agrōs colendō agrīs colendīs	*he attends to tilling the fields.*	
ACC. veniunt ad	mihi pārendum pācem petendam	*they come*	*to obey me.* *to seek peace.*
ABL. terit tempus	scrībendō epistulās scrībendīs epistulīs	*he spends time in writing letters.*	

REMARK. — In the gerundive construction the verbs **ūtor, fruor**, etc., are treated like transitive verbs governing the accusative, as they do in early Latin: as, —

expetuntur dīvitiae ad perfruendās voluptātēs (Off. i. 25), *riches are sought for the enjoyment of pleasures* (for enjoying pleasures).

297. (RULE 65.) The Gerund and the Gerundive are used, in the oblique cases, in many of the constructions of nouns.

1. Genitive.

298. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used with nouns or adjectives either as *subjective* or *objective* genitive: as, —

neque cōnsiliī **habendī** neque arma **capiendī** spatiō datō (B. G. iv. 14), *time being given neither for forming plans nor for taking arms.* [Objective.]

nē **cōnservandae** quidem patriae causā (Off. i. 159), *not even for the sake of saving the country.* [Originally subjective genitive.]

vīvendī fīnis est optimus (Cat. Maj. 72), *it is the best end of living.* [Subjective.]

NOTE. — In a few phrases the Infinitive is used with nouns which ordinarily have the genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive. Thus **tempus est abīre**, *it is time to depart.*

REMARK. — The genitive of the gerund or gerundive is used (especially in early and late Latin) as a predicate genitive. When so used it often expresses purpose: as, —

quae rēs **ēvertendae** reīpūblicae solent esse (Verr. iii. 132), *things which generally tend to the overthrow of the commonwealth.*

sī arborum truncī **dēiciendī** operis essent mīssae (B. G. iv. 17), *in case trunks of trees should be sent down* [with the object] *of overthrowing the work.* [Pred. gen. like **quās suī commodī fēcerat** (v. 8).]

a. The genitive of the Gerund is occasionally limited by a noun or pronoun (especially **suī**) in the objective genitive instead of taking a direct object: as, —

ēius videndī cupidus (Ter. Hec. 372), *eager to see her* (for a seeing of her).

rēiciendī **trium iūdicum** potestās (Verr. ii. 77), *the power of challenging three jurors* (of the rejecting of three jurors).

suī colligendī facultās (B. G. iii. 6), *the opportunity to recover themselves.*

b. In genitive constructions the Gerund and Gerundive are about equally common.

c. The genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with **causā** or **grātiā** to denote purpose (see § 318).

NOTE. — This is merely a special use under the main head of § 298.

2. Dative.

299. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after adjectives[1] which take the dative and rarely after nouns (§ 234. *a*): as, —

> genus armōrum **aptum tegendīs corporibus** (Liv. xxxii. 10), *a sort of armor suited to the defence of the body.*
>
> tē **sociam** studeō **scrībendīs versibus** esse (Lucr. i. 25), *I desire that thou be my partner in writing verses.*

a. The dative is used in a few expressions after verbs:[2] as, —

> diem praestitit **operī faciendō** (Verr. II. i, 148), *he set a day for doing the work.*
>
> praeesse agrō colendō (Rosc. Am. 50), *to take charge of cultivating the land.*
>
> esse **solvendō**, *to be able to pay* (to be for paying).

NOTE. — This construction is a remnant of a more general use of the dative of the gerund and gerundive.

b. The dative is also used in certain legal phrases after nouns meaning *officers*, *offices*, *elections*, etc., to indicate the function or scope of the office, etc.: as, —

> comitia cōnsulibus rogandīs (Div. i. 33), *elections for nominating consuls.*
>
> triumvir colōniīs dēdūcundīs (Jug. 42), *a triumvir for planting colonies.*
>
> triumvirī reīpūblicae cōnstituendae (title of the Triumvirate), *triumvirs* (a commission of three) *for settling the government.*

3. Accusative.

300. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the prepositions **ad**, **inter**, **circā**, **ob** (and rarely **in** and **ante**); most frequently after **ad**, denoting Purpose (cf. § 318. *b*): as, —

[1] The dative of the gerund and gerundive occurs most commonly after the adjectives **accommodātus, aptus, ineptus, bonus, habilis, idōneus, pār, ūtilis, inūtilis.** But the accusative with **ad** is common with most of these (cf. § 234. *b*).

[2] Such are **praeesse, operam dare, diem dīcere, locum capere.**

mē vocās **ad scrībendum** (Or. 34), *you summon me to write.*

vīvis nōn **ad dēpōnendam** sed **ad cōnfirmandam audāciam** (Cat. i. 4), *you live, not to put off, but to confirm your daring.*

nactus aditūs **ad ea cōnanda** (B. C. i. 31), *having found means to undertake these things.*

inter agendum (Ecl. ix. 24), *while driving.*

Note. — The Accusative of the gerund with a preposition rarely takes a direct object, the Ablative of the gerund very rarely. The Gerundive is used instead (§ 296).

4. Ablative.

301. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used (1) to express Manner, Means, Cause, etc.; (2) after Comparatives; (3) after the prepositions **ab, dē, ēx, in,** and (rarely) **prō** and **cum**: as, —

(1) multa **pollicendō** persuādet (Jug. 46), *he persuades by large promises.*

Latīnē **loquendō** cuivīs pār (Brut. 128), *equal to any man in speaking Latin.*

nūllīs virtūtis praeceptīs **trādendīs** (Off. i. 5), *without delivering any precepts of virtue* (by delivering no precepts).

hīs ipsīs **legendīs** (Cat. Maj. 21), *by reading these very things.*

obscūram atque humilem **conciendō** ad sē multitūdinem (Liv. i. 8), *calling to them a mean and obscure multitude.*

(2) nūllum officium **referendā grātiā** magis necessārium est (Off. i. 47), *no duty is more important than repaying favors.*

(3) **in rē gerendā** versārī (Cat. Maj. 17), *to be employed in conducting affairs.*

Note. — The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is also very rarely used depending on verbs and adjectives: as, —

Appius nōn abstitit **continuandō** magistrātum (Liv. ix. 34), *Appius did not desist from continuing his magistracy.*

Remark. — The Gerund is often found co-ordinated with nominal constructions, and sometimes even in apposition with a noun: as, —

(1) in forō, in cūriā, **in** amīcōrum **perīculīs pulsandīs** (Phil. vii. 7), *in the forum, in the Senate-house, in defending my friends in jeopardy.*

(2) ad rēs dīversissimās, **pārendum** atque **imperandum** (Liv. xxi. 3), *for the most widely different things, obeying and commanding.*

III. SUPINE.

Note. — The Supine is a verbal abstract of the fourth declension (§ 71. *a*), having no distinction of tense or person, and limited to two uses.

302. (RULE 66.) The Former Supine (in **-um**) is used after verbs of *motion* to express purpose. It may take an object in the proper case. Thus, —

quid est, īmusne sēssum? etsī **monitum** vēnimus tē, nōn **flāgitātum** (De Or. iii. 17), *how now, shall we be seated? though we have come to remind, not to entreat you.*

vēnērunt **questum** iniūriās (Liv. iii. 25), *they came to complain of wrongs.*

REMARK. — The supine in -um is especially common with **eō**; and with the passive infinitive **īrī** forms the future infinitive passive. Thus, —

fuēre cīvēs quī rempūblicam **perditum īrent** (Sall. Cat. 36), *there were citizens who went about to ruin the republic* (cf. § 258. *b.* Rem.).

nōn Grāīs **servītum** mātribus ībō (Æn. ii. 786), *I shall not go to be a slave to the Grecian dames.*

sī scīsset sē **trucīdātum īrī** (Div. ii. 22), *if he* (Pompey) *had known that he was going to be murdered.* [cf. § 288. *f.*]

303. (RULE 67.) The Latter Supine (in **-ū**)[1] is used only with a few adjectives, with the nouns **fās**, **nefās**, and **opus**, and rarely with verbs, to denote an action *in reference to which* the quality is asserted : as, —

Ō rem nōn modo **vīsū** foedam, sed etiam **audītū** (Phil. ii. 63), *a thing not only shocking to see, but even to hear of.*

quaerunt quid optimum **factū** sit (Verr. II. i, 68), *they ask what is best to do.*

pudet **dictū** (Agric. 32), *it is shame to tell.*

NOTE. — The latter supine is thus in appearance an ablative of specification (§ 253), but see § 71. *a.*

REMARK. — The supine in -ū is found especially with such adjectives as indicate an effect on the senses or the feelings, and those which denote *ease, difficulty,* and the like. But with **facilis, difficilis, iūcundus, ad** with the gerund is more common. Thus, —

nec **vīsū** facilis nec **dictū** adfābilis ūllī (Æn. iii. 621), *he is not pleasant for any man to look at or address.*

difficilis **ad distinguendum** similitūdō (De Or. ii. 212), *a likeness difficult to distinguish.*

With all these adjectives the poets often use the Infinitive in the same sense : as, —

facilēs aurem praebēre (Prop.), *indulgent to lend an ear.*

[1] The only latter supines in common use are **audītū, dictū, factū, inventū, memorātū, nātū, vīsū.** In classic use this supine is found, in all, in twenty-four verbs. It is never followed by an object-case.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

NOTE. — The Conditional Sentence differs from other compound sentences in this, that the form of the main clause (APODOSIS) is determined in some degree by the nature of the subordinate clause (PROTASIS), upon the truth of which the whole statement depends.

Conditional Sentences may be classified as follows: —

1. SIMPLE PRESENT OR PAST CONDITIONS, nothing implied as to fulfilment (§ 306).
2. FUTURE CONDITIONS:
   - *a.* More vivid (§ 307).
   - *b.* Less vivid (§ 307).
3. CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT:
   - *a.* Present (§ 308).
   - *b.* Past (§ 308).
4. GENERAL CONDITIONS:
   - *a.* Indefinite Subject (§ 309. *a*).
   - *b.* Repeated Action (§ 309. *b*, *c*).
5. IMPLIED CONDITIONS:
   - *a.* Protasis Disguised:
     1. in clause of Fact, Wish, Command (§ 310. *b*, *c*).
     2. in Participial Expression (§ 310. *a*).
   - *b.* Protasis Omitted:
     1. Potential Subjunctive (§ 311. *a*).
     2. Subjunctive of Modesty (§ 311. *b*).

1. Protasis and Apodosis.

304. A complete conditional sentence consists of two clauses, the Protasis and the Apodosis.

The clause containing the *condition* is called the PROTASIS; the clause containing the *conclusion* is called the APODOSIS: as, —

sī quī exīre volunt [PROTASIS], cōnīvēre possum [APODOSIS] (Cat. ii. 27), *if any wish to depart, I can keep my eyes shut.*

sī est in exsiliō [PROTASIS], quid amplius postulātis [APODOSIS] (Lig. 13), *if he is in exile, what more do you ask?*

NOTE. — It should be carefully noted that the Protasis is the *dependent clause.*

a. The Protasis is regularly introduced by the conditional particle **sī** (IF) or one of its compounds: **sīn, nisi, etiamsī, etsī, tametsī,**

tamenetsī. Any relative or concessive word, may also serve to introduce a protasis.

b. The Apodosis is often introduced by some correlative word or phrase: as, **sīc, ita, tum, eā condiciōne**, etc. Thus, —

ita enim senectūs honesta est, sī sē ipsa dēfendit (Cat. Maj. 38), *on this condition is old age honorable, if it defends itself.*

sī quidem mē amāret **tum** istūc prōdesset (Ter. Eun. 446), *if he loved me, then this would be profitable.*

c. The Apodosis is the principal clause of the conditional sentence, but may at the same time be subordinate to some other clause, and so be in the form of a Participle, an Infinitive, or a Phrase: as, —

sepultūrā quoque **prohibitūrī** nī rēx humārī iūssisset (Q. C. viii. 2, 12), *intending also to deprive him of burial, unless the king had ordered him to be interred.*

quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne **itūrum** [**esse**] (B. G. i. 40), *but if no one else would follow, he would go with the tenth legion alone.*

sī quōs adversum proelium commovēret, **hōs** reperīre **posse** (id.), *if the loss of a battle alarmed any, they might find*, etc.

NOTE. — When the Apodosis itself is in Indirect Discourse, or in any dependent construction, the verb of the Protasis is regularly in the Subjunctive (as in the first two of the above examples, see § 337).

d. Conditions are either (1) Particular or (2) General.

1. A Particular Condition refers to a definite act or series of acts occurring at some definite time.

2. A General Condition refers to any one of a class of acts which may occur (or may have occurred) at any time.

2. Classification.

305. The principal or typical Forms of conditional sentences may be exhibited as follows: —

a. SIMPLE CONDITIONS, with *nothing implied* as to fulfilment.

1. Present, *nothing implied.* Present Indicative in both clauses.
sī adest,[1] bene est, *if he is* [now] *here, it is well.*

[1] Cf. the Greek forms: *a.* 1. εἰ πράσσει τοῦτο, καλῶς ἔχει.
2. εἰ ἔπρασσε τοῦτο, καλῶς εἶχεν. εἰ ἔπραξε τοῦτο, καλῶς ἔσχεν.
b. 1. ἐὰν πράσσῃ τοῦτο, καλῶς ἕξει. 2. εἰ πράσσοι τοῦτο, καλῶς ἂν ἔχοι.
c. 1. εἰ ἔπρασσε τοῦτο, καλῶς ἂν εἶχεν. 2. εἰ ἔπραξε τοῦτο, καλῶς ἂν ἔσχεν.
d. 1. ἐάν τις κλέπτῃ, κολάζεται. 2. εἴ τις κλέπτοι, ἐκολάζετο.

2. Past, ***nothing implied.*** Some past tense of the Indicative in both clauses.

sī aderat, bene erat, *if he was* [then] *here, it was well.*
sī adfuit, bene fuit, *if he has been here, it has been well.*

b. Future Conditions (necessarily as yet unfulfilled).

1. More vivid.

(α) Future Indicative in both clauses.

sī aderit, bene erit, *if he is* (shall be) *here, it will be well.*

(β) Future Perfect Indicative in protasis, Future Indicative in apodosis (condition thought of as completed before conclusion begins).

sī adfuerit, bene erit, *if he is* (shall have been) *here, it will* [then] *be well.*

2. Less vivid.

(α) Present Subjunctive in both clauses.

sī adsit, bene sit, *if he should be here it would be well.*

(β) Perfect Subjunctive in protasis, Present Subjunctive in apodosis (condition thought of as completed before conclusion begins).

sī adfuerit, bene sit, *if he should be* (should have been) *here, it would* [then] *be well.*

c. Conditions Contrary to Fact.

1. Present, *contrary to fact.* Imperfect Subjunctive in both clauses.

sī adesset, bene esset, *if he were* [now] *here, it would be well* (but he is NOT here).

2. Past, *contrary to fact.* Pluperfect Subjunctive in both clauses.

sī adfuisset, bene fuisset, *if he had* [then] *been here, it would have been well* (but he was NOT here).

d. General Conditions. Usually not differing in form from Particular Conditions (*a*, *b*, *c*); but sometimes distinguished in the cases following: —

1. Present General Condition (Indefinite Time).

(α) Present Subjunctive second person singular in protasis, Present Indicative in apodosis.

sī hōc dīcās, crēditur, *if any one* [ever] *says this, it is* [always] *believed.*

(β) Perfect Indicative in protasis, Present in apodosis.

sī quid dīxit, crēditur, *if he* [ever] *says anything, it is* [always] *believed.*

2. Past General Condition (Repeated Action in Past Time).

(*α*) Imperfect Subjunctive in protasis, Imperfect Indicative in apodosis.

sī quid dīceret, crēdēbātur, *if he* [ever] *said anything it was* [always] *believed* (= whatever he said was always believed).

(*β*) Pluperfect Indicative in protasis, Imperfect in apodosis.

sī quid dīxerat, crēdēbātur, *if he* [ever] *said anything, it was believed.*

REMARK. — The use of tenses in Protasis is very loose in English. Thus, *if he is alive now* is a PRESENT condition, to be expressed in Latin by the Present Indicative; *if he is alive next year* is a FUTURE condition, expressed in Latin by the Future Indicative. Again, *if he were here now* is a PRESENT condition contrary to fact, and would be expressed by the Imperfect Subjunctive; *if he were to see me thus* is a FUTURE condition less vivid, to be expressed by the Present Subjunctive; and so, too, *if you advised him, he would attend* may be future less vivid.

3. Present and Past Conditions. — Nothing Implied.

306. (RULE 73.) In the statement of present and past conditions *whose falsity* is NOT *implied*, the present and past tenses of the Indicative are used in both Protasis and Apodosis. Thus, —

sī tū exercitusque valētis, bene est (Fam. v. 2), *if you and the army are well, it is well.* [Present Condition.]

sī quī māgnīs ingeniīs in eō genere exstitērunt, nōn satis Graecōrum glōriae respondērunt (Tusc. i. 3), *if any men have appeared of great genius in that branch, they have failed to compete with the glory of the Greeks.* [Past Condition.]

accēpī Rōmā sine epistulā tuā fasciculum litterārum in quō sī modo **valuistī** et Rōmae **fuistī** Philotimī **dūcō** esse culpam nōn tuam (Att. v. 17), *I have received from Rome a bundle of letters without any from you, which, if you have been well and at Rome, I take to be the fault of Philotimus, not yours.* [Mixed: Past condition and Present conclusion.]

quās litterās, sī Rōmae **es**, **vidēbis** putēsne reddendās (Att. v. 18), *as to this letter, if you are at Rome, you will see whether in your opinion it ought to be delivered.* [Mixed: Present and Future.]

sī nēmō **impetrāvit** adroganter **rogō** (Ligar. 30), *if no one has succeeded in obtaining it, my request is presumptuous.* [Past and Present.]

a. In these conditions, the apodosis need not always be in the Indicative, but may assume any form, according to the sense. Thus, —

fuerit hōc cēnsōris, sī iūdicābat (Div. i. 29), *suppose it was the censor's duty, if he judged it false.* [Hortatory Subjunctive.]

sī nōndum satis cernitis, **recordāminī** (Milo, 61), *if you do not yet see clearly, recollect.* [Imperative.]

sī quid habēs certius, **velim** scīre (Att. iv. 10), *if you have any trustworthy information, I should like to know it.* [Subj. of Modesty, § 311. *b.*]

NOTE. — Although the *form* of these conditions does not imply anything as to their truth, the sense or context may have some such implication : as, —

nōlīte, **sī** in nostrō omnium flētū nūllam lacrimam **aspexistis** Milōnis, hōc minus eī parcere (Milo, 92), *do not, if amid the weeping of us all you have seen no tear* [in the eyes] *of Milo, spare him the less for that.*

In this passage a cause is put by the speaker in the form of a non-committal condition. His hearers are to draw the inference for themselves.

4. Future Conditions.

307. Future Conditions may be *more* or *less vivid.*

1. In a more vivid future condition the protasis makes a distinct supposition of a future case, the apodosis expressing what *will be* the result.

2. In a less vivid future condition, the supposition is less distinct, the apodosis expressing what *would be* the result in the case supposed.

a. In the *more vivid* future condition the Future Indicative is used in both protasis and apodosis : as, —

sānābimur sī **volēmus** (Tusc. iii. 13), *we shall be healed if we wish.*

NOTE. — In English the protasis is usually expressed by the Present Indicative, rarely by the future with SHALL. Sometimes in Latin a condition of this kind has the Present Indicative in the protasis: as, —

sī pereō hominum manibus periisse iuvābit (Æn. iii. 606), *if I perish, it will be pleasant to have perished at the hands of men.*

b. In the *less vivid* future condition the Present Subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis : as, —

haec sī tēcum patria **loquātur**, nōnne impetrāre **dēbeat** (Cat. i. 19), *if your country should thus speak with thee, ought she not to prevail?*

REMARK. — The present subjunctive sometimes stands in protasis with the future in apodosis from a change in the point of view of the speaker.

c. If the conditional act is regarded as *completed* before that of the apodosis begins, the Future Perfect is substituted for the Future Indicative in protasis, and the Perfect Subjunctive for the Present Subjunctive : as, —

sī nōn **fēceris**, īgnōscam (Fam. v. 19), *if you do not do it, I will excuse you.*

REMARK. — The Future Perfect is very often used in the apodosis of a future condition : as, —

vehementer mihi grātum **fēceris**, sī hunc adolēscentem hūmānitāte tuā comprehenderis (Fam. xiii. 15), *you will do* (will have done) *me a great favor, if you receive this young man with your usual courtesy.*

d. Any form implying future time may stand in the apodosis of a future condition. So the Imperative, the participles in **-dus** and **-rus**, and verbs of *necessity*, *possibility*, and the like : as, —

sī mē praecēperit fātum, vōs mandāsse **mementō**, *if fate cuts me off too soon, do you remember that I ordered this* (Q. C. ix. 6, 26).
nisi oculīs vīderitis īnsidiās Milōnī ā Clōdiō factās, nec **dēprecātūrī sumus** nec **postulātūrī** (Milo, 6), *unless you see with your own eyes the plots laid against Milo by Clodius, I shall neither beg nor demand,* etc.
nōn **possum** istum accūsāre sī cupiam (Verr. iv. 87), *I cannot accuse him if I should desire to.*

e. Rarely the Perfect Indicative is used in apodosis with a Present or even a Future in protasis, to represent the conclusion rhetorically as *already accomplished:* as, —

sī hōc bene fīxum in animō est, **vīcistis** (Liv. xxi. 44), *if this is well fixed in your minds, you have conquered.* [For *you will have conquered.*]
sī eundem [animum] habueritis, **vīcimus** (id. 43), *if you shall have kept the same spirit, we have conquered.*

f. A future condition is frequently thrown back into past time, without implying that it is contrary to fact (§ 308). In such cases the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive may be used : as, —

nōn poterat **nisi vellet** (B. C. iii, 44), *was not able unless he wished.*
tumulus appāruit . . . **sī** lūce palam īr**ētur** hostis praeventūrus erat (Liv. xxii. 24), *a hill appeared . . . if they should go openly by light, the enemy would prevent.* [The first two appear like ind. disc., but are not. An observer describing the situations as present ones would say **potest sī velit** (etc., see *d*), and no ind. disc. would be thought of.

5. Conditions Contrary to Fact.

308. (Rule 73.3.) In the statement of a supposition *known to be false*, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in both Protasis and Apodosis. The imperfect refers to Present Time, the pluperfect to Past: as,—

quās **sī** exsequī **nequīrem**, tamen mē lectulus **oblectāret** meus (Cat. Maj. 38), *if I could not* [now] *follow this* (an active life), *yet my couch would afford me pleasure.* [Present.]

nisi tū **āmīsissēs**, nunquam **recēpissem** (id. 11), *unless you had lost it, I should not have recovered it.* [Past.]

a. In conditions contrary to fact the Imperfect often refers to *past time*, both in protasis and apodosis, especially when a *repeated or continued action* is denoted, or when the condition *if true would still exist:* as,—

hīc sī mentis **esset** suae, ausus esset ēdūcere exercitum (Pis. 50), *if he were of sane mind, would he have dared to lead out the army?* [Here **esset** denotes a continued state, past as well as present.]

b. In the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact the Past tenses of the Indicative may be used to express what was *intended*, or *likely*, or already begun: as,—

sī licitum esset mātrēs **veniēbant** (Verr. v. 129), *the mothers were coming if it had been allowed* (see § 305. *c.* 2).

iam tūta tenēbam, nī gēns crūdēlis ferrō invāsisset (Æn. vi. 358), *I was just reaching a place of safety, had not the fierce people attacked me.*

Remark.—In this use, the imperfect indicative corresponds in time to the imperfect subjunctive, and the perfect or pluperfect indicative to the pluperfect subjunctive.

c. Verbs and expressions denoting *necessity*, *propriety*, *possibility*, *duty*, when used in the Apodosis of a condition contrary to fact are regularly put in the Imperfect, Perfect, or Pluperfect Indicative instead of the Subjunctive: as,—

sī ita putāsset certē **optābilius** Milōnī **fuit** (Mil. 31), *if he had thought so, surely it would have been preferable for Milo.*

sī Rōmae prīvātus esset hōc tempore, tamen is **erat dēligendus** (Manil. 50), *if he* (Pompey) *were at this time a private citizen at Rome, yet he ought to be appointed.*

NOTE 1. — In this construction it is only the *thing necessary* (etc.) that is conditioned, and not the necessity itself. If the *necessity itself* is conditioned, the Subjunctive is used as with other verbs. The difference is often imperceptible, but may be seen in the following example: —

quid facere **potuissem** nisi tum cōnsul fuissem? cōnsul autem esse quī potuī nisi eum vītae cursum tenuissem ā pueritiā (Rep. i. 10), *what could I have done if I had not then been consul; and how could I have been consul if I had not followed that course of life from boyhood?*

NOTE 2. — This construction is sometimes carried further in poetry: as, —

sī nōn alium iactāret odōrem, laurus **erat** (Georg. ii. 133), *it were a laurel, but for giving out a different odor.*

d. The participle in **-ūrus** with **eram** or **fuī** may take the place of an Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Apodosis of a condition contrary to fact: as, —

quid enim **futūrum fuit** [= fuisset], sī . . . (Liv. ii. 1), *what would have happened if,* etc.

neque ambigitur quīn . . . id **factūrus fuerit**, sī . . . (id.), *nor is there any question he would have done it if,* etc. [Direct: **fēcisset.**]

NOTE. — This construction is regularly used when the apodosis is itself a dependent clause requiring the subjunctive, and also in Indirect Discourse. In Indirect Discourse **fuisse** replaces **eram** or **fuī** (see § 337).

e. The Present and Perfect subjunctive are sometimes used in poetry in the protasis and apodosis of conditions contrary to fact: as, —

nī comes **admoneat, inruat** (Æn. vi. 293), *had not his companion warned him, he would have rushed on.*

nī **faciat** maria āc terrās **ferant** (id. i. 58), *unless he did this, they would bear away sea and land.*

NOTE. — This is a remnant of an old construction. Its use puts the condition in a vivid form, — as if possible at any moment in the future though not *now* true.

6. General Conditions.

309. General Conditions (§ 304. *d*) have usually the same forms as Particular Conditions. But they are sometimes distinguished in the following three cases: —

a. The Subjunctive is sometimes used in the *second person singular*, to denote the act of an Indefinite Subject (*you = any one*). Here the Indicative of a *general truth* may stand in the apodosis: as, —

mēns prope uti ferrum est: sī **exerceās conteritur**; nisi **exerceās**, rūbīginem **contrahit** (Cato de Mor.), *the mind is very like iron: if you use it, it wears away; if you don't use it, it gathers rust.*

b. In later writers (not in Cicero), the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in protasis, with the Imperfect Indicative in apodosis, to state a *repeated* or *customary* action in past time: as,—

accūsātōrēs, sī facultās **incideret**, poenīs **adficiēbantur** (Tac. A. vi. 30), *the accusers, whenever opportunity offered, were visited with punishment.*

c. In a general condition in present time, the protasis often takes the Perfect, and the apodosis the Present Indicative. For past time, the Pluperfect is used in the protasis, and the Imperfect in the apodosis. Thus,—

sī quōs aliquā membrōrum parte inūtilēs **notāvērunt**, necārī **iubent** (Q. C. ix. 1, 25), *if they* [ever] *mark any infirm in any part of their limbs, they* [always] *order them to be put to death.* [Present.]

sī ā persequendō hostēs dēterrēre **nequīverant** ab tergō **circumveniēbant** (Jug. 50), *if* [ever] *they were unable to prevent the enemy from pursuing, they* [always] *surrounded them in the rear.* [Past.]

d. In all other cases, general suppositions — including those introduced by Indefinite Relatives — are not distinguished in form from Particular Conditions.

7. Condition Disguised.

310. In many sentences properly conditional, the Protasis is not expressed by a conditional clause, but is stated in some other form of words or implied in the nature of the thought. Thus,—

a. The condition may be implied in a Clause or in a Participle, Noun, Adverb, or some other word or phrase. Thus,—

facile mē paterer — illō **ipsō** iūdice **quaerente** — prō Sex. Rosciō dīcere (Rosc. Am. 85), *I should readily allow myself to speak for Roscius if that very judge were conducting the trial.* [Present contrary to fact: **sī quaereret**, etc.]

nūlla alia gēns tantā mōle clādis nōn obruta esset (Liv. xxii. 54), *there is no other people that would not have been crushed by such a weight of disaster.* [Past contrary to fact: **sī alia fuisset.**]

nēmō unquam **sine māgnā spē** immortālitātis, sē prō patriā offerret ad mortem (Tusc. i. 32), *no one, without great hope of immortality, would ever expose himself to death for his country.* [Present contrary to fact: **nisi māgnam spem habēret.**]

b. The condition may be contained in a Wish (*optative subjunctive*), or expressed as an Exhortation or Command (*hortatory subjunctive*, or *imperative*) : as, —

utinam quidem **fuissem**! molestus nōbīs nōn esset (Fam. xii. 3), *I wish I had been* [chief] : *he would not now be troubling us* (*i.e.* if I had been). [Optative Subjunctive.]

NOTE. — The so-called *concessive subjunctive* with **ut** and **nē** often has the force of a protasis (§ 313. *a*) : as, —

ut enim ratiōnem Platō nūllam **afferret**, ipsā auctōritāte mē frangeret (Tusc. i. 49), *even if Plato gave no reason,* [still] *he would,* etc.

c. Rarely the condition is in an *independent clause*, as, —

rīdēs: māiōre cachinnō concutitur (Juv. iii. 100), *you laugh; he shakes with louder laughter* (= if you laugh, he shakes).

d. The condition is often contained in a Relative Clause (§ 316).

REMARK. — For the use of a participle as APODOSIS, see § 304. *c*.

8. Condition Omitted.

311. The Protasis is often wholly omitted, but may be inferred from the course of the argument. Thus, —

poterat Sextilius impūne negāre : quis enim redargueret (Fin. ii. 55), *Sextilius might have denied with impunity; for who would prove him wrong* (if he had).

REMARK. — Under this head apparently belongs the POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

I. POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

a. (RULE 72.) The Potential Subjunctive is used to denote an action not as *actually performed*, but as *possible*.

In this use the Present and the Perfect refer without distinction to the immediate *future;* the Imperfect to *past* time. The second person is common, indicating an Indefinite Subject (cf. § 309. *a*). Thus, —

hīc **quaerat** quispiam (N. D. ii. 133), *here some one may ask.*
ut aliquis fortasse **dīxerit** (Off. iii. 97), *as one may perhaps say.*
tum in lectō quōque **vidērēs** susurrōs (Hor. Sat. ii. 8. 77), *then on each couch you might hear whisperings.*

NOTE 1. — The Present is sometimes used for the Imperfect : as, —
migrantīs cernās (Æn. iv. 401), *you might have seen them moving.*

Note 2.—The Pluperfect is rare. Its place is supplied by the Imperfect: as,—

putāssēs ēius lūctūs aliquem fīnem esse dēbēre (Sen. Dial. 6, 13), *you would have thought there ought to be some end to his grief.*

Note 3.—The subjunctive with **forsitan** does not differ in meaning from the Potential Subjunctive, but is an Indirect Question (§ 334. *g*): as,—

forsitan haec illī **mīrentur** (Verr. iv. 124), *they may perchance marvel at these things.*

Remark.—The potential subjunctive is strictly an apodosis with omitted protasis, sometimes easily supplied, but often not present to the mind of the speaker. So also the Subjunctive of Modesty (*b*, below).

II. SUBJUNCTIVE OF MODESTY.

b. The Subjunctive is used in cautious, modest, or hypothetical statements (*coniūnctīvus modestiae*). This use is especially common in a polite wish, with **velim** or **vellem.** Thus,—

pāce tuā **dīxerim** (Mil. 103), *I would say by your leave.*
tū **velim** sīc exīstimēs (Fam. xii. 6), *I should like you to think so.*
vix **ausim** crēdere (Ov. M. vi. 561), *I should hardly dare believe.*
vellem adesset M. Antōnius (Phil. i. 16), *I could wish Antony were here.* [Here **vellem** implies an unfulfilled wish in present time; **volō** or **nōlō** would express a peremptory wish.]

III. VERBS OF NECESSITY.

c. The Indicative of verbs signifying *necessity*, *propriety*, and the like, may be used in the apodosis of implied conditions, either future or contrary to fact: as,—

longum est ea dīcere, sed . . . (Sest. 12), *it would be tedious to tell*, etc. [Future.]
illud **erat aptius**, aecum cuique concēdere (Fin. iv. 2), *it would be more fitting to yield each one his rights.*
quantō **melius fuerat** (Off. iii. 94), *how much better it would have been.*

Remark.—Notice that, in this construction, the Imperfect indicative refers to *present time;* the Pluperfect to simply *past* time, like the Perfect. Thus **oportēbat** means *it ought to be* [now], *but is not;* **oportuerat** means *it ought to have been, but was not.*

Note.—In many cases it is impossible to say whether a protasis was present to the mind of the speaker or not.

9. Complex Conditions.

d. Either the protasis or the apodosis may be a complex idea in which the main statement is made with expressed or implied qualifications. In such cases the true logical relation of the parts is sometimes disguised: as, —

sī quis hōrum dīxisset . . . sī verbum dē rēpūblicā fēcisset . . . multa plūra dīxisse quam dīxisset putārētur (Rosc. Am. 2), *if any of these had spoken, in case he had said a word about politics, he would be thought to have said much more than he did say.* [Here the apodosis of **dīxisset** is the whole of the following statement (**sī . . . putārētur**), which is itself conditioned by a protasis of its own: **sī verbum**, etc.].

quod sī in hōc mundō fierī sine deō nōn potuit nē in sphaerā quidem eōsdem mōtūs sine dīvīnō ingeniō potuisset imitārī (Tusc. i. 63) *now if that cannot be done in this universe without divine agency, no more could* [Archimedes] *in his orrery have imitated the same revolutions without divine genius.* [Here **sī potuit** (a protasis with nothing implied) has for its apodosis the whole clause which follows, but **potuisset** has a contrary-to-fact protasis of its own implied in **sine . . . ingeniō.**]

10. Particles of Comparison (Conclusion Omitted).

312. The particles of Comparison — **tamquam, tamquam sī, quasi, ācsī, utsī, velutsī, velutī,** and poetic **ceu** (all meaning *as if*), and **quam sī** (*than if*) — take the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, unless these are changed by the sequence of tenses. Thus, —

tamquam clausa **sit** Asia (Fam. xii. 9), *as if Asia were closed.*

ita hōs [honōrēs] petunt, quasi honestē **vīxerint** (Jug. 85), *they seek them* (offices) *just as if they had lived honorably.*

velut sī cōram **adesset** (B. G. i. 32), *as if he were present in person.*

ceu cētera nusquam bella **forent** (Æn. ii. 438), *as if there were no fighting elsewhere.*

magis quam sī domī **essēs** (Att. vii. 4), *more than if you were at home.*

REMARK. — The English idiom would lead us to expect the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive with these particles; but the point of view is different in the two languages.

11. **Concessive Clauses.**

313. The particles of Concession (meaning *although, granting that*) are : **quamquam, quamlibet, quamvīs, quantumvīs, ut, nē, cum, licet, etsī, tametsī, etiamsī.**

a. **Quamvīs, quatumvīs, quamlibet, ut,** and **nē** take the Subjunctive (§ 266. *c*) : as, —

quamvīs ipsī īnfantēs **sint,** tamen . . . (Or. 76), *however incapable of speaking they themselves may be, yet,* etc.

ut nēminem alium **rogāsset** (Mil. 46), *even if he had asked no other.*

b. **Licet** (properly a verb) takes a Substantive clause in the Subjunctive (§ 331. *c*) : as, —

licet omnēs in mē terrōrēs perīculaque **impendeant** (Rosc. Am. 31), *though all terrors and perils should menace me.*

Note. — The subjunctive with licet is by the sequence of tenses necessarily limited to the Present and Perfect tenses.

c. **Etsī, etiamsī, tametsī,** *even if,* take the same constructions as **sī** (§ 305): as, —

etsī **abest** mātūritās (Fam. vi. 184), *though ripeness of age is wanting.*

etsī nihil aliud **abstulissētis** (Sull. 90), *even if you had taken away nothing else.*

etiamsī quod scrībās nōn **habēbis,** scrībitō tamen (Fam. xvi. 26), *even if you* [shall] *have nothing to write, still write.*

d. **Cum** concessive takes the Subjunctive (see § 326) : as, —

cum mihi nōn omnīnō **excidisset** (Fam. v. 13, 2), *though it had not entirely vanished* [from my mind].

e. **Quamquam** introduces an *admitted fact* and takes the Indicative : as, —

omnibus — **quamquam ruit** ipse suīs clādibus — pestem dēnūntiat (Phil. xiv. 8), *though he is breaking down under his disasters, still he threatens all with destruction.*

f. **Quamquam** more commonly means *and yet,* introducing a correction in the indicative : as, —

quamquam haec quidem tolerābilia vidēbantur, etsī, etc. (Mil. 76), *and yet these, in truth, seemed now bearable, though,* etc.

g. The poets and later writers frequently use **quamvīs** and **quamquam** like **etsī**, connecting them with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according to the nature of the condition. Thus, —

quamquam **movērētur** (Liv. xxxvi. 34), *although he was moved.*
Polliō amat nostram, quamvīs **est** rūstica, mūsam (Ecl. iii. 84), *Pollio loves my muse, though she is rustic.*

NOTE. — Even Cicero occasionally uses **quamquam** with the Subjunctive: as, —

quamquam nē id quidem suspīciōnem coitiōnis **habuerit** (Planc. 53), *though not even that raised any suspicion of a coalition.*

h. The Relative pronoun **quī** is often used with the Subjunctive to express concession (see § 320. *e*).

i. Concession is often expressed by the Hortatory Subjunctive without a particle (§ 266): as, —

sit clārus Scīpīo, **ōrnētur** eximiā laude Āfricānus, **habeātur** vir ēgregius Paullus . . . erit profectō inter hōrum laudēs aliquid locī nostrae glōriae (Cat. iv. 21), *let Scipio be renowned, let Africanus be honored with especial praise, let Paulus be regarded as a remarkable man,* [still] *there will surely be some room for my glory amid the praises of these men.*

12. Proviso.

314. (RULE 74.) **Dum, modo, dummodo,** and **tantum,** introducing a PROVISO, take the Subjunctive: as, —

ōderint **dum metuant** (Off. i. 97), *let them hate, if only they fear.*
valētūdō **modo** bona **sit** (Brut. 64), *provided the health is good.*
dummodo inter mē atque tē mūrus **intersit** (Cat. i. 10), *provided only the wall* (of the city) *is between us.*

a. In a *negative* proviso **nē** is used, with or without **modo**, etc.: as, —

modo nē sit ex pecudum genere (Off. i. 105), *provided* [in pleasure] *he be not of the herd of cattle.*
id faciat saepe, **dum nē** lassus **fiat** (Cato R. R. v. 4), *let him do this often, provided he does not get tired.*
dummodo ea (sevēritās) **nē variētur** (Q. Fr. i. 1, 20), *provided only it* (strictness) *be not allowed to swerve.*
tantum nē noceat (Ov. M. ix. 21), *only let it do no harm.*

b. The Hortatory Subjunctive without a particle sometimes expresses a proviso (see § 266. *d*) : as, —

sint Maecēnātēs, nōn deerunt, Flacce, Marōnēs (Mart. viii. 56, 5), *so there be Mæcenases, Virgils will not be lacking.*

13. Use of *Sī* and its Compounds.

315. The uses of some of the more common Conditional Particles may be stated as follows : —

a. 1. **Sī** is used for *affirmative*, **nisi** (**nī**) and **sī nōn** for *negative* conditions. With **nisi** (generally *unless*) the apodosis is stated as *universally* true *except* in the single case supposed, in which case it is (impliedly) *not true*. Thus, —

nisi Conōn **adest** maereō, *unless Conon is here, I mourn* (*i.e.* I am always in a state of grief except in the single case of Conon's presence, in which case I am not).

With **sī nōn** (*if not*) the apodosis is only stated as true *in the* (negative) case *supposed*, but as to other cases no statement is made. Thus, —

sī Conōn **nōn adest** maereō, *if Conon is not here I mourn* (*i.e.* I mourn in the single case of Conon's absence, nothing being said as to other cases in which I may or may not mourn).

2. **Nī** is an old form surviving in a few conventional phrases, and reappearing in poets and later writers.

Sometimes **nisi sī**, *except if, unless*, occurs : as, —

nōlī putāre mē ad quemquam longiōrēs epistulās scrībere, **nisi sī** quis ad mē plūra scrīpsit (Fam. xiv. 2), *except in case one writes more to me.*

b. **Nisi vērō** and **nisi forte** regularly introduce an objection or exception *ironically*, and take the Indicative : as, —

nisi vērō L. Caesar crūdēlior **vīsus est** (Cat. iv. 13), *unless, indeed, L. Cæsar seemed too cruel.*

Note. — This is the regular way of introducing a *reductio ad absurdum* in Latin. **Nisi** alone is sometimes used in this sense : as, —

nisi ūnum hōc **faciam** ut in puteō cēnam coquant (Plaut. Aul. 365), *unless I do this one thing*, [make them] *cook dinner in the well.*

c. **Sīve** (**seu**) . . . **sīve** (**seu**), *whether . . . or*, introduce a condition in the form of an *alternative*. They may be used with any form of condition, or with different forms in the two members. Often also they are used without a verb. Thus, —

nam illō locō libentissimē soleō ūtī, sīve quid mēcum ipse cōgitō, **sīve** quid aut scrībō aut legō (De Leg. ii. 1), *for I enjoy myself most in that place, whether I am thinking by myself or am either writing or reading.*

NOTE. — **Sīve . . . seu** and **seu . . . sīve** are late or poetic.

DEPENDENT CONSTRUCTIONS.

I. RELATIVE CLAUSES.

Dependent Relative Clauses may be thus classified: —

1. Conditional Relative Clauses (§ 316).
2. Clauses of PURPOSE (*Final Clauses*) (§ 317).
3. Clauses of CHARACTERISTIC, including —
   a. Simple Result (*Consecutive Clauses*) (§ 319).
   b. Clauses of Characteristic (including *cause* and *hindrance*) (§§ 320, 321).
   c. Clauses of Time (§§ 322 ff.).

1. Conditional Relative Clauses.

316. A clause introduced by a Relative Pronoun or Relative Adverb may be treated as a conditional clause and take the constructions of Protasis (§ 305): as, —

quī enim vitiīs modum **appōnit**, is partem suscipit vitiōrum (Tusc. iv. 42), *he who* [only] *sets a limit to faults, takes up the side of the faults.* [= **sī quis appōnit.**]

quod **quī faciet**, non aegritūdine sōlum vacābit, sed, etc. (Tusc. iv. 38), *and he who does* [shall do] *this, will be free not only*, etc. [= **sī quis faciet.**]

philosophia, cui **quī pāreat**, omne tempus aetātis sine molestiā possit dēgere (Cat. Maj. 2), *philosophy, which* IF *any one should obey, he could spend his whole life without vexation.* [= **sī quis pāreat.**]

quaecumque causa vōs hūc attulisset, laetārer (De Or. ii. 15), *I should be glad, whatever cause had brought you here* (*i.e.* if any other, as well as the one which did). [= **sī . . . attulisset.**]

NOTE. — The relative in this construction is always Indefinite in *meaning*, and more commonly in *form*.

a. The special constructions of General Conditions are sometimes found in Conditional Relative Clauses: viz., —

1. The Second Person Singular Subjunctive in the protasis with the Indicative of a *general truth* in the apodosis (§ 309. *a*) : as, —

> **bonus sēgnior fit, ubi neglegās** (Jug. 31, 28), *a good man becomes less diligent when you don't watch him.*

2. In later writers the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in the protasis and the Imperfect Indicative in the apodosis : as, —

> **quōcumque sē intulisset,** victōriam sēcum trahēbat (Liv. vi. 8), *wherever he advanced, he carried victory with him.*

3. The Perfect or Pluperfect Indicative in the protasis and the Present or Imperfect Indicative in the apodosis (§ 309. *c*) : as, —

> **cum** ad villam **vēnī**, hōc ipsum nihil agere mē **dēlectat** (De Or. ii. 24), *whenever I come to the villa, this very doing nothing delights me* (whenever I have come, etc.). [Present General Condition.]
>
> **cum** rosam **vīderat**, tum incipere vēr arbitrābātur (Verr. v. 27), *whenever he saw* (had seen) *a rose, then he thought spring was beginning.* [Past General Condition.]

2. Clauses of Purpose.

317. (RULE 75.) A clause expressing purpose is called a FINAL Clause.

Final clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by **ut** (**utī**), negative **nē** (**ut nē**), or by a Relative pronoun or adverb.

They may be divided into Pure, Relative, and Substantive.

1. Pure Clauses of Purpose are introduced by **ut (utī)** or **nē**. They express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause.

2. Relative Clauses of Purpose are introduced by the Relative pronoun **quī**, or by the Relative adverbs **ubi**, **unde**, **quō**, etc. The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause.

3. Substantive Clauses of Purpose are introduced by **ut (utī)**, negative **nē**. They differ from Pure Final Clauses in having the construction of a substantive. (For Substantive Clauses of Purpose, see § 331.)

Examples of Pure and Relative clauses of purpose are —

ab arātrō abdūxērunt Cincinnātum, ut dictātor **esset** (Fin. ii. 12), *they brought Cincinnatus from the plough that he might be dictator.*

nē qua **ēius** adventūs procul sīgnificātiō **fiat** (B. G. vi. 29), *that no sign of his arrival may be made at a distance.*

ut nē sit impūne (Mil. 31), *that it be not with impunity.*

scrībēbat ōrātiōnēs **quās** aliī **dīcerent** (Brut. 206), *he wrote speeches for other men to deliver.*

eō exstinctō fore **unde discerem** nēminem (Cat. Maj. 12), *that when he was dead there would be nobody from whom* (whence) *I could learn.*

NOTE. — The Relative in this construction is equivalent to **ut** with the corresponding demonstrative. Thus **quī** = **ut is** (etc.), **ubi** = **ut ibi**, and so on (cf. § 319. note).

a. Sometimes the relative or conjunction has a correlative in the main clause: as, —

lēgibus idcircō omnēs servīmus, **ut** līberī esse possīmus (Clu. 146), *for this reason we are all subject to the laws, that we may be free.*

eō cōnsiliō . . . ut (regularly), *with this design, that,* etc.

eā causā . . . nē, *for this reason, lest,* etc.

b. The ablative **quō** (= **ut eō**) is used as a conjunction in final clauses which contain a *comparative*: as, —

lībertāte ūsus est, quō impūnius dicāx esset (Quinct. 11), *he took advantage of liberty, to bluster with more impunity* (by which the more).

NOTE 1. — So **quōminus** (= **ut eō minus**) introduces a subjunctive clause after verbs of *hindering* (see § 331. *e*).

NOTE 2. — Occasionally **quō** introduces final clauses which do not contain a comparative: as, —

quō sibi (exercitum) fīdum **faceret** (Sall. Cat. 11), *in order to make the army devoted to himself.*

c. The Principal clause, on which a final clause depends, is often to be supplied from the context. Thus, —

āc nē longum sit . . . iūssimus (Cat. iii. 10), *and, not to be tedious, we ordered,* etc. [Strictly, *in order not to be tedious, I say, we ordered.*]

sed ut eōdem revertar, causa haec fuit timōris (Fam. vi. 7, 3), *but, to return to the same point, this was the cause of fear.*

REMARK. — By a similar ellipsis the subjunctive is used with **nēdum** (sometimes **nē**), *still less, not to mention that*: as, —

nēdum . . . salvī esse **possīmus** (Clu. 95), *much less could we be safe.*

nēdum istī . . . nōn statim conquīsītūrī **sint** aliquid sceleris et flāgitī (Leg. Ag. ii. 97), *far more will they hunt up at once some sort of crime and scandal.*

quippe secundae rēs sapientium animōs fatīgant; nē illī corruptīs mōribus victōriae **temperārent** (Sall. Cat. 11), *for prosperity overmasters the souls, even of the wise; much less did they with their corrupt morals put any check on victory.*

NOTE. — With **nēdum** the verb itself is often omitted: as, —

aptius hūmānitātī tuae quam tōta Peloponnēsus **nēdum** Patrae (Fam. vii. 28, 1), *fitter for your refinement than all Peloponnesus, to say nothing of Patra.*

REMARK. — Clauses of Purpose are sometimes rendered in English by *that* or *in order that*, with *may* or *might*; but more frequently by the Infinitive with TO: as, —

vēnī ut vidērem, *I came to see* (that I might *see*).

318. The Purpose of an action is expressed in Latin in various ways; but never (except rarely in poetry) by the simple Infinitive as in English (§ 273).

The sentence, *they came to seek peace*, may be rendered —

(1) vēnērunt ut pācem peterent. [Final clause with **ut** (§ 317).]
(2) vēnērunt quī pācem peterent. (Final clause with Relative (§ 317).]
(3) [vēnērunt ad petendum pācem.] (Not found with transitive verbs (§ 300. note), but cf. **ad pārendum senātuī**.) [Gerund with **ad** (§ 300).]
(4) vēnērunt ad petendam pācem. [Gerundive with **ad** (§ 300).]
(5) vēnērunt pācem petendī causā (grātiā). [Gen. of Gerund with **causā** or **grātiā** (§ 298. *c*).]
(6) vēnērunt pācis petendae causā (grātiā). [Gen. of Gerundive with **causā** (§ 298. *c*).]
(7) vēnērunt pācem petītūrī. [Future participle (§ 293. *b*): not in Cicero.]
(8) vēnērunt pācem petītum. [Former supine (§ 302).]

These forms are not used indifferently, but —

a. The usual way of expressing purpose is by **ut** (negatively **nē**), unless the purpose is *closely connected with some one word*, in which case a relative is more common. Thus, —

Arria gladium dedit marītō **ut** sē interficeret, *Arria gave her husband a sword to kill himself* (that he might kill himself).

Arria gladium dedit marītō **quō** sē interficeret, *Arria gave her husband a sword to kill himself* WITH (with which he might, etc.).

b. The Gerund and Gerundive constructions of purpose are usually limited to short expressions, where the literal translation of the

phrase, though not the English idiom, is nevertheless not harsh or strange.

c. The Supine is used to express purpose only with verbs of *motion*, and in a few idiomatic expressions (§ 302).

d. The Future Participle used to express purpose is a late construction (§ 293. *b*).

3. Clauses of Result.

NOTE.—The use of the Subjunctive to express Result comes from its use in Clauses of Characteristic.

319. (RULE 76.) A clause that expresses Result is called a Consecutive Clause.

Consecutive Clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by **ut**, *so that* (negative, **ut nōn**), or by a Relative (pronoun or adverb).

They may be divided into Pure, Relative, and Substantive (cf. § 317).

1. Pure Clauses of Result are introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn**. They express the result of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause.

2. Relative Clauses of Result are introduced by the Relative pronoun **quī**, or by the Relative adverbs **ubi**, **unde**, **quō**, etc. The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause.

3. Substantive Clauses of Result are introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn**. They differ from Pure consecutive clauses in having the construction of a substantive. (For Substantive Clauses of Result, see § 332.)

Examples of Pure and Relative Clauses of Result are—

tanta vīs probitātis est **ut** eam in hoste **dīligāmus** (Læl. 29), *so great is the power of goodness that we love it even in an enemy.*

nam est innocentia affectiō tālis animī, **quae noceat** nēminī (Tusc. iii. 16), *for innocence is such a quality of mind as to do harm to no one.*

nūlla est celeritās **quae possit** cum animī celeritāte contendere (Tusc. i. 43), *there is no swiftness which can compare*, etc.

NOTE.—The Relative in this construction is equivalent to **ut** with the corresponding demonstrative. Thus, **quī** = **ut is** (etc.), **ubi** = **ut ibi**, and so on (cf. § 317. note).

REMARK.—Clauses of Result are often introduced by such correlative words as **tam**, **tālis**, **tantus**, **ita**, **sīc**, **adeō**, **usque eō**, which belong to the main clause.

a. A negative result is regularly expressed by **ut** or **quī** with **nōn**, **nēmō**, and similar negatives (not **nē**). Thus, —

> **multīs gravibusque** vulneribus cōnfectus **ut** iam sē sustinēre **nōn posset** (B. G. ii. 25), *used up with many severe wounds so that he could no longer stand.*
>
> nēmō est tam senex **quī** sē annum **nōn putet** posse vīvere (Cat. Maj. 24), *nobody is so old as not to think that he can live a year.*

NOTE. — When the result implies *an effect intended* (not a simple purpose), **ut nē** or **nē** is sometimes used as being less positive than **ut nōn** : as, —

> [librum] ita corrigās **nē** mihi noceat (Fam. vi. 7, 6), *correct the book so that it may not hurt me.*

b. Frequently a clause of result is used in a *restrictive* sense, and so amounts to a Proviso (cf. § 314) : as, —

> hōc est ita ūtile ut nē plānē illūdāmur ab accūsātōribus (Rosc. Am. 55), *this is so far useful that we are not utterly mocked by the accusers* (*i.e.* useful only on this condition, that, etc.).

c. The subjunctive with the Relative **quōminus** (= **ut eō minus**) may be used, to express a result, after words of *hindering* or *refusing* (cf. § 317. *b.* note 1): as, —

> nec aetās impedit **quōminus** agrī colendī studia **teneāmus** (Cat. Maj. 60), *nor does age prevent us from retaining an interest in tilling the ground.*

d. A clause of result is introduced by **quīn** after general negatives, where **quīn** is equivalent to **quī** (**quae**, **quod**) **nōn**; so also after *negative* clauses of *hindrance*, *resistance*, *doubt*, *hesitation*, and the like. Thus, —

> nihil est illōrum quīn [= quod nōn] ego illī dīxerim (Plaut. Bac. 1012), *there is nothing of this that I have not told him.*
>
> nōn dubitō quīn, *I do not doubt that* (cf. the Eng., *I do not doubt but that*).
>
> aegrē (vix) abstinuī quīn . . ., *I hardly refrained from*, etc.
>
> nihil impedit quīn . . ., *there is nothing to prevent*, etc.

REMARK. — The constructions of Purpose and Result in Latin are precisely alike in the *affirmative* (but see *sequence*, § 287. *c*), but in the *negative*, Purpose takes **nē**, Result **ut nōn**, etc. Thus, —

> custōdītus est **nē** effugeret, *he was guarded in order that he* MIGHT *not escape.*
>
> custōdītus est **ut nōn** effugeret, *he was guarded so that he* DID *not.*

So in Purpose clauses **nē quis, nē quid, nē ūllus, nē quō, nēquandō, nēcubi,** etc., are used; in Result clauses, **ut nēmō, ut nihil, ut nūllus,** etc. Thus, —

cernere **nē** quis eōs neu quis contingere posset (Æn. i. 413), *that no one might see them, no one touch them.*

ita multī sunt imbēcillī senēs **ut** nūllum officī mūnus exsequī possint (Cat. Maj. 35), *many old men are so feeble that they cannot perform their duties to society.*

nē quandō līberīs prōscrīptōrum bona patria reddantur (Rosc. Am. 145), *lest ever the patrimony of the proscribed should be restored to their children.*

The clause of Result is sometimes expressed in English by the Infinitive with TO or SO-AS-TO or an equivalent: as, —

tam longē aberam ut nōn vidērem, *I was too far away to see* (so far that I did not see; cf. § 320. *c*).

4. Clauses of Characteristic.

320. (RULE 77.) A relative clause with the Subjunctive is often used to indicate a *characteristic* of the antecedent, where there is no idea of Result.

This construction is especially common where the antecedent is otherwise *undefined.* Thus, —

neque enim tū is es, **quī nesciās** (Fam. v. 12, 6), *for you are not such a one, as not to know.*

multa dīcunt **quae** vix **intellegant** (Fin. iv. 2), *they say many things which* (such as) *they hardly understand.*

a. A relative clause of characteristic is used after general expressions of *existence* or *non-existence*, including questions implying a negative, especially with **sunt quī**, *there are* [some] *who;* **quis est quī**, *who is there who?* Thus, —

sunt quī discēssum animī a corpore putent esse mortem (Tusc. i. 18), *there are some who think that the departure of soul from body constitutes death.*

erant quī Helvidium **miserārentur** (Ann. xvi. 29), *there were some who pitied Helvidius.* [Cf. **est cum** (§ 322. Rem.).]

NOTE.—These are called Relative Clauses with an Indefinite Antecedent, but are to be distinguished from the Indefinite Relative in *protasis* (see § 316).

b. A relative clause of characteristic may follow **ūnus** and **sōlus**: as, —

sōlus es cūius in victōriā **ceciderit** nēmō nisi armātus (Deiot. 34), *you are the only man at whose victory no one has fallen unless armed.*

c. A clause of result or characteristic, with **quam ut, quam quī**, may be used after comparatives : as, —

māiōrēs arborēs caedēbant **quam quās** ferre mīles **posset** (Liv. xxxiii. 5), *they cut larger trees than what a soldier could carry* (too large for a soldier to carry).

Canachī sīgna **rigidiōra** sunt **quam ut imitentur** vēritātem (Brut. 70), *the statues of Canachus are too stiff to represent nature* (stiffer than that they should).

NOTE. — This construction corresponds to the English *too . . . to.*

d. A relative clause of characteristic is used in expressions of Restriction or Proviso (cf. § 319. *b*): as, —

quod sciam, *so far as I know.*

servus est nēmō, **quī** modo tolerābilī condiciōne **sit** servitūtis (Cat. iv. 16), *there is not a slave, at least in any tolerable condition of slavery.*

e. A relative clause expressing *cause* or *concession* takes the subjunctive (§§ 313. *h*, 321. *b*): as, —

virum simplicem quī nōs nihil **cēlet** (Or. 230), *oh! guileless man, who hides nothing from us!* [Causal.]

peccāsse mihi videor **quī** ā tē discēsserim (Fam. xvi. 1), *I seem to myself to have done wrong because I have left you.* [Causal.]

NOTE. — In this use the relative is equivalent to **cum is**, etc. It is often preceded by **ut, utpote**, or **quippe** : as, —

nec cōnsul, **ut quī** id ipsum **quaesīsset**, moram certāminī fēcit (Liv. xlii. 7), *nor did the consul delay the fight, inasmuch as he had sought that very thing* (as [being one] who had sought, etc.).

convīvia cum patre nōn inībat, **quippe quī** nē in oppidum quidem nisi perrārō **venīret** (Rosc. Am. 52), *since he did not even come*, etc.

f. (RULE 78.) **Dīgnus, indīgnus, aptus, idōneus** take a clause probably of result with a relative (or rarely with **ut**) : as, —

dīgna in **quibus ēlabōrārent** (Tusc. i. 1), (things) *worth spending their toil on* (worthy on which they should, etc.).

indīgnus erās **quī facerēs** iniūriam, *it was beneath you to do a wrong* (you were unworthy who should, etc.).

idōneus **quī impetret** (Manil. 57), *fit to obtain.*

NOTE. — With these words the poets often use the Infinitive: as, —

fōns rīvō dare nōmen idōneus (Hor. Ep. i. 16, 12), *a source fit to give a name to a stream.*

aetās mollis et apta regī (Ov.), *a time of life soft and easy to be guided.*

5. Causal Clauses.

321. (RULE 79.) The Causal Particles **quod**, **quia**, and **quoniam** take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the *writer* or *speaker;* the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of *another:* as, —

1. Indicative: —

cum tibi agam grātiās **quod** mē vīvere **coēgistī** (Att. iii. 3), *when I may thank you that you have forced me to live.*

quia postrēma **aedificāta est** (Verr. iv. 119), *because it was built last.*

quoniam dē ūtilitāte **dīximus**, dē efficiendī ratiōne (Or. Part. 94), *since we have spoken of its advantage, let us speak of the method of effecting it.*

2. Subjunctive: —

mihi grātulābāre **quod audīssēs** mē meam prīstinam dīgnitātem obtinēre (Fam. iv. 14, 1,) *you congratulated me because* [as you said] *you had heard*, etc.

mea māter īrāta est **quia** nōn **redierim** (Plaut. Cist. 103), *my mother is angry because I did n't return.*

NOTE 1. — The Subjunctive in this use depends on the principle of Intermediate Clauses (§ 341. *d*).

REMARK. — **Nōn quod, nōn quia, nōn quoniam**, introducing a reason *expressly to deny it*, take the Subjunctive. **Nōn quō** and **nōn quīn** introduce a Result clause, but with nearly the same meaning (§ 341. *d.* Rem.). Thus, —

pugilēs ingemiscunt, **nōn quod doleant**, sed quia omne corpus intenditur (Tusc. ii. 56), *boxers groan not because they are in pain, but because*, etc.

nōn quia philosophia percipī nōn **posset** (id. i. 1), *not that philosophy cannot be acquired.*

nōn quoniam hōc **sit** necesse (Verr. II. i. 24), *not that this is necessary.*

nōn quīn ēnītendum **sit** (De Or. ii. 295), *not that pains must not be taken.*

a. Causal Clauses introduced by **quod**, etc., take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, like any other dependent clause (see § 336).

b. A Relative, when used to express *cause*, regularly takes the Subjunctive (see § 320. *e*).

c. **Cum** causal takes the Subjunctive (see § 326).

NOTE. — In early Latin **cum** causal takes the Indicative (§ 326. note 3).

6. Relations of Time.

322. The particles **ubi, ut, cum, quandō,** alone or with **-cumque,** may be used as Indefinite Relatives, and have the constructions of protasis (cf. § 316). Thus, —

cum id malum esse **negās** (Tusc. ii. 29), *when you* (the individual disputant) *deny it to be an evil.* [Present, nothing implied (cf. § 306).]

quod profectō **cum** mē nūlla vīs **cōgeret,** facere nōn audērem (Phil. v. 51), *which I would surely not venture to do, as long as no force compelled me.* [Present, contrary to fact: cf. § 308.]

cum videās eōs . . . dolōre nōn frangī (Tusc. ii. 66), *when you see that those are not broken by pain,* etc. [General condition: cf. § 309. *a.*]

id **ubi dīxisset,** hastam in fīnēs eōrum ēmittēbat (Liv. i. 32, 13), *when he had said this, he used to cast the spear into their territories.* [Repeated action: see § 309. *b.*]

REMARK. — Rarely a time characterized by its circumstances, etc. . . . So the phrases **est cum, fuit cum,** etc., are used in general expressions like **est quī, sunt quī** (§ 320. *a*): as, —

āc fuit quidem cum mihi quoque initium requiēscendī fore iūstum arbitrārer (De Or. i. 1), *and there was a time when I thought a beginning of rest would be justifiable on my part.*

323. Temporal clauses have two uses :—

1. They themselves *define* (with reference to the time of the speaker) the time of the clause on which they depend.

2. They *describe* by its circumstances the time of the main clause, which is defined not by them, but by the main clause itself.

Thus, in: *When did the Emperor Frederick die? He died while the people were still mourning the death of his father,* the time of the main clause, *he died,* is definitely fixed by the temporal clause, *while the people,* etc., as is seen by the fact that the temporal clause answers the question, WHEN *did he die?* But in: *The Emperor Frederick died while the people were still mourning the death of his father,* the time of the main clause is not *defined* by the temporal clause, but is regarded as sufficiently definite in itself (or from the context). The temporal clause is added to describe that time by the circumstances of the people's grief.

These two sorts of temporal clauses the Romans distinguished by means of the *mood,* invariably using the Indicative in the first and the Subjunctive in the second. They commonly also used the particles and the tenses in accordance with this division.

I. *POSTQUAM, UBI,* ETC.

324. The particles **postquam (posteāquam), ubi, ut (ut prīmum, ut semel), simul atque (simul āc,** or **simul)** take the Indicative (usually in the *perfect* or the *historical present*): as, —

mīlitēs **postquam** victōriam **adeptī sunt,** nihil reliquī victīs fēcēre (Sall. Cat. 11), *when the armies had won the victory, they left nothing to the vanquished.*

ubi omnēs idem sentīre **intellēxit** (B. G. iii. 23), *when he understood that all agreed* (thought the same thing).

simul āc persēnsit (Æn. iv. 90), *as soon as he perceived.*

a. These particles less commonly take the Imperfect or Pluperfect indicative. The Imperfect in this case denotes a state of things; the Pluperfect, an action completed in past time. Thus, —

P. Āfricānus **posteāquam** bis cōnsul et cēnsor **fuerat** (Div. in Cæc. 69), *when Africanus had been* (*i.e.* had the dignity of having been) *twice consul and censor.*

haec iuventūtem, ubi familiārēs opēs **dēfēcerant,** ad facinora incendēbant (Sall. Cat. 13), *when their inherited resources had given out.*

b. Rarely some of these particles take the subjunctive: as, —

posteāquam māximās **aedificāsset ōrnāssetque** clāssēs (Manil. 9), *having built and equipped mighty fleets* (after he had, etc.). [But the more approved editions have **posteā cum.**]

II. *CUM* TEMPORAL.

325. (RULE 80.) **Cum (quom)** TEMPORAL, meaning *when,* takes the Imperfect and Pluperfect in the Subjunctive, other tenses in the Indicative. Thus, —

cum servīlī bellō **premerētur** (Manil. 30), *when she* (Italy) *was under the load of the Servile War.*

cum id **nūntiātum esset,** mātūrat (B. G. i. 7), *when this had been reported he made* (makes) *haste.*

cum occīditur Sex. Roscius, ibīdem fuērunt servī (Rosc. Am. 120), *when Roscius was slain, the slaves were on the spot.*

[For examples with the Future, see *c*, below.]

NOTE. — The Present takes the Indicative, because present time is generally, from its very nature, defined in the mind; and it is only when the circumstances are described as causal or adversative (see below, § 326),

that the Subjunctive is used. The Perfect takes the Indicative as the tense of narration, as with **postquam**, etc. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are, from their nature, better fitted to *describe* than to *define* the time.

a. **Cum** temporal sometimes takes the Imperfect and Pluperfect Indicative to indicate a *definite past time:* as, —

quem quidem **cum ex urbe pellēbam**, hōc prōvidēbam animō (Cat. iii. 16), *when I was trying to force him* (conative imperfect) *from the city, I looked forward to this.*

tum **cum** in Asiā rēs māgnās permultī **āmīserant** (Manil. 19), *at that time, when many had lost great fortunes in Asia.*

b. When the clauses are inverted, so that the logical temporal clause becomes the main clause, and the main clause becomes the temporal clause, the Indicative must be used with **cum**: as, —

hōc facere noctū apparābant, **cum** mātrēs familiae repentē in pūblicum **prōcurrērunt** (B. G. vii. 26), *they were preparing to do this by night, when the women suddenly ran out into the streets.*

c. To denote future time **cum** takes the Future or Future Perfect Indicative: as, —

longum illud tempus **cum** nōn **erō** (Att. xii. 18), *that long time when I shall be no more.*

cum vēneris, cōgnōscēs (Fam. v. 7), *when you come* (shall have come) *you will find out.*

REMARK. — Rarely a future time is characterized and takes the Subjunctive.

III. *CUM* CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE.

326. (RULE 81.) **Cum** CAUSAL or CONCESSIVE takes the Subjunctive: as, —

cum prīmī ōrdinēs . . . **concidissent**, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant (B. G. vii. 61), *though the first ranks had fallen, still the others resisted vigorously.* [Concessive.]

NOTE 1. — Cum in these uses is often emphasized by **ut, utpote, quippe, praesertim**: as, —

nec reprehendō: **quippe cum** ipse istam reprehēnsiōnem nōn **fūgerim** (Att. x. 3), *I find no fault: since I myself did not escape that blame.*

NOTE 2. — These causal and concessive relations are merely variations of the idea of *time.* The attendant circumstances are regarded as the *cause* of the action, or as tending to *hinder* it (cf. **quī** causal and concessive).

NOTE 3. — In early Latin **cum (quom)** causal and concessive usually takes the Indicative. So sometimes in classical Latin: as, —

quom tua rēs **distrahitur**, utinam videam (Plaut. Trin. 573), *since your property is torn in pieces, oh! that I may see*, etc. [Cf. § 313. *d.* note.]

REMARK. — **Cum** causal may usually be translated by *since*; **cum** concessive by *although* or *while*.

a. **Cum** in the sense of **quod**, *on the ground that*, frequently takes the Indicative: as, —

grātulor tibi **cum** tantum **valēs** apud Dolābellam (Fam. ix. 14, 3), *I congratulate you that you are so strong with Dolabella.*

b. **Cum . . . tum**, signifying *both . . . and*, usually takes the Indicative; but when **cum** approaches the sense of *while* or *though*, it may have the Subjunctive (§ 326). Thus, —

cum multa non **probō**, **tum** illud in prīmīs (Fin. i. 18), *while there are many things I do not approve, there is this in chief.* But —

cum rēs tōta **ficta sit** puerīliter, tum nē efficit quidem quod vult (id. 19), *while the whole thing is childishly got up, he does not even make his point* (accomplish what he wishes).

IV. *ANTEQUAM* AND *PRIUSQUAM*.

327. **Antequam** and **priusquam**, *before*, have in narration the same construction as **cum** temporal (§ 325): as, —

antequam tuās lēgī litterās (Att. ii. 7), *before I read your letter.*

neque **ante** dīmīsit eum **quam** fidem **dedit** adulēscēns (Liv. xxxix. 10), *she did not let the young man go till he pledged his faith.*

antequam hominēs nefāriī dē meō adventū audīre **potuissent**, in Macedoniam perrēxī (Planc. 98), *before those evil men could learn of my coming, I arrived in Macedonia.*

NOTE. — The idea of purpose (usually corresponding to *could* or *should* in English) regularly requires the subjunctive: as, —

nunquam prius discēssit quam ad fīnem sermō esset perdūctus, *i.e. he waited for the conversation to be finished.*

a. **Antequam** and **priusquam**, when referring to future time, take the Present or Future Perfect Indicative; rarely the Present Subjunctive: as, —

priusquam dē cēterīs rēbus **respondeō**, dē amīcitiā pauca dīcam (Phil. ii. 3), *before I reply to the rest, I will say a little on friendship.*

antequam veniat litterās mīttet (Ag. ii. 53), *before he comes, he will send a letter.*

b. In a few cases the Subjunctive of the indefinite second person is found with **antequam** and **priusquam** (cf. § 309 *a*): as, —

in omnibus negōtiīs **priusquam aggrediāre**, adhibenda est praeparātiō dīligēns (Off. I, 73), *in all undertakings, before you proceed to action, careful preparation must be used.*

V. *DUM, DŌNEC,* AND *QUOAD.*

328. **Dum, dōnec,** and **quoad,** implying *purpose, doubt,* or *expectation,* take the Subjunctive, otherwise the Indicative.

1. Subjunctive: as, —

exspectās fortasse **dum dīcat** (Tusc. ii. 17), *you are waiting perhaps for him to say* (till he say).

Aenēān morandō sustinuit **dum** genitor prōtēctus **abīret** (Æn. x. 800), *he kept Æneas in check till his father could get away in safety.*

Epamīnōndās exercēbātur plūrimum luctandō ad eum fīnem **quoad** stāns complectī **posset** atque contendere (Nep. Epam. 2), *Epaminondas trained himself in wrestling so far as to be able to grapple standing and fight* (in that way).

2. Indicative (cf. *a*, below): as, —

hōc fēcī **dum licuit,** intermīsī **quoad** nōn **licuit** (Phil. iii. 33), *I did this so long as it was allowed, I discontinued it so long as it was not.*

quoad potuit restitit (Cat. Maj. 11), *he resisted as long as he could.*

NOTE 1. — **Quamdiū** takes the Indicative only: as, —

sē oppidō tam diū tenuit **quamdiū** in prōvinciā Parthī **fuērunt** (Fam. xii. 19), *he kept himself within the town so long as the Parthians were in the province.*

NOTE 2. — For **dum** and **dummodo** introducing a proviso, see § 314.

a. **Dum** in the sense of *while* usually takes the Present Indicative to indicate a continued action in *past* time, if that time is not contrasted with any other (§ 276 *e.* and note): as, —

dum haec **geruntur** (B. G. i. 46), *while this was going on.*

REMARK. — With all temporal particles the Subjunctive is often found depending on some other principle of construction. (See Intermediate Clauses below, §§ 340 ff.)

II. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

329. A clause used as a noun is called a Substantive Clause.

A Substantive Clause may be used as the Subject or Object of a verb, as an Appositive or as a Predicate Nominative (or Accusative).

NOTE. — Many ideas which in English take the form of an abstract noun may be rendered by a substantive clause in Latin. Thus, *he demanded an investigation*, may be **postulābat ut quaestiō habērētur.** The common English expression FOR with the infinitive also corresponds to a Latin substantive clause: as, *it remains for me to speak of the piratic war*, **relicum est ut dē bellō dīcam pīrāticō.**

REMARK. — When a Substantive Clause is used as Subject, the verb to which it is subject is called *impersonal*, and the sign of the construction in English is the so-called *expletive* IT.

Substantive Clauses are classified as follows: —

1. INFINITIVE CLAUSES: { *a*. Infinitive clause as Subject (§ 270). *b*. Infinitive clause as Object (§ 330. B).
2. SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES: (**ut, nē, quō, quīn, quōminus**). { *a*. Of Purpose (command, wish, fear) (§ 331). *b*. Of Result (happen, effect, hinder) (§ 332).
3. INDICATIVE CLAUSE with **quod**: Fact, Specification, Feeling.
4. INDIRECT QUESTIONS: Subjunctive, introduced by Interrogative Word.

1. Infinitive Clauses.

330. A. The Infinitive with Subject-Accusative may be used as the *subject* of **sum** and of many impersonal verbs (see § 270).

B. The Infinitive with Subject-Accusative is used as the *object* —

1. Of all verbs and expressions of *knowing*, *thinking*, *telling*, and *perceiving* (*Indirect Discourse*) (§ 272).

mē spērō līberātum [esse] metū (Tusc. ii. 67), *I trust I have been freed from fear.*

2. Of **iubeō** and **vetō**, and rarely of other verbs of *commanding*, *requesting*, *admonishing*, and the like (§ 331. *a*). Thus, —

> vetuēre [**bona**] **reddī**, vetuēre in **pūblicum redigī** (Liv. ii. 5), *they forbade the return of the goods* (that they be returned), etc.
>
> **Labiēnum** iugum montis **adscendere** iubet (B. G. i. 21), *he orders Labienus to ascend the ridge of the hill.*

3. Sometimes of verbs of *wishing* (§ 331. *b*): as, —

> **iūdicem mē esse** nōn doctōrem volō (Or. 117), *I wish to be a judge, not a teacher.*

REMARK. — The Infinitive with Subject-Accusative, though not strictly a Clause, is equivalent to one, and may be treated as such.

a. If the main verb is changed to the Passive, —

1. The subject of the infinitive becomes *nominative*, and the infinitive is retained (*Personal Construction*): as, —

> mōns dīcitur ab hostibus tenērī, *the hill is said to be held by the enemy.*
>
> Labiēnus iugum montis adscendere iubētur, *Labienus is ordered to ascend the ridge of the hill.*

2. The passive is used *impersonally*, and the clause retained as its subject (*Impersonal Construction*): —

> dīcitur montem ab hostibus tenērī, *it is said that the hill is held by the enemy.*

b. 1. Verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, etc., take in the Passive either the Personal or the Impersonal construction. But the Personal is more common and is regular with the tenses of incomplete action. Thus, —

> beātē vīxisse videor (Læl. 15), *I seem to have lived happily.*
>
> Epamīnōndās fidibus praeclārē cecinisse dīcitur (Tusc. i. 4), *Epaminondas is said to have played excellently on the lyre.*

2. **Iubeō** and **vetō** always take the personal construction: as, —

> iūssus es renūntiārī cōnsul (Phil. ii. 79), *you were under orders to be declared consul.*
>
> Nōlānī mūrōs portāsque adīre vetitī sunt (Liv. xxiii. 16), *the men of Nola were forbidden to go to visit the walls and gates.*

c. In the compound tenses of verbs of *saying*, etc., the impersonal construction is more common, and with the gerundive is regular: as, —

trāditum est etiam Homērum caecum fuisse (Tusc. v. 114), *it is a tradition, too, that Homer was blind.*

ubi tyrannus est, ibi nōn vitiōsam, sed dīcendum est plānē nūllam esse rempūblicam (Rep. iii. 43), *where there is a tyrant, it must be said, not that the Commonwealth is evil, but that it does not exist at all.*

d. The poets and later writers extend the personal use of the passive to verbs which are not properly *verba sentiendi*, etc.: as,—

colligor dominae placuisse (Ov. Am. ii. 6, 61), *it is gathered* [from this memorial] *that I pleased my mistress.*

e. The Infinitive with a subject may depend on any word implying speech or thought, though not strictly a verb of *saying*, etc.

f. Verbs of *promising*, *hoping*, *expecting*, *threatening*, *swearing*, and the like, regularly take the construction of Indirect Discourse, contrary to the English idiom: as,—

minātur **sēsē abīre** (Plaut. Asin. 604), *he threatens to go away.* [Direct: **abeō**, *I am going away.*]

ex quibus spērant **sē** māximum frūctum **esse captūros** (Læl. 79), *from which they hope to gain the utmost advantage.* [Direct: **capiēmus.**]

NOTE.—These verbs, however, often take a simple Complementary Infinitive. Thus,—pollicentur obsidēs **dare** (B. G. iv. 21), *they promise to give hostages.*

2. Clauses of Purpose.

NOTE.—Clauses of Purpose may be used substantively (1) as the Object of verbs of *admonishing*, etc. (§ 331); (2) as the Subject of these same verbs in the passive (§ 331. *h*), and of impersonal verbs and verbal phrases (§ 331. *i*); (3) in apposition with a substantive, or as predicate nominative, etc.

331. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with **ut** (negative **nē**) are used as the object of all verbs denoting an action *directed toward the future.*[1]

Such are, verbs meaning to *admonish*, *ask*, *bargain*, *command*, *decree*, *determine*, *permit*, *persuade*, *resolve*, *urge*, and *wish*. Thus,—

[1] Such verbs or verbal phrases are **id agō, ad id veniō, caveō (nē), cēnseō, cōgō, concēdō, cōnstituō, cūrō, dēcernō, ēdīcō, flāgitō, hortor, imperō, īnstō, mandō, moneō, negōtium dō, operam dō, ōrō, persuādeō, petō, postulō, praecipiō, precor, prōnūntiō, quaerō, rogō, scīscō, timeō, videō, volō.**

his ut conquirerent imperāvit (B. G. i. 28), *he ordered them to search.*

persuādet Casticō **ut** rēgnum **occupāret** (B. G. i. 3), *he persuades Casticus to usurp royal power.*

a. **Iubeō**, *order*, and **vetō**, *forbid*, take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative (§ 330. B. 2): as, —

līberōs ad sē **addūcī** iūssit (B. G. ii. 5), *he ordered the children to be brought to him.*

ab opere **lēgātōs discēdere** vetuerat (id. 20), *he had forbidden the lieutenants to leave the work.*

NOTE 1. — Other verbs of *commanding*, etc., may take the Infinitive: as, —

haec facere imperātum est, *orders were given to do this.*

rēs monet **cavēre** (Sall. Cat. 52), *the occasion warns us to be on our guard.*

b. Verbs of *wishing* take either the Subjunctive or the Infinitive. The Infinitive is more common when the subject remains the same; the Subjunctive, when it changes. Thus, —

1. Subject of dependent verb same as that of main verb: —

quōs nōn tam **ulcīscī** studeō quam **sānāre** (Cat. ii. 17), *whom I do not care so much to punish as to cure.*

2. Subject of dependent verb different from that of main verb: —

cupiō **ut impetret** (Plaut. Capt. 102), *I wish he may get it.*

māllem Cerberum **metuerēs** (Tusc. i. 12), *I would rather you feared Cerberus.*

NOTE. — **Volō** and **cupiō**, however, tend to take the Accusative and Infinitive rather than the Subjunctive, even when the subject changes. When it remains the same, the subject accusative is rarely found. Thus, —

iūdicem **mē esse**, nōn doctōrem volō (Or. 117), *I wish to be a judge, not a teacher.*

cupiō **mē esse** clēmentem (Cat. i. 4), *I desire to be merciful.* [But regularly, **cupiō esse clēmēns** (see § 271. *a*).]

c. Verbs of *permitting* take either the Subjunctive or the Infinitive. **Patior** takes regularly the Infinitive with Subject Accusative; so often **sinō**. Thus, —

permīsit **ut** partēs **faceret** (De Or. ii. 366), *permitted him to make divisions.*

vīnum importārī nōn sinunt (B. G. iv. 2), *they do not allow wine to be imported.*

d. Verbs of *determining*, *decreeing*, *resolving*, *bargaining* take either the Subjunctive or the Infinitive: as, —

cōnstituerant **ut** L. Bestia **quererētur** (Sall. Cat. 43), *they had determined that Lucius Bestia should complain.*

proeliō **supersedēre** statuit (B. G. ii. 8), *he determined to refuse battle.*

NOTE 1. — Different verbs of these classes with the same meaning vary in their construction. For verbs of *bargaining* with the Gerundive, see § 294. *d.*

NOTE 2. — Verbs of *decreeing* and *voting* often take the Infinitive of the Second Periphrastic conjugation : as, —

Rēgulus captīvōs **reddendōs** [**esse**] nōn cēnsuit (Off. i. 39), *Regulus voted that the captives should not be returned.* [He said, in giving his formal opinion: **captīvī nōn reddendī sunt.**]

e. 1. Verbs of *caution* and *effort* take the Subjunctive with **ut.** But **cōnor,** *try*, usually takes the Complementary Infinitive : as, —

cūrā **ut** quam prīmum **intellegam** (Fam. xiii. 10), *let me know as soon as possible* (take care that I may understand).

dant operam **ut habeant** (Sall. Cat. 41), *they take pains to have* (give their attention that, etc.).

sī **trānsīre** cōnārentur (B. G. i. 8), *if they should try to cross.*

NOTE. — **Cōnor sī** also occurs (cf. **mīror sī,** etc., § 333. *b.* Rem.).

2. Verbs denoting an effort *to hinder* take either (1) a Subjunctive clause with **quōminus** or **nē**, or (2) the Infinitive : as, —

nōn dēterret sapientem mors **quōminus** . . . (Tusc. i. 91), *death does not prevent the wise man from*, etc.

nē facerem impedīvit (Fat. 1), *prevented me from doing.*

prohibet **accēdere** (Caec. 46), *prevents him from approaching* (to approach).

NOTE. — For verbs of *hindering* negatived (*not to hinder*), see § 332. *g.*

f. Verbs of *fearing* take the Subjunctive, with **nē** affirmative and **nē nōn** or **ut** negative. Thus, —

timeō **nē** Verrēs **fēcerit** (Verr. v. 3), *I fear that Verres has done*, etc.

vereor **ut** tibi **possim** concēdere (De Or. i. 35), *I fear* [*that*] *I cannot grant you.*

NOTE. — In this use **nē** is commonly to be translated by *that* or *lest*, **ut** and **nē nōn** by *that not.*

REMARK. — With some verbs of the above classes **ut** is often omitted. So generally after verbs of *wishing*, *necessity*, *permission*, after **dīc, fac,** and often in Indirect Discourse after verbs of *commanding*, etc.: as, —

volō amēs (Att. ii. 10), *I wish you to love*, etc.
mē ipsum amēs oportet (Fin. ii. 85), *you ought to love me.*
Mnēsthea vocat, clāssem **aptent** sociī (Æn. iv. 289), *he calls Mnestheus* [and orders that] *his comrades should make ready the fleet* (cf. § 339).

NOTE. — Similarly **nē** is omitted after **cave** in Prohibitions (cf. § 269. *a*).

g. With any verbs of the above classes the poets may use the Infinitive instead of an object clause: as, —

hortāmur **fārī** (Æn. ii. 74), *we urge* [him] *to speak.*
nē quaere **docērī** (id. vi. 614), *seek not to be told.*

h. A substantive clause of Purpose used as the object of a verb becomes the subject when that verb is put in the passive. Thus, —

imperātum est **ut** iter **facerent**, *it was ordered that they should march.*
permīssum est **ut īrent**, *permission was given that they should go.*

i. The impersonals **licet** and **oportet** take as subject either a Substantive clause of Purpose or an Infinitive with or without subject-accusative. Thus, —

licet **mē īre**, *it is allowed me to go.*
querāmur licet (Cæc. 41), *we are allowed to complain.*

NOTE 1. — The Subjunctive with **oportet** omits **ut**, except in later writers (see § 331. *f.* Rem.).

NOTE 2. — **Licet** may take the Subjunctive, usually without **ut**, to denote concession (see § 313. *b*).

NOTE 3. — **Licet** may take (1) the Subjunctive; (2) the Simple Infinitive; (3) the Infinitive with Subject Accusative; or (4) the Dative and the Infinitive. Thus, *I may go* is **licet eam, licet īre, licet mē īre**, or **licet mihi īre**.

3. Clauses of Result.

NOTE. — Clauses of Result may be used substantively, (1) as the object of **faciō**, etc. (§ 332); (2) as the subject of these same verbs in the passive, as well as of other verbs and verbal phrases (§ 332. *a, d*); (3) in apposition with another substantive, or as predicate nominative, etc. (see § 332. *f*).

332. Substantive Clauses of Result with **ut** (negative **ut nōn**) are used as the object of verbs denoting the *accomplishment of an effort.*

Such are especially **faciō** and its compounds (**efficiō, cōnficiō**, etc.). Thus, —

efficiam ut intellegātis (Cluent. 7), *I will make you understand* (lit. effect that you, etc.). [So **faciam ut intellegātis** (id. 4).]

commeātūs **ut** portārī **posset** efficiēbat (B. G. ii. 5), *made it possible that supplies could be brought.*

a. Substantive Clauses of Result are used as the Subject —

1. Of passive verbs denoting the *accomplishment of an effort:* as, —

impetrātum est **ut** in senātū **recitārentur** (litterae) (B. C. i. 1), *they succeeded in having the letter read in the senate* (it was brought about that, etc.).

2. Of Impersonals meaning *it happens, it remains, it follows, it is necessary, it is added*, and the like: as, —

accidit **ut esset** lūna plēna (B. G. iv. 29), *it happened to be full moon* (it happened that it was, etc.). [Here **ut esset** is subject of **accidit**.]

reliqua est quārta virtūs **ut sit** ipsa frūgālitās (Tusc. iii. 17), *it remains that the fourth virtue is thrift.* [So also **restat**.]

b. A result clause, with or without **ut**, frequently follows **quam**, after a comparative (but see § 336. *c.* note 2): as, —

perpessus est omnia potius quam **indicāret** (Tusc. ii. 52), *he endured all rather than betray*, etc.

c. A result clause, with or without **ut**, is often used elliptically, in exclamatory questions. The question may be introduced by the interrogative **-ne**. Thus, —

quamquam quid loquor? **tē ut ūlla rēs frangat** (Cat. i. 22), *yet why do I speak?* [the idea] *that anything should bend you!*

egone **ut tē interpellem** (Tusc. ii. 42), *what, I interrupt you?*

ego tē vidēre **nōluerim** (Q. Fr. i. 3, 1), *I unwilling to see you?*

REMARK. — The Infinitive, in exclamations (§ 274), usually refers to something actually occurring; the Subjunctive, to something contemplated.

d. The phrase **tantum abest**, *it is so far* [from being the case], regularly takes two clauses of result with **ut**; one is *substantive*, the subject of **abest**; the other is *adverbial*, correlative with **tantum**. Thus, —

tantum abest **ut** nostra **mīrēmur**, **ut** usque eō difficilēs āc mōrōsī sīmus, **ut** nōbīs nōn **satisfaciat** ipse Dēmosthenēs (Or. 104), *so far from admiring my own works, I am difficult and captious to that degree, that not Demosthenes himself satisfies me.* [Here the first **ut**-clause is the subject of **abest** (§ 332. *a*); the second, a result clause, after **tantum** (§ 319); and the third, after **usque eō**.]

e. The expressions **facere ut, committere ut**, with the subjunctive, often form a periphrasis for the simple verb : as, —

invītus **fēcī ut** Flāminium ē senātū **ēicerem** (Cat. Maj. 42), *it was with reluctance that I expelled Flaminius from the senate.*

f. Rarely, a *thought* or an *idea* is considered as a result, and is expressed by the subjunctive with **ut** instead of the accusative and infinitive. (§ 336. 1). In this case a demonstrative usually precedes : as, —

praeclārum illud est, **ut** eōs . . . **amēmus** (Tusc. iii. 73), *this is a noble thing, that we should love*, etc.

vērīsimile nōn est **ut** ille **antepōneret** (Verr. iv. 11), *it is not likely that he preferred.*

g. A Relative clause of Result with **quīn** is used with verbs or other expressions of *hindering* and the like when these are negatived. Thus, —

facere nōn possum **quīn** . . . (Att. xii. 27), *I cannot avoid*, etc.

ut nūllā rē impedīrer **quīn** (Att. iv. 2, 6), *that I might be hindered by nothing from*, etc.

NOTE 1. — The negative may be expressed (as in the examples above) or merely implied (as in **quis impedit quīn eam**, *who* (*i.e.* nobody) *hinders me from going?*).

REMARK. — This usage is found especially with the phrase **nōn dubitō**, *I do not doubt*, and similar expressions : as, —

nōn dubitābat **quīn** eī **crēderēmus** (Att. vi. 2, 3), *he did not doubt that we believed him.*

NOTE 2. — **Nōn dubitō**, in the sense of *I do not hesitate*, commonly takes the Infinitive, but sometimes **quīn** with the subjunctive. Thus, —

nec dubitāre illum **appellāre** sapientem (Læl. 1), *and not to hesitate to call him a sage.*

dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit **quīn proficīscerētur** (B. G. ii. 2), *he did not think he ought to hesitate to set out.*

h. Some verbs and expressions may be used either as verbs of *saying* or as verbs of *commanding* or *effecting*. Hence they are variously construed. Thus, —

rēs ipsa monēbat **tempus esse** (Att. x. 8), *the thing itself warned that it was time.* [Cf. **monēre ut**, *warn to do something.*]

hōc volunt persuādēre, **nōn interīre** animās (B. G. vi. 14), *they wish to convince that souls do not perish.*

huic persuādet uti ad hostēs **trānseat** (B. G. iii. 18), *persuades him to pass over to the enemy.*

NOTE. — The infinitive with subject-accusative in this construction is Indirect Discourse, and is to be distinguished from the simple infinitive sometimes found with these verbs instead of a subjunctive clause.

4. Indicative with *Quod.*

333. A peculiar form of Substantive Clause consisting of **quod** causal with the Indicative is used when the statement is *regarded as a fact:* as, —

alterum est vitium, **quod** quīdam nimis māgnum studium **cōnferunt** (Off. i. 19), *it is another fault that some bestow too much zeal*, etc. [Here **ut cōnferant** could be used, meaning *that* some *should* bestow; or the accusative and infinitive, meaning *to bestow* (abstractly); **quod** makes it a fact that men *do* bestow, etc.]

quod rediit nōbīs mīrābile vidētur (Off. iii. 111), *that he* (Regulus) *returned seems wonderful to us.*

NOTE. — The clause with **quod** may be used as subject, as object, as appositive, etc., but it is commonly either the subject or in apposition with the subject.

a. In colloquial language, the clause with **quod** sometimes appears as an *accusative of specification*, corresponding to the English WHEREAS (cf. § 326. *a*): as, —

quod dē domō **scrībis** (Fam. xiv. 2, 3), *as to what you write of the house.*

b. Verbs of *feeling* and the expression of feeling take either **quod, quia** (Causal), or the accusative and infinitive (Indirect Discourse): as, —

quod scrībis . . . gaudeō (Q. F. iii. 1, 9), *I am glad that you write.*

quae **perfecta esse** vehementer laetor (Rosc. Am. 136), *I greatly rejoice that this is finished.*

REMARK. — **Mīror** and similar expressions are sometimes followed by a clause with **sī**,[1] apparently substantive, but really a protasis (cf. § 331. *e.* 1. note). Thus, —

mīror **sī** quemquam amīcum habēre **potuit** (Læl. 54), *I wonder if he could ever have a friend.* [Originally, *If this is so, I wonder at it.*]

[1] Cf. the Greek θαυμάζω εἰ.

5. Indirect Questions.

NOTE. — An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause introduced by an Interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. In grammatical form, *exclamatory* sentences are not distinguished from *interrogative*.

334. (RULE 82.) An Indirect Question takes its verb in the Subjunctive : as, —

> **quid** ipse **sentiam** expōnam (Div. i. 10), *I will explain what I think.* [Direct : **quid sentiō.**]
>
> rogat mē **quid sentiam,** *he asks me what I think.* [Cf. **rogat mē sententiam,** *he asks me my opinion.*]

NOTE — An Indirect Question may be the subject of a verb, the direct object, the secondary object, or an appositive.

The tenses in Indirect Questions follow the rules for sequence of tenses.

a. Indirect Questions referring to future time take the subjunctive of the First Periphrastic conjugation : as, —

> prospiciō quī concursūs futūrī sint (Div. in Caec. 42), *I foresee what throngs there will be.* [Direct : **quī erunt ?**]

b. The Deliberative Subjunctive (see § 268 and examples) remains unchanged in an Indirect Question, except in tense : as, —

> [quaeritur] **utrum** Carthāgō **dīruātur,** an Carthāginiēnsibus **reddātur** (De Inv. i. 17), [the question is] *shall Carthage be destroyed, or restored to the Carthaginians.*
>
> incertō **quid peterent** aut **vītārent** (Liv. xxviii. 36), *since it was doubtful* (abl. abs.) *what they should seek or shun.*

c. In colloquial usage and in poetry the subject of an Indirect Question is often attracted into the main clause as object (*accusative of anticipation*) : as, —

> nōstī **Mārcellum** quam tardus sit (Fam. viii. 10), *you know how slow Marcellus is.* [For nōstī **quam tardus sit Mārcellus.** Cf. *I know thee who thou art.*]

REMARK. — In some cases the *Object of anticipation* becomes Subject by a change of *voice*, and an apparent mixture of relative and interrogative construction is the result : as, —

quidam saepe in parvā pecūniā perspiciuntur quam sint levēs (Læl. 63), *it is often seen, in a trifling matter of money, how unprincipled some people are* (some people are often seen through, how unprincipled they are).

d. Indirect Questions often take the Indicative in poetry: as, —

nōn reputat **quid** labōris est (Plaut. Am. 172), *he does not consider what a task it is.*

e. A few interrogative expressions are used parenthetically in an indefinite sense and do not take a subjunctive. Such are —

nesciō quis (and kindred forms), *I know not who, somebody or other*, etc.
mīrum (nīmīrum) quam, *marvellously* (marvellous how).

Examples are: —

quī istam **nesciō quam** indolentiam māgnopere laudant (Tusc. iii. 12), *who greatly extol that freedom from pain, whatever that is.*
mīrum quantum prōfuit (Liv. ii. 1), *it helped prodigiously.*

f. An indirect question is occasionally introduced by **sī** in the sense of *whether* (like *if* in English, cf. § 333. *b.* Rem.): as, —

circumfunduntur hostēs **sī** quem aditum reperīre **possent** (B. G. vi. 37), *the enemy pour round* [to see] *if they can find entrance.*

NOTE. — This is strictly a Protasis, but usually no Apodosis is thought of, and the clause is virtually an Indirect Question.

g. **Forsit, forsitan, forsan, fortasse, fortasse an,** *perhaps*, are often followed by the Subjunctive: as, —

forsitan **quaerātis** quī iste terror sit (Rosc. Am. 5), *you may perhaps inquire what this alarm is.*

NOTE. — The Subjunctive Clause in this case was originally an Indirect Question. Thus, *it would be a chance whether*, etc.

III. INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

335. A Direct Quotation gives the exact words of the original speaker or writer.

An Indirect Quotation adapts the words of the speaker or writer to the construction of the sentence in which they are quoted.

I. Formal Indirect Discourse.

336. 1. Verbs and other expressions of *knowing*, *thinking*, *telling*, and *perceiving*[1] govern the Indirect Discourse.

2. (Rule 83.) In the Indirect Discourse the *main clause* of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All *Subordinate* clauses take the Subjunctive. Thus, —

> spērō **mē līberātum** [**esse**] dē metū (Tusc. ii. 67), *I trust I have been freed from fear.*
>
> [dīcit] **esse nōnnūllōs** quōrum auctōritās plūrimum **valeat** (B. G. i. 17), *he says there are some whose influence most prevails.* [In direct discourse: **sunt nōnnūllī . . . valet.**]

Note 1. — In the statement of all speech or thought, the Romans tended to use the Indirect Discourse, etc., with verbs of the classes mentioned, but: **inquam**, *said I* (etc.), is appropriated to the Direct Discourse except in poetry.

Note 2. — The verb of *saying*, etc., is often not expressed, but implied in some word or in the general drift of the sentence: as, —

> ōrantēs ut urbibus saltem — iam enim **agrōs dēplōrātōs esse** — opem senātus ferret (Liv. xli. 6), *praying that the senate would at least bring aid to the cities — for the fields* [they said] *were already given up as lost.*

1. Subject Accusative.

a. 1. The Subject of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse must regularly be expressed, even if it is wanting in the direct: as, —

> ōrātor **sum**, *I am an orator;* dīcit **sē** esse ōrātōrem, *he says he is an orator.*

Note. — But the subject is often omitted, if easily understood: as, —

> **ignōscere** imprūdentiae **dīxit** (B. G. iv. 27), *he said he pardoned their rashness.*

[1] Such are: (1) *knowing*, **sciō, cōgnōscō, compertum habeō**, etc.; (2) *thinking*, **putō, existimō, arbitror**, etc.; (3) *telling*, **dīcō, nūntiō, referō, polliceor, prōmittō, certiōrem faciō**, etc.; (4) *perceiving*, **sentiō, comperiō, videō, audiō**, etc. So in general any word that denotes thought or mental and visual perception or their expression may govern the Indirect Discourse.

REMARK. — After a relative, or **quam** (*than*), if the verb would be the same as that of the main clause, it is usually omitted, and its subject is attracted into the accusative : as, —

tē suspicor eīsdem rēbus quibus **mē ipsum** commovērī (Cat. Maj. 1), *I suspect that you are disturbed by the same things as I.*

2. When the verb of *saying*, etc., becomes *passive*, the construction may be either Personal or Impersonal (see § 330. *a–d*).

2. Subordinate Clauses.

b. A subordinate clause *merely explanatory* or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation takes the Indicative : as, —

quis neget haec omnia **quae vidēmus** deōrum potestāte administrārī (Cat. iii. 21), *who can deny that all these things we see are ruled by the power of the gods?*

cūius ingeniō putābat ea **quae gesserat**, posse celebrārī (Arch. 20), *by whose genius he thought that those deeds which he had done could be celebrated.* [Here the fact expressed by **quae gesserat**, though not explanatory, is felt to be true without regard to the quotation : **quae gessisset** would mean, what Marius *claimed* to have done.]

NOTE. — It often depends merely upon the feeling of the writer whether he shall use the Indicative or Subjunctive in such clauses (cf. §§ 340–342).

c. Clauses introduced by a relative which is equivalent to a demonstrative with a conjunction are not properly subordinate, and hence take the Accusative and Infinitive in Indirect Discourse : as, —

Mārcellus requīsīsse dīcitur Archimēdem illum, **quem** cum audīsset **interfectum** permolestē tulisse (Verr. iv. 131), *Marcellus is said to have sought for Archimedes, and when he heard that he was slain, to have been greatly distressed.*

ūnumquemque nostrūm cēnsent philosophī mundī esse partem, **ex quō** [= et ex eō] illud nātūrā **cōnsequī** (Fin. iii. 64), *the philosophers say that each one of us is a part of the universe, from which this naturally follows.*

NOTE 1. — Really subordinate clauses occasionally take this construction : as, —

quemadmodum sī nōn dēdātur obses prō ruptō **sē foedus habitūrum**, sīc dēditam inviolātam ad suōs remīssūrum (Liv. ii. 13), [he says] *as in case the hostage is not given up he shall consider the treaty as broken, so if given up he will return her unharmed to her friends.*

NOTE 2. — The infinitive construction is regularly continued after a comparative with **quam**: as, —

addit sē prius occīsum īrī ab eō quam mē violātum īrī (Att. ii. 20, 2), *he adds that he himself will be killed by him, before I shall be injured.*

NOTE 3. — The Subjunctive with or without **ut** also occurs with **quam** (see § 332. *b*).

d. A subordinate clause in the Indirect Discourse occasionally takes the Indicative when the *fact* is emphasized: as, —

factum ēius hostis perīculum . . . cum, Cimbrīs et Teutonīs . . . pulsīs, nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur (B. G. i. 40), *that a trial of this enemy had been made when*, etc., *the army seemed*, etc.

3. Tenses of the Infinitive.

336. A. The Present, the Perfect, or the Future Infinitive is used in Indirect Discourse, according as the time indicated is ***present***, ***past***, or ***future***, with reference to the verb of *saying*, etc., by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced. Thus, —

cadō, *I am falling* {dīcit / dīxit} sē cadere, {*he says* / *he said*} *he* {*is* / *was*} *falling.*

cadēbam, *I was falling* / cecidī, *I fell* / cecideram, *I had fallen* {dīcit / dīxit} sē cecidisse, {*he says* / *he said*} *he was falling, fell, had fallen.*

cadam, *I shall fall* {dīcit / dīxit} sē cāsūrum [esse], {*he says he shall fall.* / *he said he should fall.*}

ciderō, *I shall have fallen* {dīcit fore ut ceciderit [rare], *he says he shall have fallen.* / dīxit fore ut cecidisset [rare], *he said he should have fallen.*}

NOTE 1. — All varieties of past time are usually expressed in Indirect Discourse by the Perfect Infinitive, which may stand for the Imperfect, the Perfect, or the Pluperfect Indicative of the Direct. But sometimes continued or repeated action in past time is expressed by the Present Infinitive, which in such cases stands for the Imperfect Indicative of the Direct Discourse, and is often called the *Imperfect Infinitive* (so regularly after **meminī**): thus, —

tē meminī dīcere, *I remember that you said.* [Direct: **dīcēbās.**]

NOTE 2. — For various ways of expressing the Future Infinitive, see § 147. *c*.

4. Tenses of the Subjunctive.

336. B. The tenses of the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse follow the rule for the Sequence of Tenses (§ 286). They depend for their sequence on the verb of *saying*, etc., by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced.

Thus in the sentence, **dīxit sē Rōmam itūrum ut cōnsulem vidēret**, *he said he should go to Rome in order that he might see the consul*, **vidēret** follows the sequence of **dīxit** without regard to the Future Infinitive, **itūrum** [**esse**], on which it directly depends.

NOTE 1. — This rule applies not only to the subjunctive in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, but also to that which stands for the imperative, etc. (see examples in § 339), and to that in questions (§ 338).

NOTE 2. — A subjunctive depending on a Perfect Infinitive is commonly in the Imperfect or Pluperfect, even if the verb of *saying*, etc., is in a primary tense (cf. § 287. *i*). Thus, —

> tantum prōfēcisse vidēmur ut ā Graecīs nē verbōrum quidem cōpiā **vincerēmur** (N. D. i. 8), *we seem to have advanced so far that even in fullness of words we* ARE *not surpassed by the Greeks.*

a. The Present and Perfect Subjunctive are often used in dependent clauses of the Indirect Discourse even when the verb of *saying*, etc., is in a secondary tense: as, —

> dīcēbant . . . totidem Nerviōs (pollicērī) quī longissimē **absint** (B. G. ii. 4), *they said that the Nervii, who live farthest off, promised as many.*

NOTE. — This construction comes from the tendency of language to refer all time in narration to the time of the speaker (*Repraesentātiō*). In the course of a long passage in the Indirect Discourse the tenses of the subjunctive often vary, sometimes following the Sequence, and sometimes affected by *Repraesentātiō*. For examples see B. G. i. 13, vii. 20, etc.

5. Conditions in Indirect Discourse.

337. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: —

1. The Protasis, being a *subordinate clause*, is always in the Subjunctive.

2. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive.

a. The Present Subjunctive in the apodosis of less vivid future conditions (§ 307. *b*) becomes the Future Infinitive. Thus there is no distinction between more or less vivid future conditions in the Indirect Discourse.

Examples of conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are—

1. Simple Present Condition (§ 306).

(**dīxit**) sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn **praescrīberet** quemadmodum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn **oportēre** sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī (B. G. i. 36), *he said that if he did not dictate to the Roman people how they should use their rights, he ought not to be interfered with by the Roman people in the exercise of his rights.* [Direct: **sī nōn praescrībō . . . nōn oportet.**]

praedicāvit . . . sī pāce ūtī **velint**, inīcum **esse**, etc. (B. G. i. 44), *he asserted that if they wished to enjoy peace, it was unfair*, etc. [Direct: **sī volunt . . . est.** Present tense kept by *Reprdesentātiō* (§ 336. B. *a.* note).]

2. Simple Past Condition (§ 306.)

nōn dīcam nē illud quidem sī māximē in culpā **fuerit** Apollōnius, tamen in hominem honestissimae cīvitātis honestissimum tam graviter animadvertī causā indictā nōn **oportuisse** (Verr. v. 20), *I will not say this either, that, even if Apollonius was greatly in fault, still an honorable man ought not to have been punished so severely*, etc. [Direct: **sī fuit . . . nōn oportuit.**]

3. Future Conditions (§ 307).

Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque eīs . . . bellum **illātūrum**, sī in eō **manērent**, quod convēnisset, stīpendiumque quotannīs **penderent**: sī id nōn **fēcissent**, longē eīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī **abfutūrum** (B. G. i. 36), *he said that he would not give up the hostages to the Ædui, but would not make war upon them if they observed the agreement, etc., and paid tribute yearly; but if they should not do this, the name of brothers to the Roman people would be far from aiding them.* [Direct: **reddam . . . īnferam . . . sī manēbunt . . . pendent: sī nōn fēcerint . . . aberit.**]

id Datamēs ut audīvit, sēnsit, sī in turbam **exīsset** ab homine tam necessāriō sē relictum, **futūrum** [**esse**] **ut** cēterī cōnsilium **sequantur** (Nep. Dat. 6), *if it should get abroad that he had been abandoned by a man so closely connected with him, everybody else would follow his example.* [Direct: **sī exierit . . . sequentur.**]

b. In changing a Condition *contrary to fact* (§ 308) into the Indirect Discourse, the following points require notice:—

1. The Protasis always remains ***unchanged in tense.***

2. If the verb of the Apodosis is *active* it takes a peculiar infinitive form, made by combining the Participle in **-ūrus** with **fuisse.**

3. If it is *passive* or has no supine stem, the periphrasis **futūrum fuisse ut** (with the Imperfect Subjunctive) must be used.

4. An Indicative in the Apodosis becomes Perfect Infinitive.

Examples are —

nec sē superstitem fīliae **futūrum fuisse,** nisi spem ulcīscendae mortis ēius in auxiliō commīlitōnum **habuisset** (Liv. iii. 50), *and that he should not now be a survivor, etc., unless he had had hope,* etc. [Direct: **nōn superstes essem, nisi habuissem.**]

quōrum sī aetās **potuisset** esse longinquior, **futūrum fuisse ut** omnibus perfectīs artibus hominum vīta **ērudīrētur** (Tusc. iii. 69), *if life could have been longer, human existence would have been embellished by every art in its perfection.* [Direct: **ērudīta esset.**]

sī Cn. Pompēius prīvātus esset, tamen **erat dēligendus** (Manil. 50), *if P. were a private citizen, still he ought to be chosen,* would become **dēligendum fuisse.**

NOTE 1. — In Indirect Discourse Present Conditions contrary to fact are not distinguished in the *apodosis* from Past, but the *protasis* may keep them distinct.

NOTE 2. — The periphrasis **futūrum fuisse ut** is sometimes used from choice when there is no necessity for resorting to it.

NOTE 3. — Very rarely the Future Infinitive is used in the Indirect Discourse to express the Apodosis of a Present Condition contrary to fact. Only four or five examples of this use occur in classic authors: as, —

Titurius clāmābat sī Caesar adesset neque Carnūtēs, etc., neque Eburōnēs tantā cum contemptiōne nostrī ad castra **ventūrōs esse** (B. G. v. 29), *Titurius cried out that if Cæsar were present, neither would the Carnutes,* etc., *nor would the Eburones be coming to our camp with such contempt.* [Direct: **sī adesset . . . venīrent.**]

6. Questions in Indirect Discourse.

338. (RULE 84.) In the Indirect Discourse a *real* question, asking for an answer, is generally put in the Subjunctive: a *rhetorical* question, asked for effect and implying its own answer, in the Infinitive. Thus, —

quid sibi **vellet**? cūr in suās possessiōnēs **venīret** (B. G. i. 44), *what did he want? why did he come into his territories?* [Real question. Direct: **quid vīs? cūr venīs?**]

num recentium **iniūriārum** memoriam [sē] **dēpōnere posse** (id. i. 14), *could he lay aside the memory of recent wrongs?* [Rhetorical Question. Direct: **num possum**?]

NOTE 1. — No sharp line can be drawn between the Subjunctive and the Infinitive in questions in the Indirect Discourse. Whether the question is to be regarded as *rhetorical* or *real* often depends merely on the writer's point of view. Thus, —

utrum partem rēgnī **petītūrum** esse, **an** tōtum ēreptūrum (Liv. xlv. 19), *will you ask part of the regal power* (he said), *or seize the whole?*

NOTE 2. — Questions coming immediately after a verb of *asking* are treated as Indirect Questions and take the Subjunctive (see § 334). This is true even when the verb of asking serves also to introduce a passage in the Indirect Discourse. The question may be either real or rhetorical.

NOTE 3. — For the use of tenses, see § 336. B, note 1.

a. A Deliberative Subjunctive in the Direct Discourse is always retained in the Indirect: as, —

cūr aliquōs ex suīs **āmitteret** (B. C. i. 72), *why* (thought he) *should he lose some of his men?* [Direct: **cūr āmittam**?]

7. Commands in Indirect Discourse.

339. (RULE 85.) All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse: as, —

reminiscerētur veteris incommodī (B. G. i. 13), *remember* (said he) *the ancient disaster.* [Direct: **reminiscere.**]
fīnem **faciat** (id. 20), *let him make an end.* [Direct: **fac.**]

REMARK. — This rule applies not only to the Imperative of the direct discourse, but to the hortatory and the optative subjunctive as well.

NOTE 1. — Though these subjunctives stand for independent clauses of the direct discourse, they follow the rule for the sequence of tenses, being in fact dependent on the verb of *saying*, etc. (cf. §§ 286, 336. B, note 1).

NOTE 2. — A Prohibition in the Indirect Discourse is regularly expressed by **nē** with the Subjunctive, even when **nōlī** with the Infinitive would be used in the Direct: as, —

nē perturbārentur (B. G. vii. 29), *do not* (he said) *be troubled.* [Direct: **nōlīte perturbārī.** But sometimes **nōllet** is found in Ind. Disc.]

The following example illustrates some of the foregoing principles in a connected address: —

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.	DIRECT DISCOURSE.
Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs **faceret**, in eam partem **itūrōs** atque ibi **futūrōs Helvētiōs**, ubi eōs Caesar **cōnstituisset** atque esse **voluisset**: sīn bellō persequī **persevērāret, reminiscerētur** et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī, et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus **esset**, cum eī quī flūmen **trānsīssent** suīs auxilium ferre nōn **possent**, nē ob eam rem aut **suae** māgnō opere virtūtī **tribueret**, aut **ipsōs dēspiceret**: **sē** ita ā patribus māiōribusque **suīs didicisse**, ut magis virtūte quam dolō **contenderent**, aut īnsidiīs **nīterentur**. Quārē nē **committeret**, ut **is** locus ubi **cōnstitissent** ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen **caperet**, aut memoriam **prōderet**. — B. G. i. 13.	Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs **faciet**, in eam partem **ībunt** atque ibi **erunt Helvētiī**, ubi eōs tū **cōnstitueris** atque esse **volueris**: sīn bellō persequī **persevērābis, reminiscere** [inquit] et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus **es**, cum eī quī flūmen **trānsierant** suīs auxilium ferre nōn **possent**, nē ob eam rem aut **tuae** māgnō opere virtūtī **tribueris**, aut **nōs dēspēxeris**: **nōs** ita ā patribus māiōribusque **nostrīs didicimus**, ut magis virtūte quam dolō **contendāmus**, aut īnsidiīs **nītāmur**. Quārē **nōlī committere**, ut **hic** locus ubi **cōnstitimus** ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen **capiat**, aut memoriam **prōdat**.

II. Intermediate Clauses.

340. A Subordinate clause takes the Subjunctive, (1) when it expresses the thought of some other person than the speaker or writer (*Informal Indirect Discourse*), or (2) when it is an integral part of a Subjunctive clause or equivalent Infinitive (*Attraction*).

1. Informal Indirect Discourse.

341. (Rule 86.) A subordinate clause takes the subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. Thus, —

a. In Subordinate clauses in formal indirect discourse (§ 336). So also in Informal Indirect Discourse in the following cases: —

b. When the clause depends upon another containing a *wish*, a *command*, or a *question* expressed indirectly, though not strictly in the form of Indirect Discourse: as, —

animal sentit quid sit quod deceat (Off. i. 14), *an animal feels what it is that is fit.*

hunc sibi ex animō scrūpulum, quī sē diēs noctēsque stimulet āc pungat, ut ēvellātis postulat (Rosc. Am. 6), *he begs you to pluck from his heart this doubt that goads and stings him day and night.*

c. When the main clause of a quotation is merged in the verb of *saying*, or some modifier of it: as, —

sī quid dē hīs rēbus dīcere **vellet**, fēcī potestātem (Cat. iii. 11), *if he wished to say anything about these matters, I gave him a chance.*

tulit dē caede quae in Appiā viā facta esset (Milo 15), *he passed a law concerning the murder which* (in the language of the bill) *took place in the Appian Way.*

d. When a *reason* or an *explanatory fact* is introduced by a relative or by **quod** (rarely **quia**) (see § 321). Thus, —

Paetus omnēs librōs **quōs** pater suus **relīquisset** mihi dōnāvit (Att. ii. 1, 12), *Pætus presented me all the books which* (he said) *his father had left.*

REMARK. — Under this head even what the speaker himself thought elsewhere may have the Subjunctive. So with **quod** the verb of *saying* may be in the Subjunctive. (Especially **nōn quia**, etc. See § 321. Rem.)

2. Subjunctive of Integral Part (Attraction).

342. (RULE 87.) A clause depending on a Subjunctive clause or an equivalent Infinitive will itself take the Subjunctive if regarded *as an integral part of that clause:* as, —

imperat, **dum rēs adiūdicētur**, hominem ut adservent: cum iūdicātum sit, ad sē addūcant (Verr. iii. 55), *he orders them, till the affair should be decided, to keep the man; when he is judged, to bring him to him.*

mōs est Athēnīs laudārī in contiōne eōs quī **sint** in proeliīs interfectī (Or. 151), *it is the custom at Athens for those to be publicly eulogized who have been slain in battle.* [Here **laudārī = ut laudentur.**]

a. But a dependent clause, closely connected *grammatically* with a Subjunctive or Infinitive clause, may still take the Indicative, if it is not regarded as a necessary *logical* part of that clause: as, —

nē hostēs, **quod** tantum multitūdine **poterant**, suōs circumvenīre possent (B. G. ii. 8), *lest the enemy, because they were so strong in numbers, should be able to surround his men.*

NOTE. — The use of the Indicative serves to emphasize the *fact*, as true. But often no distinction between the two moods is perceptible.

IMPORTANT RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. A noun used to describe another, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in Case (§ 183).
2. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles agree with their nouns in *gender*, *number*, and *case* (§ 186).
3. A Relative pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in *gender* and *number*, but its *case* depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands (§ 198).
4. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in *number* and *person* (§ 204).
5. Superlatives (more rarely comparatives) denoting order and succession — also **medius, cēterus, relicus** — usually designate not *what object*, but *what part of it*, is meant (§ 193).
6. The Personal Pronouns have two forms for the genitive plural, that in **-ūm** being used *partitively*, and that in **-ī** oftenest *objectively* (§ 194. *b*).
7. The Reflexive pronoun (**sē**), and usually the corresponding possessive (**suus**), are used in some part of the predicate to refer to the subject of the sentence or clause (§ 196).
8. The Possessive Pronouns are used instead of the genitive of a personal pronoun: (1) always instead of the *possessive* genitive, (2) rarely instead of an *objective* genitive (§ 197. *a*).
9. A Possessive representing a genitive may have a genitive in apposition (§ 197. *e*).
10. Adverbs are used to modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs (§ 207).
11. A question of simple fact, requiring the answer YES or NO, is formed by adding the enclitic **-ne** to the emphatic word (§ 210. *a*).
12. When the enclitic **-ne** is added to a negative word, — as in **nōnne**, — an *affirmative* answer is expected. The particle **num** suggests a *negative* answer (§ 210. *c*).

13. The subject of a finite verb is in the NOMINATIVE (§ 173. *a*).
14. A noun used to limit or define another, and *not* denoting the same person or thing, is put in the GENITIVE (§ 213).
15. The Subjective Genitive is used with a noun to denote (1) the Author or Owner, (2) the Source or the Material, (3) the Quality (§ 214).
16. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs (*Partitive Genitive*, § 216).
17. Nouns of *action*, *agency*, and *feeling* govern the genitive of the object (*Objective Genitive*, § 217).
18. Adjectives denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *memory*, *fulness*, *power*, *sharing*, *guilt*, and their opposites; verbals in **āx**, and participles in **-ns**, when used as adjectives, govern the Genitive (§ 218. *a*, *b*).
19. Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting*, take the Genitive of the object when they are used of a *continued state of mind*, but the Accusative when used of a *single act* (§ 219).
20. Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, and *acquitting* take the Genitive of the Charge or Penalty (§ 220).
21. The DATIVE is used of the object indirectly affected by an action (*Indirect Object*, § 224).
22. Most verbs signifying to *favor*, *help*, *please*, *trust*, and their contraries; also, to *believe*, *persuade*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *envy*, *threaten*, *pardon*, and *spare*, take the Dative (§ 227).
23. Most verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**, and some with **circum**, take the Dative of the indirect object (§ 228).
24. Many verbs of *taking away*, and the like, take the Dative (especially of a *person*) instead of the Ablative of Separation (§ 229).
25. The passive of intransitive verbs that govern the dative can be used only *impersonally* (§ 146. *d*). The dative is retained (cf. § 225. *e*).

26. The Dative is used with **esse** and similar words to denote Possession (§ 231).
27. The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive, to denote the person on whom the necessity rests (§ 232).
28. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected (§ 233. *a*).
29. The Dative is used with adjectives (and a few adverbs) of *fitness*, *nearness*, *service*, *inclination*, and their opposites (§ 234. *a*).
30. The Dative is often required, not by any particular word, but by the general meaning of the sentence (*Dative of Reference*, § 235).
31. The Direct Object of a transitive verb is put in the ACCUSATIVE (§ 237).
32. A neuter verb often takes an accusative of kindred meaning (§ 238).
33. Verbs of *naming*, *choosing*, *appointing*, *making*, *esteeming*, *showing*, and the like, may take a Predicate Accusative along with the direct object (§ 239. *a*).
34. Transitive verbs compounded with prepositions sometimes take (in addition to the direct object) a Secondary Object, originally governed by the preposition (§ 239. *b*).
35. Verbs of *asking* and *teaching* may take two Accusatives, one of the *person*, and the other of the *thing* (§ 239. *c*).
36. The subject of an Infinitive is in the Accusative (§ 173. 2).
37. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative (§ 240. *e*).
38. Words signifying *separation* or *privation* are followed by the ABLATIVE, with or without a preposition (*Ablative of Separation*, § 243).
39. **Opus** and **ūsus**, signifying *need*, are followed by the Ablative (§ 243. *e*).
40. The Ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to denote

the *source* from which anything is derived or the *material* of which it consists (§ 244).

41. The Ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to express *cause* (§ 245).

42. **Dignus** and **indignus**; **contentus**, **laetus**, **praeditus**, etc., take the Ablative (§ 245. *a*).

43. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is put in the Ablative with **ā** or **ab** (§ 246).

44. The Comparative degree is followed by the Ablative (signifying THAN) without **quam** (§ 247).

45. The Comparative may be followed by **quam**, *than*. When quam is used, the two things compared are put in the same case (§ 247. *a*).

46. The *manner* of an action is denoted by the Ablative, usually with **cum**, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun (§ 248).

47. *Accompaniment* is denoted by the Ablative, regularly with **cum** (§ 248. *a*).

48. The Ablative is used to denote the *means* or *instrument* of an action (§ 248. *c*. 1).

49. The deponents, **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vescor**, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative (§ 249).

50. With comparatives and words implying comparison the Ablative is used to denote the *degree of difference* (§ 250).

51. *Quality* is denoted by the Ablative with a modifier, usually an adjective or limiting genitive (§ 251).

52. *Price* is expressed by the Ablative (§ 252).

53. The Ablative of Specification denotes that *in respect to which* anything *is* or *is done* (§ 253).

54. A noun or pronoun, with a participle, may be put in the Ablative, to define the *time* or *circumstances* of an action (*Ablative Absolute*).

An adjective, or a second noun, may take the place of the participle in the ablative absolute construction (§ 255. *a*).

55. Time *when*, or *within which*, is expressed by the Ablative; time *how long* by the Accusative (§ 256).

56. The place *from which* is denoted by the Ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**; the *place to which* (the end of motion) by the Accusative with **ad** or **in** (§ 258. *c*).

But names of towns or small islands *from which*, as also **domus** and **rūs**, are put in the Ablative without a preposition (§ 258. *a*).

So also names of towns or small islands *to which*, as also **domus** and **rūs**, are put in the Accusative without a preposition (§ 258. *b*).

57. The *place where* is denoted by the Ablative with the preposition in (*Locative Ablative*); but names of towns and small islands are put in the Locative Case (§ 258. *c*).

The Locative Case is also preserved in **domī**, **bellī**, **mīlitiae**, **humī**, **foris**, **rūri**, **terrā marique** (§ 258. *d*).

58. The Infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used with *est* and similar verbs (1) as the *subject*, (2) in *apposition* with the subject, or (3) as a *predicate nominative* (§ 270).

59. Verbs which imply another action of the same subject to complete their meaning take the Infinitive without a subject accusative, (*Complementary Infinitive*, § 271).

60. The Infinitive, with subject accusative, is used with verbs and other expressions of *knowing*, *thinking*, *telling*, and *perceiving* (*Indirect Discourse*, see § 272).

61. The Infinitive is often used for the Imperfect Indicative, in narration and takes a subject in the Nominative (*Historical Infinitive*, § 275).

62. Sequence of Tenses. In complex sentences, a *primary* tense in the main clause is followed by the Present or Perfect Subjunctive; a *secondary* tense by the Imperfect or Pluperfect (§ 286).

63. The tenses of the Infinitive denote time as *present*, *past*, or *future* with respect to the time of the verb on which they depend (§ 288).

64. PARTICIPLES denote time as *present*, *past*, or *future* with respect to the time of the verb in their clause (§ 290).

65. The GERUND and the GERUNDIVE are used, in the oblique cases, in many of the constructions of nouns (§ 297).

For particulars, see §§ 298–301.

66. The Former SUPINE (in **-um**) is used after verbs of *motion* to express Purpose (§ 302).

67. The Latter SUPINE (in **-ū**) is used only with a few adjectives, with the nouns **fās**, **nefās**, and **opus**, and rarely with verbs, to denote an action *in reference to which* the quality is asserted (§ 303).

68. The Hortatory SUBJUNCTIVE is used to express an *exhortation*, a *command*, a *concession*, or a *condition* (§ 266).

69. The Subjunctive is used to express a *wish*. The present tense denotes the wish as *possible*, the imperfect as *unaccomplished* in present time, the pluperfect as *unaccomplished* in past time (*Optative Subjunctive*, § 267).

70. The Subjunctive is used in questions implying *doubt*, *indignation*, or an *impossibility* of the thing being done (*Deliberative Subjunctive*, § 268).

71. Prohibition is regularly expressed in classic prose (1) by **nē** with the second person of the Perfect Subjunctive, (2) by **nōlī** with the Infinitive, (3) by **cave** with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive (§ 269. *a*).

72. The Potential Subjunctive is used to denote an action not as *actually performed*, but as *possible* (§ 311. *a*).

73. In both Protasis and Apodosis (1) simple conditions take the present and past tenses of the Indicative; (2) future conditions take the future and future perfect Indicative and the present and perfect Subjunctive; (3) conditions contrary to fact take the imperfect and pluperfect Subjunctive (see §§ 306–311).

74. **Dum**, **modo**, **dummodo**, and **tantum**, introducing a PROVISO, take the Subjunctive (§ 314).

75. FINAL clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by **ut (uti)**,

negative **ne** (**ut nē**), or by a Relative (pronoun or adverb) (§ 317).

76. CONSECUTIVE clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by **ut**, *so that* (negative, **ut nōn**), or by a Relative (pronoun or adverb) (§ 319).

77. A Relative clause with the Subjunctive expresses a characteristic of the antecedent (§ 320).

78. **Dīgnus, indīgnus, aptus,** and **idōneus** take a clause of result with a relative (rarely with **ut**) (§ 320. *f*).

79. The Causal Particles **quod, quia,** and **quoniam** take the Indicative when the reason is given on the authority of the *speaker* or *writer;* the Subjunctive when the reason is given on the authority of *another* (§ 321).

80. **Cum** TEMPORAL, meaning *when*, takes the Imperfect and Pluperfect in the Subjunctive, other tenses in the Indicative (§ 325).

81. **Cum** CAUSAL or CONCESSIVE takes the Subjunctive (§ 326).

82. An Indirect Question takes its verb in the Subjunctive (§ 334).

83. In the INDIRECT DISCOURSE the *main clause* of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive (§ 336. 2).

84. In the Indirect Discourse a *real question* is generally put in the Subjunctive; a *rhetorical question* in the Infinitive (§ 338).

85. All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse (§ 339).

86. A Subordinate clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker (*Informal Indirect Discourse*, § 341).

87. A clause depending on a Subjunctive clause or an equivalent Infinitive will itself take the Subjunctive if regarded as an *integral part* of that clause (*Attraction*, § 342).

6. ORDER OF WORDS.

343. The Subject usually stands first in the sentence, the Predicate last. Thus, —

Pausāniās Lacedaemonius māgnus homō sed varius in omnī genere vītae **fuit.**

The verb is usually placed *last of all*, after all its modifiers. But it is often made *last but one*, followed by some single word of the predicate.

344. In *connected discourse* the word most prominent in the speaker's mind comes first, and so on in order of prominence, corresponding with the emphasis given in English by a graduated stress of voice.

a. In any phrase the determining and most significant word comes first: as, —

1. Adjective and Noun: —

omnēs hominēs decet, EVERY *man ought* (opposed to some who do not).
Lūcius Catilīna **nōbilī** genere nātus fuit **māgnā** vī et animī et corporis sed **ingeniō** malō prāvōque (Sall. Cat. 5), *Lucius Catiline was born of a* NOBLE *family, with* GREAT *force of mind and body, but with a* NATURE *that was evil and depraved.* [Here the adjectives in the first part are the emphatic words, no antithesis between the nouns being as yet thought of; but in the second branch the *noun* is meant to be opposed to those before mentioned, and so takes the prominent place.]

2. Word with modifying case: —

lacrimā nihil citius arēscit (Inv. i. 109), *nothing dries quicker than a* TEAR.
nēmō ferē **laudis** cupidus (De Or. i. 14), *hardly any one desirous of* GLORY (cf. Manil. 7, **avidī** laudis, EAGER *for glory*).

b. Numeral adjectives, adjectives of quantity, demonstrative, relative, and interrogative pronouns, and adverbs usually precede the word or words to which they belong: as, —

cum **aliquā** perturbātiōne (Off. i. 137), *with* SOME *disturbance.*
hōc ūnō praestāmus (De Or. i. 32), *in* THIS *one thing we excel.*
cēterae ferē artēs, *the* OTHER *arts.*

c. When **sum** is used as the Substantive verb (see § 172. note), it regularly stands first, or at any rate before its subject: as, —

est virī māgnī pūnīre sontēs (Off. i. 82), *it is the duty of a great man to punish the guilty*.

d. The verb may come first, or have a prominent position either (1) because the *idea* in it is emphatic: as, —

dīcēbat idem Cotta (Off. ii. 59), *Cotta used to* SAY *the same thing* (opposed to others' *boasting*).

idem **fēcit** adulēscēns M. Antōnius (id. ii. 49), *the same thing was* DONE *by M. Antonius in his youth*. [Opposed to **dīxī** just before.]

(2) or because the *statement of the idea* is emphatic: as, —

nisi forte **erunt** dīgnī calamitāte (Off. ii. 62), *unless perchance they* REALLY DESERVE *their misfortune*.

praesertim cum **scrībat** (Panaetius) (id. iii. 8), *especially when he* DOES SAY (in his books). [Opposed to something omitted by him.]

(3) or because the *tense* only is emphatic: as, —

fuimus Trōes, **fuit** Īlium (Æn. ii. 325), *we have ceased to be Trojans, Troy is now no more*.

e. Often the connection of two emphatic phrases is brought about by giving the precedence to the most prominent part of each and leaving the less prominent to follow in inconspicuous places: as, —

plūrēs solent esse causae (Off. i. 28), *there are* USUALLY SEVERAL *reasons*.
quōs āmīsimus cīvīs eōs Mārtis vīs perculit (Marc. 17), WHAT *fellow-citizens we have* LOST, *have been stricken down by the violence of war*.
māximās tibi omnēs grātiās agimus (Marc. 33), *we* ALL *render you the* WARMEST *thanks*.

f. Antithesis between two pairs of ideas is indicated either (1) by placing the pairs in the same order (*anaphora*) or (2) in exactly the opposite order (*chiasmus*).

(1) rērum cōpia verbōrum cōpiam gīgnit (De Or. iii. 125), ABUNDANCE *of* MATTER *produces* COPIOUSNESS *of* EXPRESSION.
(2) lēgēs suppliciō improbōs afficiunt, dēfendunt āc tuentur bonōs (Leg. ii. 13), *the laws* VISIT PUNISHMENTS *upon the* WICKED, *but the* GOOD *they* DEFEND *and* PROTECT.

g. A modifier of a phrase or some part of it is often embodied within the phrase (cf. *a*): as, —

dē commūnī hominum memoriā (Tusc. i. 59), *in regard to the* UNIVERSAL *memory of man*.

h. A favorite order with the poets is the *interlocked*, by which the attribute of one pair comes between the parts of another: as, —

et superiectō pavidae nātārunt aequore dāmae (Hor. Od. i. 2. 11).

i. Frequently unimportant words follow in the train of more emphatic ones with which they are grammatically connected, and so acquire a prominence out of proportion to their importance: as, —

dictitābat sē hortulōs aliquōs emere velle (Off. iii. 58), *gave out that he wanted to buy some gardens.* [Here **aliquōs** is less emphatic than **emere**, but precedes it on account of the emphasis on **hortulōs**.]

j. The copula is generally felt to be of so little importance that it may come in anywhere where it sounds well; but usually under cover of more emphatic words: as, —

cōnsul ego quaesīvī, cum vōs mihi essētis in cōnsiliō (R. P. iii. 28), *as consul I held an investigation in which you attended me in council.*

falsum est id tōtum (id. ii. 28), *that is all false.*

k. Many expressions have acquired an invariable order: as, —

rēs pūblica; populus Rōmānus; honōris causā; pāce tantī virī.

NOTE. — Thus, **senātus populusque Rōmānus** (S. P. Q. R.) originally stated with emphasis the official bodies, but became fixed so as to be the only permissible form of expression.

l. The Romans had a fondness for emphasizing persons, so that a name or a pronoun often stands in an unduly emphatic place: as, —

[dixit] vēnālīs quidem **sē** hortōs nōn habēre (Off. iii. 58), [said] *that he didn't have any gardens for sale, to be sure.*

m. Kindred words, as in *figūra etymologica*, often come together:

ita sēnsim sine sēnsū aetās senēscit (C. M. 38), *thus gradually, without being perceived, man's life grows old.*

SPECIAL RULES.

345. The following are special rules of arrangement: —

a. 1. Prepositions (except **tenus** and **versus**) regularly precede their nouns; 2. but a monosyllabic preposition is often placed between a noun and its adjective or limiting genitive: as, —

quem ad modum; quam ob rem; māgnō cum metū; omnibus cum cōpiīs; nūlla in rē (cf. § 344. *i*).

b. **Itaque** regularly comes first in its sentence or clause; **enim, autem, vērō, quoque,** never first, but usually second, sometimes third

if the second word is emphatic; **quidem**, never first, but after the emphatic word; **nē . . . quidem** include the emphatic word or words.

c. **Inquam, inquit** are always used parenthetically, following one or more words. So, often, **crēdō, opīnor**, and in poetry **precor.**

d. The negative precedes the word it especially affects; but if it belongs to no one word in particular, it generally precedes the verb; if it is especially emphatic, it begins the sentence.

e. In the arrangement of clauses, the relative clause often comes first in Latin, and, if so, usually contains the antecedent noun: as, —

> **quōs āmīsimus cīvis, eōs Mārtis vīs perculit** (Marc. 17), *those citizens whom we have lost*, etc.

STRUCTURE OF THE PERIOD.

NOTE. — Latin, unlike modern languages, expresses the relation of words to each other by *inflection* rather than by *position*. Hence its structure not only admits of great variety in the arrangement of words, but is especially favorable to that form of sentence which is called a Period. In a period, the sense is expressed by the sentence *as a whole*, and is held in suspense till the delivery of the last word.

An English sentence does not often exhibit this form of structure. It was imitated, sometimes with great skill and beauty, by many of the earlier writers of English prose; but its effect is better seen in poetry, in such a passage as the following: —

> "High on a throne of royal state, which far
> Outshone the wealth of Ormus and of Ind,
> Or where the gorgeous East, with richest hand,
> Showers on her kings barbaric pearl and gold,
> Satan exalted sat." — *Paradise Lost*, Book II. 1-5.

But in argument or narrative, the best English writers more commonly give short, clear sentences, each distinct from the rest, and saying one thing by itself. In Latin, on the contrary, the story or argument is viewed as a whole; and the logical relation among all its parts is carefully indicated. Hence, —

346. In the structure of the Period, the following rules are to be observed: —

a. In general the main subject or object is put in the main clause, not in a subordinate one (according to § 344): as, —

> Hannibal cum recēnsuisset auxilia Gādēs profectus est, *when Hannibal had reviewed*, etc.

b. Clauses are usually arranged in the order of prominence in the mind of the speaker; so, usually, *cause* before *result; purpose, manner*, and the like, before the *act*.

c. In co-ordinate clauses, the copulative conjunctions are frequently omitted (*asyndeton*). In such cases the connection is made clear by some antithesis indicated by the position of words.

d. A change of subject, when required, is marked by the introduction of a pronoun, if the new subject has already been mentioned. But such change is often purposely avoided by a change in structure, — the less important being merged in the more important by the aid of participles or of subordinate phrases: as, —

> quem ut barbarī incendium effūgisse vīdērunt, tēlīs ēminus ēmīssīs interfēcērunt, *when the barbarians saw that he had escaped,* THEY *threw darts at* HIM *and killed* HIM.
>
> celeriter cōnfectō negōtiō, in hīberna legiōnēs revertērunt, *the matter was soon finished,* AND *the legions,* etc.

e. So the repetition of a noun, or the substitution of a pronoun for it, is avoided, unless a different case is required: as, —

> dolōrem sī nōn poterō frangere occultābō, *if I cannot conquer the pain, I will hide* IT. [Cf. *if I cannot conquer, I will hide the pain.*]

f. The Romans were careful to close a period with an agreeable succession of long and short syllables. Thus, —

> quod scīs nihil prōdest, quod nescīs multum obest (Or. 166), *what you know is of no use, what you do not know does great harm.*

PART THIRD.—PROSODY (RULES OF VERSE).

1. QUANTITY.

1. General Rules.

347. The following are General Rules of Quantity (cf. § 18):—

a. VOWEL. A vowel before another vowel or **h** is short: as, **vĭa, trăhō.**

EXCEPTIONS. 1. In the genitive form **-ius**, **ī** is long, except usually in **alterius**. Thus, **utrīus, nūllīus**. It is, however, sometimes made short in verse (§ 83. *b*).

2. In the genitive and dative singular of the fifth declension, **e** is long between two vowels: as, **diēī**; but it is short in **fidĕī, rĕī, spĕī**; **a** is long before **ī** in the old genitive of the first declension: as, **aulāī**.

3. In the conjugation of **fīō**, **ī** is long except when followed by **er**. Thus, **fīō, fīēbam, fīam**, but **fĭerī, fĭerem**; so, also, **fĭt**.

4. In many Greek words the vowel in Latin represents a long vowel or diphthong, and retains its original long quantity: as, **Trōĕs** (Τρῶες), **Thalīa** (Θαλεῖα), **hērōās** (ἥρωας), **āēr** (ἀήρ).

5. In **ēheu** and **dīus**, and sometimes in **Dīāna** and **ŏhe**, the first vowel is long.

b. DIPHTHONG. A Diphthong is long: as, **fōedus, cūī, dēinde.**

EXCEPTION. The preposition **prae** in compounds is generally shortened before a vowel: as, **prăe-ūstīs** (Æn. vii. 524), **prăe-eunte** (id. v. 186).

c. CONTRACTION. A vowel formed by contraction (*crasis*) is long: as, **nīl**, from **nihil**; **currūs**, genitive for **curruis**.

But often two syllables are united by Synæresis without contraction: as when **părĭĕtĭbŭs** is pronounced *pary̆ĕtĭbus*.

d. POSITION. A vowel, though short, followed by two consonants or a double consonant, makes a long syllable: as, **adventus, cortex.**

But if the two consonants are a mute followed by l or r, the syllable may be either long or short (*common*); as, **alacris** or **alăcris**; **patris** or **pătris**.

Note 1. — Any vowel before i consonant makes a long syllable (except in **biiugis, quădriiugis**).

Note 2. — The compounds of iaciō, though written with one i, commonly retain the long vowel of the prepositions with which they are compounded, as if before a consonant, and lengthen the short as if by Position. (But how the syllables were pronounced is uncertain.) Thus, —

obicis hosti (at the end of a hexameter, Æn. iv. 549).
inicit et saltū (at the beginning of a hexameter, Æn. ix. 552).
prōice tēla manū (at the beginning of a hexameter, Æn. vi. 836).

Remark. — The y or w sound resulting from *synæresis* has the effect of a consonant in making position: as, **abietis** (abyetis), **fluviōrum** (*fluvyōrum*). Conversely, when the semivowel becomes a vowel, position is lost: as, **silŭae**, for **silvae**.

2. Final Syllables.

348. The Quantity of Final Syllables is determined by the following Rules: —

1. Monosyllables ending in a vowel are long: as, **mē, tū, hī, nē.**

The attached particles **-nĕ, -quĕ, -vĕ, -cĕ, -ptĕ,** and **rĕ- (rĕd-)** are short; **sē-** is long. Thus, **sēcēdit, exercitumquĕ rĕdūcit.** But **re-** is often long in **rēligiō (relligiō), rētulī (rettulī), rēpulī (reppulī).**

2. Nouns and adjectives of one syllable are long: as, **sōl, ōs (ōris), bōs, pār, vīs.**

Exceptions. **cŏr** (sometimes long), **fĕl, lăc, mĕl, ŏs (ossis), vĭr, tŏt, quŏt.**

3. Most monosyllabic Particles are short: as, **ăn, ĭn, cĭs, nĕc.** But **āc, crās, cūr, ēn, nōn, quīn, sīn** — with adverbs in **c**: as, **hīc, hūc, sīc** — are long.

4. Final a in words declined by cases is short, except in the ablative singular of the first declension; in all other words final **a** is long. Thus, **eă stellă** (nom.), **cum eā stellā** (abl.); **frūstrā, vocā** (imperat.), **posteā, trīgintā.**

Exceptions. **ēiă, ită, quiă, pută** (*suppose*): and, in late use, **trīgintă,** etc.

5. Final **e** is short, as in **nūbĕ, dūcitĕ, saepĕ.** Except —

1. In nouns of the fifth declension : as, **fidē** (also **famē**), **hodiē** (**hoi diē**), **quārē** (**quā rē**).

2. In Greek neuters plural of the second declension : as, **cētē.**

3. In adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declension, with others of like form : as, **altē, miserē, apertē, saepissimē.** So, **ferē, fermē**, probably of same origin.

4. In the imperative singular of the second conjugation : as, **vidē.**

EXCEPTIONS. To 3 : **benĕ, malĕ; infernĕ, supernĕ.** To 4 : sometimes, **cavĕ, habĕ, tacĕ, valĕ, vidĕ.**

6. Final **i** is long : as in **turrī, filī, audī.**

But it is common in **mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi**; and short in **nisĭ, quasĭ, cuĭ** (when making two syllables), and in Greek vocatives, as **Alexĭ.**

7. Final **o** is common ; but long in datives and ablatives, also, almost invariably, in verbs, and in nouns of the third declension.

EXCEPTIONS. **citŏ, modŏ** (adverb), **īlicŏ, profectŏ, dummodŏ, immŏ, egŏ, duŏ, octŏ.**

8. Final **u** is long. Final **y** is short.

9. Final **as, es, os,** are long ; final **is, us, ys,** are short ; as, **nefās, rūpēs, servōs** (acc.), **honōs** ; **hostĭs, amīcŭs, Tethŷs.**

EXCEPTIONS. **as** is short in Greek plural accusatives, as **lampadăs** ; and in **anăs.**

es is short in nouns of the third declension (lingual) having a short vowel in the stem[1] : as, **mīlĕs** (**-ĭtis**,), **obsĕs** (**-ĭdis**), — except **abiēs, ariēs, pariēs, pēs** ; in the present of **esse** (**ĕs, adĕs**) ; in the preposition **penĕs**, and in the plural of Greek nouns, as **hērōĕs, lampadĕs.**

os is short in **compŏs, impŏs** ; in the Greek nominative ending, as **barbitŏs** ; also, in the old nominative ending of the second declension, as **servŏs** (later, **servus**).

is in plural cases is long, as in **bonīs, nōbīs, vōbīs, omnīs** (accusative plural).

is is long in **fīs, sīs, vīs** (with **quīvīs**, etc.), **velīs, mālīs, nōlīs**; in the second person singular of the fourth conjugation, as **audīs** and sometimes in the forms in **-eris** (perfect subjunctive).

[1] The quantity of the stem-vowel may be seen in the genitive singular.

us is long (by contraction) in the genitive singular and nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension; and in nouns of the third declension having ū (long) in the stem: as, **virtūs** (**-ūtis**), **incūs** (**-ūdis**). But, **pecŭs**, **-ŭdis**.

10. Of other final syllables, those ending in a consonant, except **-c**, are short. Thus, **amăt**, **amātŭr**; but, **istūc**, **ālēc**.

EXCEPTIONS. **dōnĕc**, **făc**, **nĕc**, sometimes **hĭc**; **āēr**, **aethēr**, **crātēr**, **liēn**, **splēn**.

3. Penultimate Syllables.

349. A noun or adjective is said to *increase*, when in any case it has more syllables than in the nominative singular.

A verb is said to increase, when in any part it has more syllables than in the stem. Thus, **amā-tis** (stem, **amā-**), **tegi-tis** (stem, **tege-**), **capi-unt** (stem, **capi-**).

In such words as **stellārum**, **corpŏris**, **amātis**, **tegĭtis**, the penultimate syllable is called the *increment*. In **itĭnĕrĭbus**, **amāvĕrĭtis**, the syllables with the quantities marked are called the first, second, and third increments of the noun or verb.

NOTE. — In such words as **Iūppiter**, **Iŏvis**; **senex**, **sĕnis**, the syllables whose vowel-quantity is marked are called increments. These forms must be referred to lost nominatives from the same stems. So **itineribus** has really only two increments as from †**itinus**.

350. In increments of Nouns and Adjectives, **a** and **o** are generally *long;* **e**, **i**, **u**, **y**, generally *short:* as, —

aetās, **aetātis**; **honor**, **honōris**; **servos**, **servōrum**; **opus**, **opĕris**; **carmen**, **carmĭnis**; **murmur**, **murmŭris**; **pecus**, **pecŭdis**; **chlamys**, **chlamўdis**. Exceptions are —

a: short in **baccar** (**-ăris**), **hēpar** (**-ătis**), **iubar** (**-ăris**), **lār** (**-lăris**), **mās** (**măris**), **nectar** (**-ăris**), **pār** (**păris**), **sāl** (**sălis**), **vas** (**vădis**), **daps** (**dăpis**), **fax** (**făcis**), **anthrax** (**-ăcis**).

o: short in neuters of the third declension (except **ōs**, **ōris**): as, **corpus** (**-ŏris**); also in **arbor** (**-ŏris**), **scrobs** (**scrŏbis**), **ops** (**ŏpis**), **bōs** (**bŏvis**), **memor** (**-ŏris**), **Iūppiter** (**Iŏvis**), **Hector** (**-ŏris**), and compounds of **-pūs** (as, **tripūs**, **-pŏdis**).

e: long in increments of fifth declension: as, **diēs, diēī**; also in **hērēs (-ēdis), lēx (lēgis), locuplēs (-ētis), mercēs (-ēdis), plēbs (plēbis), quiēs (-ētis), rēx (rēgis), vēr (vēris), crātēr (-ēris).** But see § 347. 2.

i: long in most nouns and adjectives in **ix**: as, **fēlīcis, rādīcis** (except **filix, nix, strix**); also in **dīs (dītis), glīs (glīris), līs (lītis), vīs (vīrēs), Quirītēs, Samnītēs.**

u: long in forms from nouns in **-ūs**: as, **palūs, palūdis; tellūs, tellūris; virtūs, virtūtis**; also in **lūx, lūcis; [frūx], frūgis; fūr, fūris.**

351. In the increment of Verbs the characteristic vowels are as follows: —

1. In the first conjugation **ā**: as, **amāre, amātur.**
2. In the second conjugation **ē**: as, **monēre, monētur.**
3. In the third conjugation **ĕ, ĭ**: as, **tegĕre, tegĭtur.**
4. In the fourth conjugation **ī**: as, **audīre, audītur.**

EXCEPTION. **dō** and its compounds have **ă**: as, **dăre, circumdăbat.**

a. In other verbal increments (not stem-vowels) —

a is always long: as, **moneāris, tegāmus.**

e is long: as, **tegēbam, audiēbar.**

NOTE. — But **e** is short before **-ram, -rim, -rō**; in the future personal endings **-bĕris, -bĕre**; and sometimes in the perfect **-ĕrunt** (as, **stetĕruntque comae**, Æn. ii. 774).

i is long in forms which follow the analogy of the fourth conjugation: as, **petīvī, lacessītus** (in *others*, short: as, **monĭtus**); also in the subjunctive present of **esse** and **velle (sīmus, velīmus)**; and (rarely) in the endings **-rimus, -ritis.** It is short in the future forms **amābĭtis**, etc.

o is found only in imperatives, and is long: as, **monētōte**, etc.

u is short in **sŭmus, volŭmus, quaesŭmus**; in the Supine and its derivatives it is long: as, **solūtūrus.**

b. Perfects and Supines of two syllables lengthen the first syllable: as, **iūvī, iūtum (iŭvō), vīdī, vīsum (vĭdeō); fūgī (fŭgiō).**

EXCEPTIONS. **bĭbī, dĕdī, fĭdī, scĭdī, stĕtī, stĭtī, tŭlī; — cĭtum, dătum, ĭtum, lĭtum, quĭtum, rătum, rŭtum, sătum, sĭtum, stătum.** In some compounds of **stō, stātum** is found long, as **prōstātum.**

c. In reduplicated perfects the vowel of the reduplication is short; the following syllable is, also, usually short: as, **cĕcĭdī (căđō), dĭdĭcī (discō), pŭpŭgī (pungō), cŭcurrī (currō), tĕtendī (tendō), mŏmordī (mordeō).** But, **cĕcīdī** from **caedō, pepēdī** from **pēdō.**

352. The following terminations are generally preceded by a long vowel: —

1. **-brum, -crum, -trum**: as, **lăvācrum, dēlūbrum, vērātrum.**
2. **-na, -ne, -nis**: as, **carīna, māne, inānis.**
3. **-re, -ris, -ta, -tis**: as, **altāre, sălūtāris, mŏnēta, immītis.**

353. The following terminations are preceded by a short vowel: —

1. **-cus, -dus** (with some exceptions), **-lus**: as, **rūstĭcus, călĭdus, glădiŏlus.**
2. **-tās** (in nouns), **-ter** and **-tus** (in adverbs): as, **cīvĭtās, fortĭter, pĕnĭtus.**
3. **-culus, -cellus, -lentus, -tūdō**: as, **fascĭcŭlus, ŏcellus, lūcŭlentus, māgnĭtūdō.**

354. Rules for the quantity of Derivatives are —

a. Forms from the same STEM regularly have the same quantity: as, **ămō, ămāvistī; gĕnus, gĕneris.**

b. COMPOUNDS retain the quantity of the words which compose them: as, **oc-cĭdō (cădō), oc-cīdō (caedō), in-īcus (aecus).**

2. RHYTHM.

1. Measures.

355. Rhythm consists in the recurrence in musical sound of accent at regular intervals. These intervals are called MEASURES or FEET.

The most natural measures of musical time consist of either two or three equal parts. But the ancients also distinguished measures of five parts.

REMARK. — In poetry these intervals are taken up by enunciated syllables which in Latin have a definite length or quantity.

a. The unit of length in Prosody is *one short syllable.* This is called a MORA. It is represented by the sign ⏑, or may be represented in musical notation by the *quaver* (♪).

b. A long syllable is regularly equal to two *moræ*, and is represented by the sign ‒, or may be represented by the *crotchet* (♩).

356. The measures most frequently employed in Latin verse, together with their musical notation, are the following:—

a. TRIPLE OR UNEQUAL MEASURES ($\frac{3}{8}$).

1. TROCHEE (´‒ ⏑ = ♩ ♪): as, *rēgĭs.*
2. IAMBUS (⏑ ´‒ = ♪ ♩): as, *dŭcēs.*
3. TRIBRACH (⏑́ ⏑ ⏑ = ♪ ♪ ♪): as, *hŏmĭnĭs.*

b. DOUBLE OR EQUAL MEASURES ($\frac{2}{4}$).

1. DACTYL (´‒ ⏑ ⏑ = ♩ ♪ ♪): as, *cōnsŭlĭs.*
2. ANAPÆST (⏑ ⏑ ´‒ = ♪ ♪ ♩): as, *mŏnĭtōs.*
3. SPONDEE (´‒ ‒ = ♩ ♩): as, *rēgēs.*

For the more complex measures, see larger grammar.

357. In most cases measures of the same time may be substituted for each other, a long syllable taking the place of two short ones, or two short ones the place of one long one. Thus, a Spondee (‒ ‒) may take the place of a Dactyl (‒ ⏑ ⏑).

2. The Musical Accent.

358. That part of the measure which receives the *stress of voice* (the musical accent) is called the THESIS; the unaccented part is called the ARSIS.

a. The stress of voice laid upon the Thesis is called the ICTUS (*beat*). It is marked thus: ´‒ ⏑ ⏑.

b. The ending of a word within a measure is called CÆSŪRA. When this coincides with a rhetorical pause, it is called *the* Cæsura of the verse, and is of main importance as affecting the melody or rhythm

3. VERSIFICATION.

THE VERSE.

359. A single line of poetry — that is, a series of measures (feet) set in a known order — is called a VERSE.

a. A verse lacking a syllable at the end is called CATALECTIC, that is, having a pause to fill the measure; when the end syllable is not lacking, the verse is called ACATALECTIC, and has no such pause.

b. To divide the verse into its appropriate measures, according to the rules of quantity and versification, is called *scanning* or *scansion* (**scānsiō**, from **scandō**, a *climbing* or advance by steps).

REMARK. — In *reading* verse rhythmically, care should be taken to preserve the measure or time of the syllables, but at the same time not to destroy or confuse the words themselves, as is often done in *scanning*.

c. In scanning, a vowel or diphthong at the end of a word (unless an interjection) is partially suppressed when the next word begins with a vowel or with **h**. This is called ELISION.

In reading it is usual entirely to suppress elided syllables. Strictly, however, they should be sounded lightly.

d. A final -m, with the preceding vowel, is suppressed in like manner when the next word begins with a vowel or **h**: this is called ECTHLIPSIS: as, —

> mōnstr$_{um}$ horrend$_{um}$, īnform$_{e}$, ingēns, cui lūmen ademptum.
> — *Æn.* iii. 658.

e. Elision is sometimes omitted when a word ending in a vowel has a special emphasis, or is succeeded by a pause. This omission is called HIATUS. In such cases the final vowel is sometimes shortened.

f. A final syllable, regularly short, is sometimes lengthened before a pause: it is then said to be long by *Diastolē*: as, —

> nostrōr$_{um}$ obruimur, — oriturque miserrima caedēs.

g. The last syllable of a verse may be either long or short.

Forms of Verse.

360. A verse receives its name from its dominant or fundamental measure; as, *Dactylic*, *Iambic*, *Trochaic*, *Anapæstic;* and from the number of measures (single or double) which it contains: as, *Hexameter*, *Tetrameter*, *Trimeter*, *Dimeter*.

Remark.—Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapæstic verses are measured not by single feet, but by pairs (*dipodia*), so that six Iambi make a *Trimeter*.

361. A Stanza, or Strophe, consists of a definite number of verses ranged in a fixed order.

1. Dactylic Hexameter.

362. The Dactylic Hexameter, or *Heroic Verse*, consists theoretically of six dactyls. It may be represented thus:—

–́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ‖ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏓

or in musical notation as follows:—



a. For any one of the feet, except the fifth, a spondee may be substituted. The last foot is a trochee standing for a dactyl, but the final syllable is not measured, and the foot is called a spondee.

Rarely a spondee is found in the fifth place; the verse is then called *spondaic*. Thus in Ecl. iv. 49 the verse ends with **incrēmentum**.

b. The hexameter has always one *principal cæsura* — sometimes two — almost always accompanied by a pause in the sense.

The principal cæsura is usually *after the thesis* (masculine), less commonly *in the arsis* (feminine) *of the third foot*, dividing the verse into two parts.

It may also be *after the thesis* (less commonly *in the arsis*) *of the fourth foot*. In this case there is often another cæsura in the second foot, so that the verse is divided into three parts instead of two: as, —

partĕ fĕ | rōx ‖ ār | dēnsqu*e* ŏcŭ | līs ‖ et | sībĭlă | collă. — *Æn*. v. 277.

Remark. — Often the only indication of the *principal* among a number of cæsuras is the break in the sense.

c. The introductory verses of the Æneid, divided according to the foregoing rules, will appear as follows. The principal cæsura in each verse is marked by double lines : —

Armă vĭ | rumquĕ că | nō || Trō | iae quī | prīmŭs ăb | ōrīs
Ītălĭ | am fā | tō prŏfŭ | gus || Lā | vīn*i*ăquĕ | vēnĭt
lītŏră, | mult*um* ill*e* | et ter | rīs || iac | tātŭs ĕt | altō
vī sŭpĕ | rūm sae | vae || mĕmŏ | rem Iū | nōnĭs ŏb | īrăm ;
multă quŏ | qu*e* et bel | lō pas | sus || dum | condĕrĕt | urbĕm,
īnfer | retquĕ dĕ | ōs Lătĭ | ō, || gĕnŭs | undĕ Lă | tīnum,
Albā | nīquĕ pă | trēs, || at | qu*e* altae | moenĭă | Rōmae.

The *feminine cæsura* is seen in the following : —

Dīs gĕnĭ | tī pŏtŭ | ērĕ : || tĕ | nent mĕdĭ | *a* omnĭă | silvae.
—*Æn.* vi. 131.

2. Elegiac Stanza.

363. The Elegiac Stanza consists of two lines, — an hexameter followed by a pentameter.[1]

The Pentameter verse is the same as the hexameter, except that it omits the last half of the third foot and of the sixth foot. Thus, —

–́ ⏑⏑ | –́ ⏑⏑ | –́ ⊼ || –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⊼



a. The Pentameter verse is thus to be scanned as *two half-verses*, the second of which always consists of two dactyls followed by a single syllable.

b. The Pentameter has no Cæsura ; but the first half-verse must always end with a word, followed by a pause to complete the measure.[2]

c. The following verses will illustrate the forms of the Elegiac Stanza : —

[1] Called *pentameter* by the old grammarians, who divided it, formally, into five feet (two dactyls or spondees, a spondee, and two anapæsts), as follows : —

|| – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – || – | ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ ⏑ – ||

[2] The time of this pause, however, may be filled by the *protraction* of the preceding syllable : thus, —

– ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | ⊔ || – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⊼

cum sŭbĭt | illī | us trīs | tissĭmă | noctĭs ĭ | māgō
quā mĭhĭ | suprē | mum ⊼ || tempŭs ĭn | urbĕ fŭ | ĭt,
cum rĕpĕ | tō noc | tem quā | tot mĭhĭ | cāră rĕ | līquī,
lābĭtŭr | ex ŏcŭ | līs ⊼ || nunc quŏquĕ | guttă mĕ | īs.
iam prŏpĕ | lūx ădĕ | rat quā | mē dis | cēdĕrĕ | Caesar
fīnĭbŭs | extrē | mae ⊼ || iūssĕrăt | Ausŏnĭ | ae.
—Ovid, *Trist.* i. 3.

364–375. For these sections showing other forms of verse, and for the metres of Horace, see the larger grammar.

MISCELLANEOUS.

I. RECKONING OF TIME.

Note.—The Roman Year was designated, in earlier times, by the names of the Consuls; but was afterwards reckoned from the building of the City (*ab urbe conditā, annō urbis conditae*), the date of which was assigned by Varro to a period corresponding with B.C. 753. In order, therefore, to reduce Roman dates to those of the Christian era, *the year of the city is to be subtracted from* 754: e.g. A.U.C. 691 = B.C. 63.

Before Cæsar's reform of the Calendar (B.C. 46), the Roman year consisted of 355 days; March, May, Quīntīlis (July), and October having each 31 days; February having 28, and each of the remainder 29. The "Julian year," by Cæsar's reformed Calendar, had 365 days, divided into months as at present. Every fourth year the 24th of February (vi. kal. Mārt.) was counted twice, giving 29 days to that month: hence the year was called *Bissextīlis*. The month Quīntīlis received the name *Iūlius* (July), in honor of Julius Cæsar; and Sextīlis was called *Augustus* (August), in honor of his successor. The Julian year (see below) remained unchanged till the adoption of the Gregorian Calendar.

376. Dates, according to the Roman Calendar, are reckoned as follows:—

a. The *first* day of the month was called **Kalendae** (*Calends*).

b. On the *fifteenth* day of March, May, July, and October, but the *thirteenth* of the others, were the **Īdūs** (*Ides*), the day of Full Moon.

c. On the *seventh* day of March, May, July, and October, but the *fifth* of the other months, were the **Nōnae** (*Nones or ninths*).

d. From the three points thus determined, the days of the month were reckoned *backwards*, as so many days before the, *Nones*, the *Ides*, or the *Calends*. The point of departure was, by Roman custom, counted in the reckoning, the *second* day being *three* days before, etc.:—

Hence if the given date be Calends, add *two* to the number of days in the month preceding, — if Nones or Ides, add *one* to that of the day on which they fall,— and from this sum subtract the given date: thus,—

viii. Kal. Feb. (33–8) = Jan. 25.
iv. Nōn. Mār. (8–4) = Mar. 4.
iv. Īd. Sept. (14–4) = Sept. 10.

e. The days of the Roman month by the Julian Calendar, as thus ascertained, are given in the following Table: —

	January.	*February.*	*March.*	*April.*
1.	KAL. IAN.	KAL. FEB.	KAL. MĀRTIAE	KAL. APRĪLĒS
2.	IV. Nōn. Iān.	IV. Nōn. Feb.	VI. Nōn. Mārt.	IV. Nōn. Apr.
3.	III. " "	III. " "	V. " "	III. " "
4.	prīd. " "	prīd. " "	IV. " "	prīd. " "
5.	NŌN. IĀN.	NŌN. FEB.	III. " "	NŌN. APRĪLĒS
6.	VIII. Īd. Iān.	VIII. Id. Feb.	prīd. " "	VIII. Īd. Apr.
7.	VII. " "	VII. " "	NŌN MĀRTIAE	VII. " "
8.	VI. " "	VI. " "	VIII. Īd. Mārt.	VI. " "
9.	V. " "	V. " "	VII. " "	V. " "
10.	IV. " "	IV. " "	VI. " "	IV. " "
11.	III. " "	III. " "	V. " "	III. " "
12.	prīd. " "	prīd. " "	IV. " "	prīd. " "
13.	ĪDŪS IĀN.	IDŪS FEB.	III. " "	ĪDŪS APRĪLĒS.
14.	XIX. Kal. Feb.	XVI. Kal. Mārtiās	prīd. " "	XVIII. Kal. Māiās.
15.	XVIII. " "	XV. " "	ĪDŪS MĀRTIAE	XVII. " "
16.	XVII. " "	XIV. " "	XVII. Kal. Aprīlīs.	XVI. " "
17.	XVI. " "	XIII. " "	XVI. " "	XV. " "
18.	XV. " "	XII. " "	XV. " "	XIV. " "
19.	XIV. " "	XI. " "	XIV. " "	XIII. " "
20.	XIII. " "	X. " "	XIII. " "	XII. " "
21.	XII. " "	IX. " "	XII. " "	XI. " "
22.	XI. " "	VIII. " "	XI. " "	X. " "
23.	X. " "	VII. " "	X. " "	IX. " "
24.	IX. " "	VI. " "	IX. " "	VIII. " "
25.	VIII. " "	V. " "	VIII. " "	VII. " "
26.	VII. " "	IV. " "	VII. " "	VI. " "
27.	VI. " "	III. " "	VI. " "	V. " "
28.	V. " "	prīd. " "	V. " "	IV. " "
29.	IV. " "	[prīd Kal Mārt.	IV. " "	III. " "
30.	III. " "	in leap-year, the	III. " "	prīd. " "
31.	prīd. " "	vi. Kal. (24th) being	prīd. " "	(So June, Sept.,
	(So. Aug., Dec.)	counted twice.]	(So May, July, Oct.)	Nov.)

NOTE. — Observe that a date before the Julian Reform (B.C. 46) would be found not by the above table, but by taking the earlier reckoning of the number of days in the month.

II. MEASURES OF VALUE, ETC.

377. The money of the Romans was in early times wholly of copper. The unit was the **ās**, nominally a pound in weight, but actually somewhat less. It was divided into twelve **unciae** (*ounces*).

In the third century B.C. the **ās** was gradually reduced to one-half of its original value. In the same century silver coins were introduced, — the *Dēnārius* = 10 asses; and the *Sēstertius* = 2½ asses.

378. The Sestertius was probably introduced at a time when the **ās** had been so far reduced that the value of the new coin (2½ asses) was equivalent to the original value of the **ās**. Hence, the Sestertius (usually abbreviated to IIS or HS) came to be used as the unit of value, and **nummus**, *coin*, often means simply *sēstertius*. As the reduction of the standard went on, the sestertius became equivalent to 4 asses. Gold was introduced later, the **aureus** being equal to 100 sesterces. The value of these coins is seen in the following table: —

2½	asses = 1 sēstertius or nummus (HS),	value nearly	5 cents.
10	asses or 4 sēstertiī = 1 dēnārius . .	" "	20 cents.
1000	sēstertiī = 1 sēstertium	" "	$50.00.

NOTE. — The word **sēstertius** is a shortened form of **sēmis-tertius**, *the third one, a half*. The abbreviation IIS or HS = **duo et sēmis**, 2½, *two and a half*.

379. The **Sēstertium** (probably originally the genitive plural of **sēstertius**) was a sum of money, not a coin; the word is inflected regularly as a neuter noun: thus, **tria sēstertia** = $150.00.

When *sēstertium* was combined with a numeral adverb, *centēna mīlia* (*hundreds of thousands*) was originally understood: thus *deciēns sēstertium* (*deciēns* HS) = $50,000. But later *sēstertium* was inflected as a neuter singular, as *deciēns sēstertiō*, etc..

In the statement of large sums *sēstertium* is often omitted: thus *sexāgiēns* (Rosc. Am. 2) signifies, *sexāgiēns* [*centēna mīlia*] *sēstertium* (6,000,000 sesterces) = $300,000 (nearly).

380. In the statement of sums of money in cipher, a line above the number indicates thousands; lines above and at the sides also, hundred-thousands. Thus HS. DC. = 600 *sēstertiī*; HS. $\overline{\text{DC}}$. = 600,000 *sēstertiī*, or 600 *sēstertia*; HS. $|\overline{\text{DC}}|$ = 60,000,000 *sēstertiī*.

381. The Roman Measures of Length are the following: —

12 inches (*unciae*) = 1 Roman Foot (*pēs*: 11.65 English inches).
1½ Feet = 1 Cubit (*cubitum*). — 2½ Feet = 1 Degree or Step (*gradus*).
5 Feet = 1 Pace (*passus*). — 1000 Paces (*mille passuum*) = 1 Mile.

The Roman mile was equal to 4850 English feet.

The *Iūgerum*, or unit of measure of land, was an area of 240 (Roman) feet long and 120 broad; a little less than ⅝ of an English *acre*.

382. The Measures of Weight are —

12 unciae (*ounces*) = 1 Pound (*libra*, about ¾ lb. avoirdupois).

Fractional parts (weight or coin) are —

1. ($\frac{1}{12}$), *uncia*.	5. ($\frac{5}{12}$), *quīncunx*.	9. (¾), *dōdrāns*.
2. (⅙), *sextāns*.	6. (½), *sēmissis*.	10. (⅚), *dextāns*.
3. (¼), *quadrāns*.	7. ($\frac{7}{12}$), *septunx*.	11. ($\frac{11}{12}$), *deunx*.
4. (⅓), *triēns*.	8. (⅔), *bēssis*.	12. **ās**.

The Talent (*talentum*) was a Greek weight (*τάλαντον*) = 60 *librae*.

383. The Measures of Capacity are —

12 cyathī = 1 *sextārius* (nearly a pint).
16 sextāriī = 1 *modius* (peck).
6 sextāriī = 1 *congius* (3 quarts, liquid measure).
8 congiī = 1 *amphora* (6 gallons).

384. The following are some of the commonest abbreviations found in Latin inscriptions and sometimes in editions of the classic authors.

A., *absolvō, antīquō*.
A. U., *annō urbis*.
A. U. C., *ab urbe conditā*.
C., *condemnō, comitiālis*.
cos., *cōnsul* (*cōnsule*).
coss., *cōnsulēs* (*cōnsulibus*).
D., *dīvus*.
D. D., *dōnō dedit*.
D. D. D., *dat, dicat, dēdicat*.
des., *dēsīgnātus*.
D. M., *diī mānēs*.
eq. Rom., *eques Rōmānus*.
F., *fīlius, fāstus*.
Ictus., *iūriscōnsultus*.
Id., *īdūs*.
imp., *imperātor*.
I. O. M., *Iovī optimō māximō*.
K., Kal., *Kalendae*.
N., *nepōs, nefāstus*.
N. L., *nōn liquet*.
P. C., *patrēs cōnscrīptī*.
pl., *plēbis*.
pont. max., *pontifex māximus*.
pop., *populus*.

P. R., *populus Rōmānus.*

pr., *praetor.*

proc., *prōcōnsul.*

Q. B. F. F. Q. S., *quod bonum fēlīx faustumque sit.*

Quir., *Quirītēs.*

resp., *rēspūblica, respondet.*

S., *salūtem, sacrum, senātus.*

S. C., *senātūs cōnsultum.*

S. D. P., *salūtem dīcit plūrimam.*

S. P. Q. R., *Senātus Populusque Rōmānus.*

S. V. B. E. E. V., *sī valēs bene est, ego valeō.*

pl. tr., *tribūnus plēbis.*

U. (U. R.), *uti rogās.*

GLOSSARY

OF TERMS USED IN GRAMMAR, RHETORIC, AND PROSODY.

NOTE. — Many of these terms are pedantic names given by early grammarians to forms of speech used naturally by writers who were not conscious that they were using figures at all — as, indeed, they were not. Thus, when one says, "It gave me no little pleasure," he is unconsciously using *Litotes*; when he says, "John went up the street, James down," *Antithesis*; when he says, "High as the sky," *Hyperbole*. Many were given under a mistaken notion of the nature of the usage referred to. Thus **mēd** and **tēd** (§ 98. *c*) were supposed to owe their **d** to *Paragoge*, **sūmpsī** its **p** to *Epenthesis*. Such a sentence as "See my coat, how well it fits!" was supposed to be an irregularity to be accounted for by *Prolepsis*.

Many of these, however, are convenient designations for phenomena which often occur; and most of them have a historic interest, of one kind or another.

385. I. GRAMMATICAL TERMS.

Anacoluthon: a change of construction in the same sentence, leaving the first part broken or unfinished.

Anastrophe: inversion of the usual order of words.

Apodosis: the conclusion of a conditional sentence (see *Protasis*).

Archaism: an adoption of old or obsolete forms.

Asyndeton: omission of conjunctions (§ 208. *b*).

Barbarism: adoption of foreign or unauthorized forms.

Brachylogy: brevity of expression.

Crasis: contraction of two vowels into one (§ 10. *c*).

Ellipsis: omission of a word or words necessary to complete the sense (§ 177. note).

Enallage: substitution of one word or form for another.

Epenthesis: insertion of a letter or syllable (§ 11. *c*).

Hellenism: use of Greek forms of constructions.

Hendiadys (ἓν διὰ δυοῖν): the use of two nouns, with a conjunction, instead of a single modified noun.

Hypallage: interchange of constructions.

Hysteron proteron: a reversing of the natural order of ideas.

Applied to cases where the natural sequence of events is violated in language because the later event is of more importance than the earlier and so comes first to the mind. This was supposed to be an artificial embellishment in Greek, and so was imitated in Latin. It is still found in artless narrative; cf. "Bred and Born in a Brier Bush" (Uncle Remus).

Metathesis: transposition of letters in a word (§ 11. *d*).

Paragoge: addition of a letter or letters to the end of a word.

Parenthesis: insertion of a phrase interrupting the construction.

Periphrasis: a roundabout way of expression (*circumlocution*).

Pleonasm: the use of needless words.

Polysyndeton: the use of an unnecessary number of copulative conjunctions.

Prolepsis: the use of a word in the clause preceding the one where it would naturally appear (*anticipation*).

Protasis: a clause introduced by a conditional expression (*if*, *when*, *whoever*), leading to a conclusion called the *Apodosis* (§ 304).

Syncope: omission of a letter or syllable from the middle of a word.

Synesis (*cōnstrūctiō ad sēnsum*): agreement of words according to the sense, and not the grammatical form (§ 182).

Tmesis: the separation of two parts of a compound word by other words (*cutting*).

Zeugma: the use of a verb with two different words, to only one of which it strictly applies (*yoking*).

386. II. Rhetorical Figures.

Allegory: a narrative in which abstract ideas figure as circumstances, events, or persons, in order to enforce some moral truth.

Alliteration: the use of several words that begin with the same sound.

Analogy: argument from resemblances.

Anaphora: the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses (§ 344. *f*).

Antithesis: opposition, or contrast of parts (for emphasis, § 344).

Antonomasia: use of a proper for a common noun, or the reverse.

Aposiopesis: an abrupt pause for rhetorical effect.

Catachresis: a harsh metaphor (*abūsiō*, misuse of words).

Chiasmus: a reversing of the order of words in corresponding pairs.

Climax: a gradual increase of emphasis, or enlargement of meaning.

Euphemism: the mild expression of a painful or repulsive idea.

Euphony: the choice of words for their agreeable sound.

Hyperbaton: violation of the usual order of words.

Hyperbole: exaggeration for rhetorical effect.

Irony: the use of words which naturally convey a sense contrary to what is meant.

Litotes: the affirming of a thing by denying its contrary (§ 209. *c*).

Metaphor: the figurative use of words, indicating an object by some resemblance.

Metonymy: the use of the name of one thing to indicate some kindred thing.

Onomatopœia: a fitting of sound to sense in the use of words.

Oxymoron: the use of contradictory words in the same phrase.

Paronomasia: the use of words of like sound.

Prosopopœia: personification.

Synchysis: the interlocked order (§ 344. *h*).

Synecdoche: the use of the name of a part for the whole or the reverse.

387. III. Terms of Prosody.

Acatalectic: complete, as a verse or a series of feet (§ 359. *a*).

Anaclasis: breaking a rhythm by substituting different measures.

Anacrusis: the unaccented syllable or syllables preceding a verse.

Antistrophe: a series of verses corresponding to one which has gone before (cf. *strophe*).

Arsis: the unaccented part of a foot (§ 358).

Basis: a single foot preceding the regular movement of a verse.

Cæsura: the ending of a word within a metrical foot (§ 358. *b*).

Catalexis: loss of a final syllable (or syllables) making the series *catalectic* (incomplete, § 359. *a*).

Contraction: the use of one long syllable for two short (§ 357).

Correption: shortening of a long syllable for metrical reasons.

Diæresis: the coincidence of the end of a foot with the end of a word (§ 358. *c*).

Dialysis: the use of **i** (consonant) and **v** as vowels (*silüa* = *silva*).

Diastole: the lengthening of a short syllable by emphasis (§ 359*f*).

Dimeter: consisting of two like measures.
Dipody: consisting of two like feet.
Distich: a system or series of two verses.
Ecthlipsis: the suppression of a final syllable in **-m** before a word beginning with a vowel (§ 359. *d*).
Elision: the cutting off of a final before a following initial vowel.
Heptameter: consisting of seven feet.
Hexameter: consisting of six measures.
Hexapody: consisting of six feet.
Hiatus: the meeting of two vowels without contraction or elision.
Ictus: the metrical accent (§ 358. *a*).
Irrational: not conforming strictly to the unit of time (§ 356. note).
Logaœdic: varying in rhythm, making the effect resemble prose.
Monometer: consisting of a single measure.
Mora: the unit of time = one short syllable (§ 355. *a*).
Pentameter: consisting of five measures.
Pentapody: consisting of five feet.
Penthemimeris: consisting of five *half-feet.*
Protraction: extension of a syllable beyond its normal length.
Resolution: the use of two short syllables for one long (§ 357).
Strophe: a series of verses making a recognized metrical whole (*stanza*), which may be indefinitely repeated.
Synæresis: **i** (vowel) and **u** becoming consonants before a vowel.
Synalœpha: the same as elision (§ 359. *c*. Rem.).
Synapheia: elision between two verses (§ 359. *c*. Rem.).
Synizesis: the combining of two vowels in one syllable (§ 347. *c*).
Syncope: loss of a short vowel.
Systole: shortening of a syllable regularly long.
Tetrameter: consisting of four measures.
Tetrapody: consisting of four feet.
Tetrastich: a system of four verses.
Thesis: the accented part of a foot (§ 358).
Trimeter: consisting of three measures.
Tripody: consisting of three feet.
Tristich: a system of three verses.

ABBREVIATIONS

USED IN CITING AUTHORS AND THEIR WORKS.

Cæsar:
- B. C., *Bellum Civile.*
- B. G., *Bellum Gallicum.*
- B. Afr., *Bellum Africanum.*

Catull., Catullus.

Cic., Cicero:
- Ac., Acad., *Academica.*
- Arch., *pro Archia.*
- Att., *ad Atticum.*
- Cæc., *pro Caecina.*
- Cæl., *pro M. Caelio.*
- Cat., *in Catilinam.*
- Clu., *pro Cluentio.*
- C. M., *Cato Major.*
- Deiot., *pro Deiotaro.*
- De Or., *de Oratore.*
- Div., *de Divinatione.*
- Cæcil., *Divinatio in Caecilium.*
- Fam., *ad Familiares.*
- Fat., *de Fato.*
- Fin., *de Finibus.*
- Flac., *pro Flacco.*
- Font., *pro M. Fonteio.*
- Ad Her. [*ad Herennium*].
- Inv., *de Inventione.*
- Læl., *Laelius.*
- Legg., *de Legibus.*
- Agr., *de Lege Agraria.*
- Lig., *pro Ligario.*
- Manil., *pro Lege Manilia.*
- Marc., *pro Marcello.*
- Mil., *pro Milone.*
- Mur., *pro Murena.*
- N. D., *de Natura Deorum.*
- Off., *de Officiis.*
- Or., *Orator.*
- Par., *Paradoxa.*
- Part. Or., *de Partitione.*
- Phil., *Philippicae.*
- Planc., *pro Plancio.*
- Pis., *in Pisonem.*
- Quinct., *pro Quinctio.*
- Q. Fr., *ad Q. Fratrem.*
- Rabir., *pro Rabirio.*
- Rep., *de Republica.*
- Rosc. Am., *pro Roscio Amerino.*
- Rosc. Com., *pro Roscio Comoedo.*
- Sest., *pro Sestio.*
- Sulla, *pro Sulla.*
- Top., *Topica.*
- Tusc., *Tusculanae Disputationes.*
- Univ., *de Universo.*
- Vatin., *in Vatinium.*
- Verr., *in Verrem.*

Hor., Horace:
- A. P., *de Arte Poetica.*
- Ep., *Epistulae.*
- Epod., *Epodes.*
- Od., *Odes.*
- Sat., *Satires.*

Juv., Juvenal.

Liv., Livy.

Lucr., Lucretius.

Mart., Martial.

Nep., Nepos.

Ov., Ovid:
- F., *Fasti.*
- M., *Metamorphoses.*
- ex P., *Epistulae ex Ponto.*
- Trist., *Tristia.*

Pers., Persius.

Plaut., Plautus.

Plin., Pliny, senior:
- H. N., *Historia Naturalis.*

Plin., Pliny, junior:
- Ep., *Epistulae.*

Prop., Propertius.

Q. C., Q. Curtius.

Quint., Quintilian.

Sall., Sallust:
- Cat., *Catilina.*
- Jug., *Jugurtha.*

Sen., Seneca:
- Ep., *Epistulae.*
- Q. N., *Quaestiones Naturales.*

Sil. It., Silius Italicus.

Suet., Suetonius.

Tac., Tacitus:
- Agr., *Agricola.*
- A., Ann., *Annales.*
- H., *Historiae.*

Ter., Terence.

Virg., Virgil:
- Æn., *Æneid.*
- E., *Eclogae.*
- G., *Georgica.*

INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS.

Note.—The numerical references are to sections, with a few exceptions in which the page (p.) is referred to. The letters refer to subsections. The letter n. signifies Note; r., Remark. Abl. = ablative; acc. = accusative; adj. = adjective; adv. = adverb; apod. = apodosis; app. = appositive; comp. = comparison or compound; compar. = comparative; constr. = construction; conj. = conjugation or conjunction; dat. = dative; gen. = genitive; gend. = gender; ind. disc. = indirect discourse; loc. = locative; prep. = preposition; subj. = subject or subjunctive; vb. = verb: w. = with. (Other abbreviations present no difficulty.)